Systematic Topology Derivation and PWM Design of Multilevel Converters

by

Yuzhuo Li

A thesis submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy
in

Energy System

Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering
University of Alberta

Abstract

Multilevel converters (MLCs) have been widely accepted for decades in various applications, e.g. high-voltage transmission systems, medium-voltage drive systems, distributed generation integrations, low voltage power supply, etc. During the evolution of power electronics equipment, a large number of MLC topologies and pulse-width modulation (PWM) schemes are proposed. Due to the sophisticated topology structure of MLCs, the topology derivation and PWM design methods are normally case-by-case and lack generality. While the concrete methods that emerged during the development of MLCs are still ambiguous and lack systematic methodology.

At present, more new topologies keep emerging, resulting in a large number of circuits with resembling structures and similar features which require systematic analysis and optimal design. To better understand the relationship of various MLC topologies, the general relationships of power converters are systematically discussed in this work, and new relationships are discovered and elaborated, especially for the voltage-source converters (VSCs) and current-source converters (CSCs). In addition to the famous duality principles, the novel isomorphic relationships of VSCs and CSCs are firstly revealed in the power converter field with thorough theoretical discussions and simulation/experimental verifications. To facilitate the derivation process of MLCs, the stage-based uniform structures are also derived from the structure-level duality and the equivalence and implemented for systematic topology synthesis and derivation for not only multilevel VSCs and CSC, but also matrix converters. Several newly proposed topologies are demonstrated as examples with practical considerations and experiments on a special 5-level case.

To facilitate the PWM design process, a universal carrier-based PWM design method through hierarchical method is proposed. It iteratively utilizes the identical circuits in converters and can provide an exhaustive list of carrier-based PWM schemes for the non-modular MLCs, e.g. active-neutral-point-clamped (ANPC) based converter. Based on this methodology, the novel phase shift PWM for improvement of loss distribution, the systematic simplification of ANPC converters and

systematic fault tolerant operation under multiple fault switches are also investigated, which also has potentials for other ANPC-based derivatives. Various 4-level and 5-level PWM design cases are elaborated with both theoretical investigations and experimental verifications in this work.

With the systematic knowledge of theory/circuit/structure/modulation level of MLCs, this work will simplify the topology derivation and PWM design process over conventional case-by-case methods and provide different innovation perspectives for MLC research.

Acknowledgements

I would like to express my deep gratitude to all those who have offered valuable inspiration and selfless support during my PhD program.

Firstly, I want to extend my heartfelt thanks to my supervisor, Professor Yunwei (Ryan) Li. Without his encouragement and guidance, it would be impossible for this work to be accomplished. All the positive influences from him will be my great treasure in future life.

Secondly, for all the lab mates that have provided their professional suggestions, comments, assistance, please accept my appreciation: Dr. Hao Tian, Dr. Zhongyi Quan, Dr. Ding Li, Fanxiu Fang, Nie Hou, Cheng Xue, Mingzhe Wu, Rouzbeh Reza Ahrabi, Pasan Gunawardena Loku Hettige, Dulika Nayanasiri, Andrew Zhou Xuesong Wu, Xuerui Lin, etc. I am honored to study and work with all of you, thank you!

Thirdly, my sincere thanks to all the teachers that have taught me. Without these valuable knowledges, this work would have been impossible to begin with.

I would also to thank the financial support from China Scholarship Council.

Lastly, I want to thank my family for their understanding, patience, and love that make this work possible.

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

List of Abbreviations

3L	Three Level
4L	Four Level
5L	Five Level
7L	Seven Level
9L	Nine Level
AC	Alternating Current
ANPC	Active Neutral Point Clamped
CCV	Cyclo-Converter
CHB	Cascaded H-Bridge
CSC	Current-Source Converter
DC	Direct Current
DMC	Direct Matrix Converter
DPP	Differential Power Processor
DSCC	Double-Star Chopper Cell
EMI	Electromagnetic Interference
EST	Equivalent Switching Frequency
EV	Electric Vehicle
FC	Flying Capacitor
FCC	Flying Capacitor Converter
FFT	Fast Fourier Transform
GI	Graph Isomorphism
GTO	Gate Turn-Off Thyristor
HBBB	H-Bridge Building Blocks
HSF	High Switching Frequency
HV	High Voltage
IC	Integrated Circuit
IGCT	Integrated Gate-Commutated Thyristor
IGBT	Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor
IMC	Indirect Matrix Converter
KCL	*Kirchhoff*'s Current Law
KVL	*Kirchhoff*'s Voltage Law

LED	Light-Emitting Diode
LS	Level Selector
LS PWM	Level-Shift PWM
LSF	Low Switching Frequency
LG	Level Generator
M.I	Modulation Indexes
MLC	Multilevel Converter
MMC	Modular Multilevel Converter
MV	Medium Voltage
NBD	Node-Branch Diagram
NPC	Neutral Point Clamped
NNPC	Nested Neutral Point Clamped
NNPP	Nested Neutral Point Piloted
PD	Phase Disposition
POD	Phase Opposition Disposition
PS PWM	Phase-Shift PWM
PV	Photovoltaic
PWM	Pulse-Width Modulation
SC	Switch Cell
SCR	Silicon Controlled Rectifier
SG	Switch Group
SMC	Stacked Multicell Converter
SM	Sub-Module
TNPC	T-Type NPC
VSC	Voltage-Source Converter
WBG	Wide Bandgap

Chapter 1

Introduction[1]

In this chapter, the innovations of multilevel converters are highlighted among various milestones during the development of power electronics. Then, two challenges of converter design are discussed: topology derivation and PWM design. As general-purpose tools, circuit theory and graph theory have great potentials to facilitate the design process, which are also introduced in short. Motivated by the current research challenges in the multilevel converter, the objectives and the contributions of this work are summarized at last, which is focused on four levels in terms of theory, circuit, structure and PWM of multilevel converters. The general logic structure of this chapter is summarized in **Figure 1-1**.

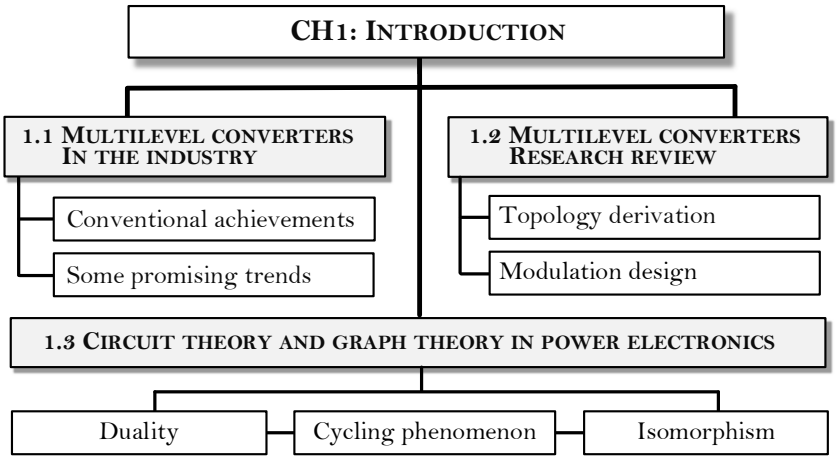


Figure 1-1 Logic structure of Chapter 1.

1.1. Multilevel converters in the industry

1.1.1 Multilevel converters for conventional applications

Since the beginning of power conversion techniques, the accurate waveform had been never easy to generate through the limited functions of available devices and the applicable topologies. This was also true even after the advent of SCRs. To overcome such limitation, filed in 1961, the

[1] Publications out of this Chapter:

Yuzhuo Li and Yunwei Li, "The Evolutions Of Multilevel Converter Topology," in *IEEE Industrial Electronics Magazine*, 2021, in press.

magnetic coupling method was implemented to generate a multilevel voltage in the three-phase system using square wave per module [1]. Filed in 1964, a similar idea was introduced for aircraft applications, which featured lightweight, low harmonic distortion, and high efficiency [2]. Later, in 1969, *McMurray* filed the patent for a stepped-wave converter which can be considered as the predecessor of well-known cascaded H-bridge (CHB) converters [3]. And then, this topology was perfected by the following researchers and resulted in the "modern" CHB converters at present [4], [5]. Meanwhile, more topologies were developed featuring the multilevel outputs, such as neutral-point-clamped converter [6], [7], flying capacitor-clamped (FCC) converter [8], active neutral-point-clamped converter [9], modular multilevel converter[10], hybrid-clamped converter [11], etc.

On the other hand, high-power devices like thyristor and GTO are commonly adopted for traditional CSCs [12]. Another commonly used device is IGCT, which has an even current distribution in the silicone and enhanced reliability due to redundant stages when connected in series [13]. Though the devices in CSCs require the reverse voltage blocking capability, the inherent lower dv/dt, easier short-circuit protection and controllable regeneration features led this type converter very popular for utility-scale power transmission and high-power drives [12]. However, compared to the thriving VSCs covering applications in almost all the power levels, the behind-hand performance of switching devices and bulky DC chokes makes CSCs struggle to expand their applications, which in turn, results in relatively low interests on developing new CSCs. Recently, advanced active/passive devices are emerging and have been applied in practice [14], as well as show some promising development of CSCs penetrating the territory of VSCs [15]-[17].

Historically, the multilevel concept has been introduced in a more general way for the very early stage of direct AC-AC converters, e.g. three-to-single-phase cyclo-converter (CCV) [18], [19]. The approach of a practical CCV that synthesizes the AC output waveforms by actively selecting the proper multiple AC inputs in predefined operational sectors is fundamentally the same as the present MLCs (with "AC inputs" replaced by "DC inputs") [19], [20]. Around the 1980s, the excellence of CCVs in certain power ratings (e.g. MW-scale or lower) was challenged by the upcoming matrix converters and other two-stage AC-AC configurations, e.g. back-to-back VSCs [12], [21]. The conventional matrix converters burst out in fierce market competition, however, end up with desolate commercialization [22]. Recently, following the similar paths of VSCs and CSCs, some "old-fashion" matrix topologies integrated with WBG devices are gaining increasing attention thanks to component-level improvements and more advanced design [23], [24].

As of today, various MLCs have been widely applied in the industry owing to their merits like high-quality output, reduced voltage/current stress on semiconductor devices, reduced device

switching frequency, low electromagnetic interference (EMI), and so on [7], [25]. Till present, there have been approximately 10,000 papers of MLCs published on IEEE Xplore, as shown in **Figure 1-2**. Passing through the turn of the 21st century, the research quantity of MLCs experienced tremendous growth. Meanwhile, some topics like converter topology, power grid, control strategy, gained major attention in this field (see **Figure 1-3** for details). Predictably, this growth trend of research papers will continue in the near next years.

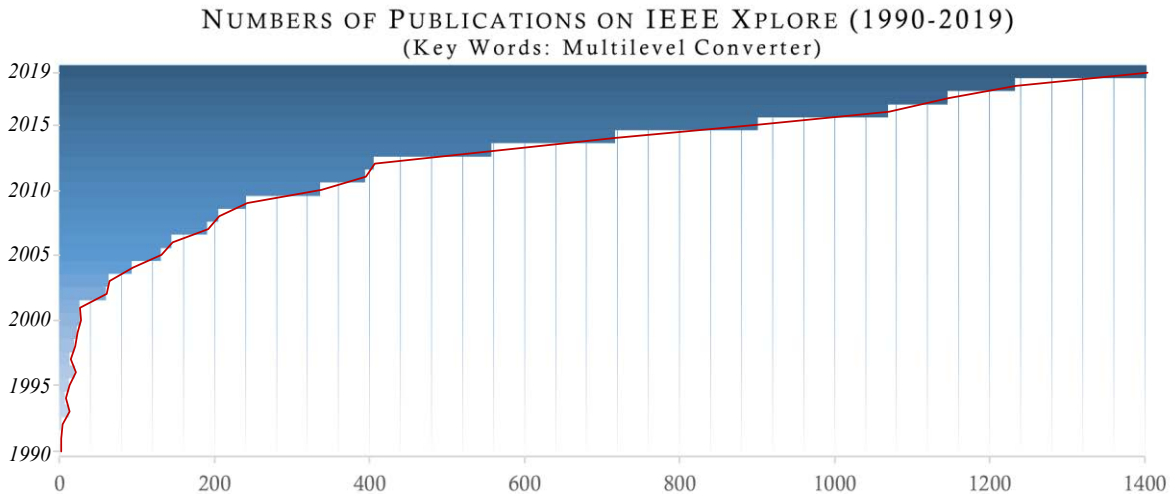


Figure 1-2 Numbers of MLC papers published on IEEE Xplore (1990~2019). (Note that the numbers are obtained directly from the search results from IEEE Xplore and there could be a small number of unrelated papers.)

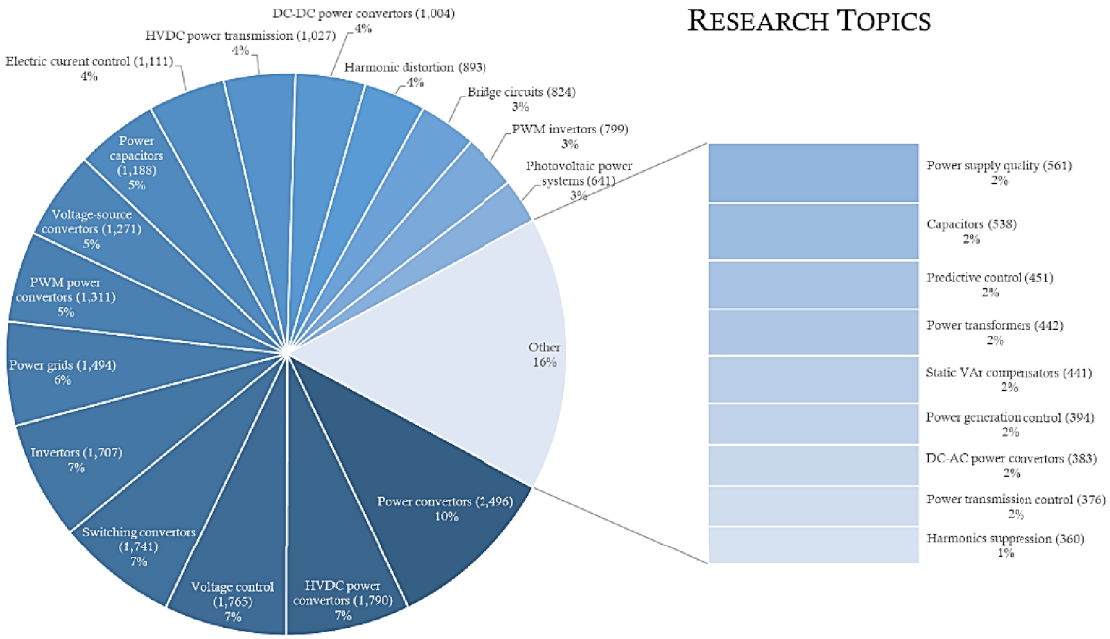


Figure 1-3 Diversity of research topics of MLC papers published on IEEE Xplore (1990~2019). (Note that all topics are obtained from the default setting from IEEE Xplore and there could be overlaps in some.)

In general, MLCs can be classified as three types, namely the voltage-source MLCs [26], the current-source MLCs [12], and the matrix MLCs [27]. A more detailed classification of existing MLC topologies is summarized in **Figure 1-4**. For medium-voltage high-power applications, voltage-source cascaded H-bridge (CHB) converter has been commercialized successfully [28], [29], e.g. GH180 (Siemens), ACS5000 (ABB), PowerFlex6000 (Rockwell), MV700 (Ingeteam), MV1000 (Yaskawa), Altivar1200 (Schneider), etc. Such topologies with multiple isolated DC links are normally consists of single/shared DC-link topology as basic modules. In a single-phase or multiple-phase system, an MLC with a single/shared DC link is referred to as the converter with (1) only one dc source; (2) with several non-isolated and series/parallel connected dc sources that are shared by all phase-legs simultaneously. Some of these kinds of voltage-source MLCs have been applied in industry [28], [29], e.g. SM series (Siemens), ACS series (ABB), MV series (GE), MV series (Ingeteam), etc. Current-source MLCs and matrix MLCs with shared DC link can also be found in literature, e.g. multicell current-source MLC [30], diode-clamped indirect matrix MLC [31], just to name a few.

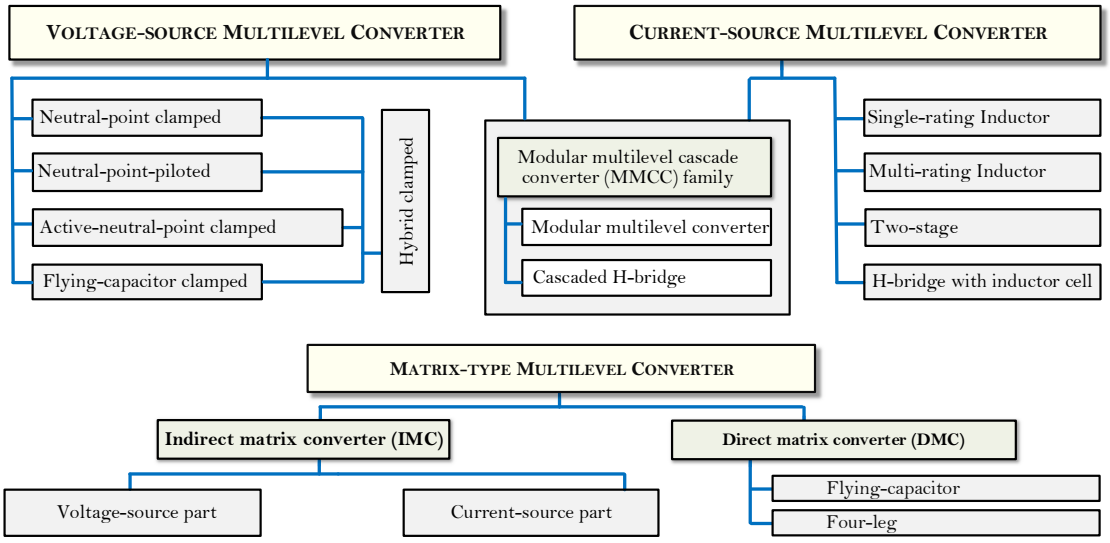


Figure 1-4 Classification of existing MLC topologies.

1.1.2 MLCs for promising low-voltage applications

Besides conventional applications, MLCs have also been increasingly accepted in some low voltage (and/or current) applications. Topologies like three-level active neutral-point-clamped, flying capacitor-clamped, T-type neutral-point-clamped have become increasingly popular in applications like PV inverters and electric vehicle drives (which have relatively low voltage ratings, e.g. 400V-1500V) [32]-[36]. In applications with even lower voltage, e.g. power supply and LED

driver, MLCs are also gaining their popularity [37]. Recent technology can even integrate multi-level converter into integrated circuits [38]-[40].

Looking back into the history of power conversion techniques, the multilevel concepts have been already proposed for some high-performance applications (e.g. lightweight, high efficiency, reduced cost, etc.) since the very early stage of power electronics. The use of combinations of capacitors for producing high voltages can be traced back to the 19th century [41]. Such a technique is one of the iconic features of modern MLCs. In 1863, the Hungarian physicist, *Ányos Jedlik*, introduced the first voltage multiplying capacitor battery system, which can be considered as the origin of the "switched capacitor" technique and was named as "*chain of Leyden jars*" back then [42].

Sixty years later, in 1923, the *Marx* generator was invented for the R&D of lightening through the same concept, but with different device technique [43]. Though this type of topologies was implemented in extremely high voltage fields at first (prior 1950s), the shrink of their volume happened soon after the advent of semiconductor-based switches [43]. The miniaturization of commercial electronic equipment drove the inductor-less power conversion into surprisingly high density and efficiency. Even now, it is not difficult to see the gene of the *Marx* generator in some modern MLCs, e.g. derivatives of MMC [44], PV inverter [45], ANPC converter [46], etc. In recent years, switched-capacitor-based MLCs are emerging in the literature to achieve reduced circuit complexity and decent performance [47]. Some of them also feature the voltage self-balancing and voltage boosting capability to cope with the high input-output voltage ratio within a single power conversion stage [48], [49]. Yet, the core ideas have not been much evolved since the early era of this technique, i.e. a similar methodology can be found in *Baker*'s patent filed in 1977 [50].

Moving forward from the pre-SCR period, another type of MLCs using a magnetic coupling technique was introduced. For instance, *Amato*'s patent filed in 1960 managed to generate a five-level stepwise waveform by utilizing a multi-switch structure [51]. It targeted portable applications with a potential lighter weight, smaller size, higher efficiency, and lower harmonic distortions. Other examples are *Heinrich*'s patent filed in 1961 [52], *Garnett*'s patent filed in 1964 [2], and *Nard*'s patent filed in 1967 [53], which were invented for similar reasons. Nearly 50 years later of *Amato*'s patent, the in-leg magnetic coupling technique was introduced as another approach for multilevel waveform synthesis [54]. Another way is to use the interleaved technique, like the multiphase MLC system introduced in 1962 [55], or the motor drive system in 1983 [56]. Essentially, the same method could also be found in some emerging MLCs [57], [58]. Recently, the interleaved technique is further generalized by introducing the internal parallel concept in MLCs [59], [60].

In addition to the magnetic coupling method, another multilevel technique, i.e. unfolder structure/operation was also received some early attention back in the 1960s and 1970s [61]-[63]. This type of MLCs normally divides the circuit into two parts: one is for multilevel DC waveforms (i.e. high-frequency operation); one is for the AC waveform synthesis (i.e. low/line frequency operation) [64]. Until recently, such configurations started to draw some increasing attention once again [65], [66]. The synergetic nature makes this type of converter naturally gain re-balance of the power loss, therefore, offering an extra degree of design freedoms. In fact, similar ideas can also be found in literature, e.g. cascaded DC-DC stage handling the major switching actions, while the DC-AC stage only dissipates minimum switching loss [67]-[69].

Different from the medium and high voltage applications, the scaling laws of MLC could be different due to the physical limits of passive/active devices in low-voltage area, and enable the use of a wide range of topologies, including those that are originally unfavorable in medium and high voltage applications. For example, topologies with difficulty in DC voltage balancing are apparently impractical in medium voltage applications, but when in low voltage applications, balancing circuit becomes a feasible solution. As the demand for MLCs keeps increasing, it can be anticipated that new topology will keep emerging in the future. While seeking new topologies, systematic topology derivation and the PWM design approach can greatly facilitate the implementation of topologies in practice.

1.2. Multilevel converters research review

The performance of power converters has been greatly improved since the 1900s thanks to improved devices, circuits, manufactures, design methods, etc. As the performance of the power converter approaching its limits, the manual design becomes less efficient with dramatically increasing workloads, especially when considering millions of combinations of different materials and layouts of components [70]. To reduce manual duty and accelerate the design process, automation methods are emerging in recent years [71]. Meanwhile, multi-physics and/or multi-objective optimizations are also introduced to push the limits of power converter even further [72], [73]. In recent years, virtual prototype [74], artificial intelligence [75], have also been studied. Like other digital techniques, these new methods normally benefit from the great advancement of computer science as well as profound understandings of the power converter.

As for MLCs, they normally have much more complicated circuits compared to other converters, therefore, demanding a lot more design efforts. To date, over three thousand papers (nearly one-third of all the MLC papers) have been published on IEEE Xplore regarding three-level converters. The research volume is stimulated by both the growing industrial needs and the deepening

knowledge from academia. As the research on three-level topologies approaching saturation, more and more research efforts are committed to higher-level converters with increased complexity. Higher complexity comes with more topological derivations and operation/control freedoms. This can be reflected in the recent MLC research.

In practice, to find the proper power converter for a specific application, both the topology and its operation methods should be considered in a synergic way. First, the design possibilities could be fundamentally constrained by the topology. Without well-established topology database, the design results could not be comprehensive in general. Besides, proper modulation/control strategies are necessary to ensure the basic operation. Without considering various applicable PWM, the design results could be narrow and limited. Therefore, both the topology and the operation method are of great importance for developing advanced MLCs. In the following sections, the current topological derivation methods and PWM methods will be briefly reviewed to elaborate on this opinion.

1.2.1 Derivation methods of multilevel converters

Research of topological structures of voltage source MLCs can be traced back as early as in 1980s [76]. They typically consist of multiple DC links and the switching networks that can be controlled to select proper voltage levels during operation. Different switching networks could lead to different topologies, e.g. the family of diode-clamped MLCs introduced in [77]. In recent two decades, numbers of studies have also been reported in literature focusing on not only voltage-source MLCs but also current-source MLCs, as shown in **Figure 1-5** [78]-[82].

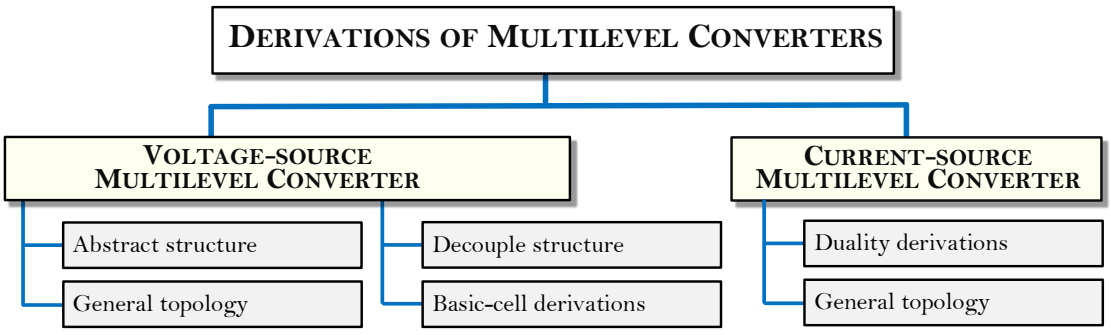


Figure 1-5 Derivation methods of multilevel converters.

A generalized self-balancing MLC is proposed in [78], from which several existing voltage-source topologies, e.g. diode-clamped and capacitor-clamped topologies, can be derived. In [78], the concept named level line is used to explain the output voltage level based on the natural structural division of this self-balancing topology. Though the generalized topology is composed of

minimal cells (such as half-bridge or three-level cells), systematic topology derivation is difficult to be realized based on the suggested procedure. More importantly, some topologies (such as SMC, switched capacitor MLC) are hard to be explained or analyzed based on this generalized self-balancing MLC.

In [79], a concept that divides a specific hybrid voltage-source multilevel topology into two functional parts, named level generation and polarity generation, is proposed to establish the link between the topological structure and its operation. However, this concept cannot be generalized to other kinds of voltage-source multilevel converters as 1) it limits the relationship between the two parts must be low-frequency coupling; 2) it can only represent one fixed structure for a specific type of MLC.

Recently several voltage-source topology derivation methods are summarized in [80], which can cover a large number of topologies and can be considered as a good extension to the generalized topology in [78]. Attempts were given to highlight some specific rules based on expertise. For example, in [80], two types of derivation methods are reviewed for voltage-source converters (VSCs): 1) generalized-topology method; 2) basic-cell method. Based on the former type, one needs to get a general topology first, and then simplify it according to various requirements. The general principles of topology deduction can hardly be obtained in this way. While the second one limits the basic cells self-balanced, which makes the topology deduction lose generality. In fact, some general structures of voltage-source MLCs are summarized in [65], [66]; however, without clear mathematical interpretations, which are difficult to be implemented for other types of MLCs.

To derive current-source MLCs, dual principles are normally utilized to facilitate the topological derivation process [81], [82]. In [81], the duality principle is utilized to construct the current-source MLCs topologies based on the existent voltage-source MLCs topologies. In [82], such duality principle is also utilized for MMC derivation considering both the sub-modules and cell connections. In addition to dual principles, some research works utilize the common structure of MLCs, intentionally or unintentionally, to help their derivation process of new topologies [66]. The derivation methods of matrix-type MLCs are barely discussed in the literature, even though there are several types of topologies published as shown in **Figure 1-4**. The structure of matrix-type MLCs is more complicated than the other two types, which normally requires a large number of active devices and special design consideration [27], [31].

1.2.2 PWM design methods of multilevel converters

A properly designed modulation scheme can greatly improve the performance of converter, which is critical for real-world requirements, e.g. output power quality, thermal management capability,

power density, device volumes, and so on [83]. However, due to the sophisticated topology structure of MLCs, the design methods are normally case-dependent and lack of generality. There are several modulation methods in general (as summarized in **Figure 1-6**), such as carrier-based PWM (CB-PWM), space-vector-based PWM (SVM), low-frequency modulation, etc. [84]-[89].

As one of the classical low-frequency modulation method, selective harmonic elimination (SHE) typically operates the converter in a very low switching frequency and utilize limited pulses within one fundamental period to eliminate the selected harmonics [89]. This type of methods can guarantee a low total harmonic distortion and switching losses, and well developed for high-power applications where the device switching frequency is dominantly limited by hardware constrains. The basic theory is to tune the output pulses and eliminate certain harmonics through Fourier transform (normally a precalculated table is needed for different operation conditions) [89]. As for model predictive control (MPC) based modulation, it is quite straightforward for a conventional two-level/three-level converter. However, the computation burden could dramatically increase for MLCs with a large number of output levels. Besides, there could be many pulse patterns which further increases the design complexity [88]. The same issues will emerge when dealing with SHE method.

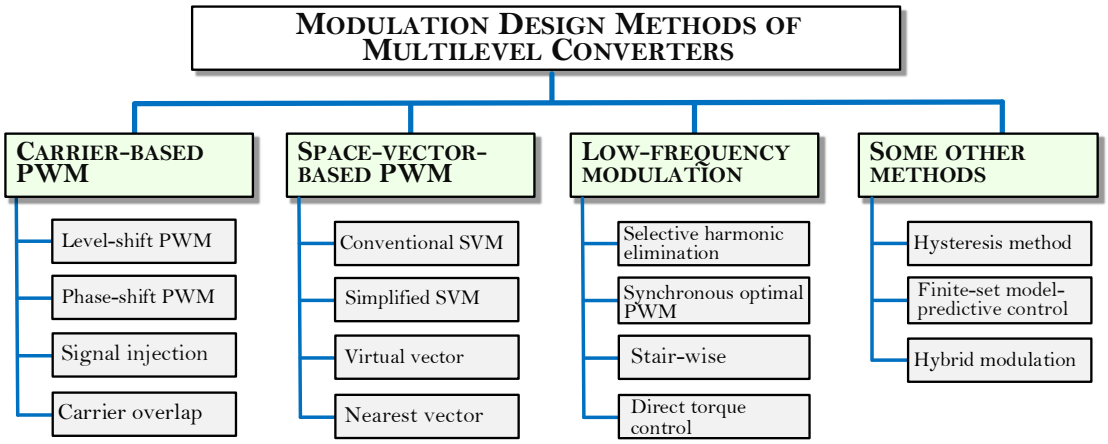


Figure 1-6 Modulation design methods of multilevel converters.

In addition to the above methods, SVM has been well adopted for MLCs for decades [90], [91]. It can fully utilize the freedoms of degrees in MLCs through exhaustive research of potential permutations of switching sequences. Numerous papers are focused on practical problems for some promising topologies, e.g. neutral-point voltage balance of three-level NPC topology [92], common-mode reduction of five-level paralleled current-source converter (CSC) [93]. However, it can not easily be extended for high-level topologies due to lack of modularity [94], especially when the converter is not modularly composited.

However, compared to SVM, CB-PWM has inherent scalability and modularity towards MLCs, which makes it quite popular in real-world applications [85]. Various CB-PWM methods are developed for different MLCs, e.g. level shift PWM (LS-PWM), phase shift PWM (PS-PWM), zero sequence injection CB-PWM, discontinuous PWM (DPWM) [85], [86], [95]. While existing CB-PWM design methods are mainly focused on a specific topology and only discuss very limited PWM patterns [96]-[98]. In practice, CB-PWM has been successfully implemented for MLCs with highly modular structures, e.g. CHB, MMC and flying-capacitor clamped converters [99]. In recent papers, growing efforts have been dedicated to CB-PWM methods for hybrid-clamped MLCs [100]-[104]. Recently, an MPC-based modulation design for ANPC-based MLCs with identical structures was proposed, which can simplify the algorithm and reduce the computation burden [105]. Similar concepts can be further generalized for CB-PWM design methods for MLCs. In fact, identical structures in circuits can be considered as sub-isomorphism in graphical sense, which in turn, transfers the PWM design problem into the identification and utilization of isomorphic structures inside the topology.

In terms of some specific MLCs, e.g. the ANPC-based topologies, they normally feature a highly non-modular structure, and their general form inherently consists of a larger number of devices compared with conventional NPC topology. Therefore, it is sometimes favorable to simplify the ANPC topology while ensuring feasibility and functionality. However, the existing methodology of obtaining simplified topologies is highly based on experiences, hardware configuration, and product requirements. Due to the lack of general frameworks with a systematic analysis of topological structure, such a process is normally a case-by-case study. Besides, the PWM design process has to be carried out repeatedly for each newly simplified topology. It leads to repetitive work and further reduces the converter design efficiency.

Another concern in practice is the fault-tolerant operation of the MLCs. It could be very difficult and inefficient to analyze without proper methods, especially for those with a large number of redundant switching states, e.g. ANPC converters. To tell if the output can be maintained the same as pre-fault, the applicable switching states are needed to be examined for each case. Moreover, the post-fault algorithms are normally realized through space-vector modulation methods, which are inherently lack of scalability and modularity towards higher-level topologies (e.g. four-level and five-level ANPC topologies). In fact, due to the similarity between topology simplification and switch-open-fault-tolerance, the same philosophy for topology simplification could be utilized for switch-open-fault-tolerance with merits like systematic analysis and scheme design, improved scalability using carrier-based PWM, etc.

1.3. Circuit theory and graph theory in power electronics

Power electronics is cross-disciplinary in nature, and driven by the technologies from electronics, power engineering and control science as summarized by *William E. Newell* in 1970s (see the triangle of power electronics in **Figure 1-7**) [106]. Meanwhile, as the internal driving forces of power electronics approaching their maturity, new technologies and theories are entering the paradigm of power electronics, leading to increasing diversity of the field as shown in **Figure 1-7** [107]. As for power converter topologies, circuit theory is proved to be a very powerful tool, while graph theory also shows great potential for generalizing the existing knowledge and facilitating the topology design in a fundamental way. In the following sections, they will be briefly reviewed.

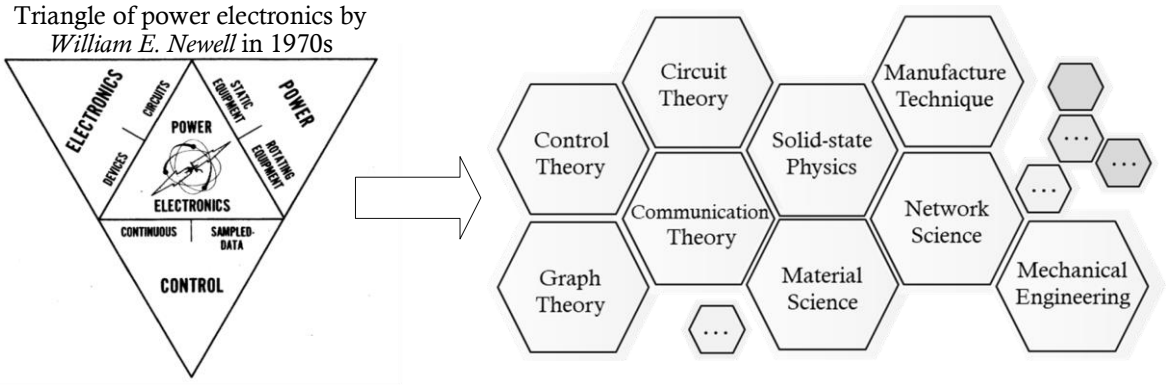


Figure 1-7 The paradigm of power electronics shifts from triangle type to increasing diversity.

1.3.1 Duality methods

Among various circuit theories, dual principles have been served as an important synthesis/analysis tool for power converter topologies. In fact, dual phenomenon of various theories has been noticed during the development of science long before this word firstly introduced in history [108]. In a dual pair (two theories share a dual relationship), complementary or opposite concepts can be mapped with each other from one theory to another, and each theory is still valid. Such a theory can be as simple as a sentence of a specific relationship regarding various objectives, e.g. two points determine a line and two lines determine a point, or as simple as a mathematical function regarding various parameters, e.g. the function describing the dynamic behavior of an ideal inductor/capacitor. Among various theories, the one focused on circuit system (branch of electromagnetism) is one of the fundamentals of power electronics, thus, playing a critical role when designing and analyzing the power converters.

Generally, the dual phenomenon of electromagnetic system has been observed long before the establishment of circuit theory which was firstly implied in *Coulomb*'s law. *Coulomb* found that: (i) "the force between two small spheres charged with electricity was inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them"; (ii) "the force between the two magnetic poles is proportional to the product of the strengths of the poles and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them" [109], [110]. Such that a dual relationship between electrical force and magnetic force exists. In 1847, *Kirchhoff* firstly introduced his fundamental work of classical circuit theory [111]: the *Kirchhoff*'s current law (KCL) and *Kirchhoff*'s voltage law (KVL). As presented in [112] and almost any circuit theory teaching material, KCL states the sum of all current injections at every node must be zero, while KVL states the sum of all voltage drops around any loop must be zero. The fundamental cut-set matrix and the fundamental loop matrix form a dual pair. Another famous dual pair is in the *Maxwell*'s equations, which says the electric field intensity is dual to magnetic flux density [113], [114].

In *A. Russell*'s book (1914, second edition), the *dual* relationships in electrical circuits are thoroughly discussed [115]:"There are many reciprocal relations of this nature in geometry, and the method of reciprocating a theorem may be called the method of duality. In electrical theory, there are also many reciprocal relations, and we shall show that the method of duality often leads to important results. When the solution of the reciprocal of a problem is known, the solution of the problem can always be written down at once."

A summary of *dual* quantities and connections are given as:

(α)	e or V	r	K	ϕ	series
(β)	i or A	1/r	L	q	parallel

where *e* or *V* is voltage cross a component, *i* or *A* is the current flow through the component; *K* is the capacitance of capacitor (or called condenser back then), *L* is the inductance of inductor (or called choking coil back then); *r* is the resistance of resistor; ϕ is the flux, *q* is the charge.

For over a century, dual methods have evolved into many variants, some of them are not well known for researchers. For power converter topologies, two types of dual transformation are developed in history: (i) geometrical dual method, (ii) physical dual method, as shown in **Figure 1-8**. The first type is focused on the dual principles by establishing a direct mapping relationship between dual components. Three different methods can be categorized into this type: (a) conventional geometrical dual method [115]-[118], (b) quasi-dual method [119], (c) input-output dual method [120]. The second type utilizes the dual principles in the physical sense of circuits rather

than topological structure, thus, normally based on the equivalent transformation of circuit dynamics [121].

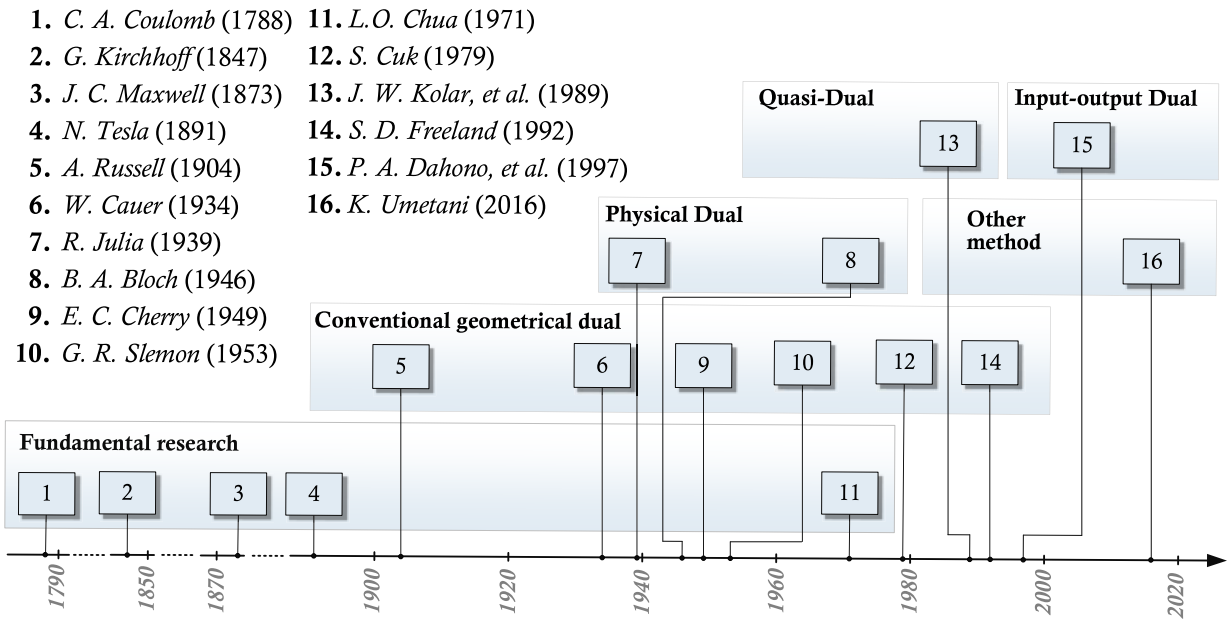


Figure 1-8 Milestones of duality theory for electrical circuit and power converter.

1.3.2 Graphical methods

The graph theory can be dated back to 1736 when *Euler* dealt with the famous puzzle of the bridges of *Königsberg* [122]. Since then, it has been evolved into an important mathematical tool and found significant applications in various applications [123], e.g. Chemistry, Physics, Biology, Computer science, etc. Here the special focus is given on the graph theory for electrical engineering. Many concepts and tools from graph theory have been introduced in this area, e.g. trees, planar graph, directed graph, adjacency matrix, etc. Until recently, dedicated works keep emerging in power system/electronics utilizing graph theoretical methods [124]-[128].

Among various concepts in graph theory, isomorphism of graphs is one of the most important concepts but hardly be mentioned in power electronics. In fact, the definition of isomorphic graph was systematically presented in the graph-theoretical field till the early 1930s [129]. A similar word homeomorphism (coined by *Poincaré* in 1895) appeared in literature quite earlier and its concept kept evolving till 1930s [130]. There is another confusing concept homomorphism in the graph theory, which can be thought as a more general graphical mapping than isomorphism [131]. In power electronics field, isomorphism or homomorphism is normally replaced by a much more ambiguous word “equivalence” to state a similarity between two circuits (geometrically or

physically). In this section, the origin of isomorphic problem and the exact definition of graph isomorphism are introduced.

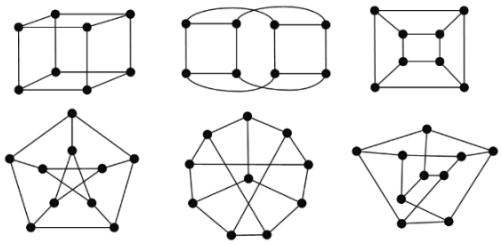


Figure 1-9 Examples of isomorphic graphs.

Graph isomorphism phenomenon has been studied in the graph-theoretical field for over 80 years, which can be expressed as "*two graphs G_1 and G_2 are isomorphic if there exists a* ***one-to-one*** *mapping of the vertices of G_1 onto the vertices of G_2 such that adjacency is preserved, i.e. two vertices in G_1, are adjacent if and only if the corresponding vertices of G_2 are adjacent*" [132].

According to *Whitney*'s work [129]: "*two graphs are electrically equivalent if and only if they are 2-isomorphic, or, if and only if there is a 1-1 correspondence between their arcs so that circuits correspond to circuits*", the isomorphic relationship indicates the electrical equivalence. Therefore, even two power converters look different, they may share the common electrical features as long as they are isomorphic in the sense of graph representation. A natural problem is to find an efficient algorithm to determine whether there is an isomorphism between two given graphs. In literature, this is normally referred as to graph isomorphism (GI) problem [133]. Such problem arises in many practical applications, e.g. automatic retrieval of information, machine translation of languages, pipeline and electric networks, pattern recognition, graph-theoretic enumeration problems, the four-color conjecture, and so on [134]. Though it looks like a straightforward question, the algorithms of the GI problem may require a surprisingly high computation resource due to the lack of efficient algorithms [135]. For instance, through an exhaustive search algorithm, there are $n!$ possible permutations to be compared for two graphs with n vertices, which will easily exceed the practical capability of a real-world computer. In computer science field, complexity theory is established to focus on quantifying computational efficiency of this kind of problems [136]. Although efficient algorithms have already been known for many special classes of graphs, however, they are most unlikely to be useful in practice. The available algorithms with practical significance are still limited only for certain graph classes [133], e.g. trees, and planar graphs.

In terms of the electrical network, the GI problem is also critical and addressed when synthesizing numerous circuits [137], [138]. For power converter research, topological equivalence issue

of DC-DC converters with three switches (it is actually GI problem) was highlighted in [139], and dealt with by specific algorithms. The complexity of such equivalence could dramatically increase as the circuits of MLCs consisting of more nodes and branches. In fact, the GI phenomenon can be found not only in the same type of converters (DC-DC converters), but also in different types of converters, e.g. direct matrix converter (AC-AC) and the T-type NPC converter (DC-AC or AC-DC) have the same structure as revealed in [20]. Benefit from the structural equivalence, unified modulations were proposed for direct matrix converter using the carrier-based concept for T-type NPC converter. Therefore, the existing knowledge of well-known topologies (e.g. T-type NPC converter) can be transformed into the associated topologies (direct matrix converter), which could potentially facilitate the analysis and design process. However, up to now, the fundamental relationships among different MLCs are still unclear. This indeed inspires us to re-consider the relationships of various types of MLCs in graph theoretical perspectives, especially for some VSCs and CSCs with unfamiliar topologies.

1.3.3 Topology cycling phenomenon

The duality and isomorphism are some common features in the science of nature. However, different interpretations in various disciplines make the concept even more inexplicit and mysterious. In fact, both duality and isomorphism have their mathematical interpretation in category theory. The category theory was formulated originally for abstract algebra fields in 1945 by *Eilenberg* and *Mac Lane*. Then, its applications widely appeared in computer science, linguistics, cognitive science, philosophy, and many other areas [140], [141]. From a categorical perspective, if duality and isomorphism are bijective transformations, then, a topology can be transformed into itself by limited steps of dual/isomorphic bijections. In fact, this indicates a cycling phenomenon in power converters, and not only the circuit, but also the features can be shared with various topologies in theory.

In literature, such a phenomenon has gained some early attention. In 1979, *S. Cuk* discussed the DC-DC converter and found that after the dual transformation of the *Cuk* converter, the derived topology had the same circuit as the original one [142]. He defined such feature as topological “invariant”. In 2014, B. W. Williams stated following the discovery in [143]: “This repeated reversing and flip processing of a viable topology will always give a sequence of cycling viable topologies and will cycle back to the original topology.” In [143], duality and unique circuit reconfiguration rules (e.g. flip, inverse) are used to derive DC-DC converters. Since the inverse process does not change the graph of power converter, but only interchanges the inputs and outputs, the resulting converters can be considered as graph isomorphism. The phenomenon was also

appeared in a recent paper, e.g. DC-DC converter synthesis method in 2020 [144]. Though widely exists, unfortunately, neither the theoretical nor the practical investigations of this cycling phenomenon for power converters have been available in the existing literature.

As the database of topologies expanding fast, resemble circuits and methods are needed to be recognized systematically, so that, wasted repetitive research efforts can be avoided. To achieve such a goal, the fundamental relationships among various power converters topologies should be defined clearly to link different converters with universal principles. This is ultimately important for MLCs, since they tend to have complicated circuits and normally are involved in great design efforts. The duality from circuit theory has been proved to be very successful when dealing with power converters. Meanwhile, the isomorphism from graph theory also shows some great potential that can be implemented. Furthermore, they can also be used to transfer the existing knowledge of some existing topologies and facilitate the design process in a more general way. On top of that, though the topology cycling phenomenon can be deduced in category theory and has gained some rough thoughts in literature, its fundamentals are still unclear. In this work, it will be investigated and implemented for power converter, in particular, the VSCs and CSCs for the first time through the well-established dual principles and emerging isomorphic theory.

1.4. Research objectives and contributions

The increased diversity of research paradigm along with emerging applications, e.g. low voltage applications, drives the MLC technique towards their mature stage with higher performance in general, which requiring innovated design methodology. Since the scaling laws of low voltage fields could be different from conventional medium/high voltage scenarios, more MLCs topologies could be accepted as reasonable candidates. As briefly reviewed before, the current topology/modulation methods are mainly utilized in a case-by-case or type-by-type way. This may narrow down the power converter design space and lead to sub-optimal results when finding a proper converter and its suitable operation method. To avoid such limitations, systematic topological synthesis and modulation design methods are necessary to improve the design database of MLC topologies with more derivatives and increased circuit-level complexity.

In detail, there are several research objectives and contributions to this work:

(1) Topology fundamental relationships of power converters

With increasing new power topologies, a large number of circuits with resembling structures and similar features could emerge and such phenomenon could be more extensive in the future. This may lead to wasted research resources when similar circuits/schemes are being reinvented/re-examined. Therefore, it is beneficial to establish the well-defined, clear and universal

relationships among various power converter topologies, such that the existing and future derived topologies can be linked with each other and sharing the existing knowledge in a more comprehensive way. In **Chapter 2**, the universal relationships for power converters, especially the VSCs and CSCs, will be investigated based on the dual theory and the graphical isomorphic theory. Furthermore, by synergistically implementation of these two theories, the topology cycling phenomenon will be discussed for different kinds of VSCs and CSCs. With such relationships, the derived topology or PWM can also be utilized for other topology, therefore, further reduce the design burden and accelerate the design process.

(2) Mathematical model and general derivation rules for MLCs

The derivation methods for voltage-source MLCs have been developed for nearly 50 years, however, the current approaches are still highly dependent on the expertise of designers and cannot cover all the main types of topologies. Meanwhile, as important types of MLCs, the current-source type and the matrix-based type have not been well studied. From the circuit level, both the mathematical unifications and the general derivation rules of different MLCs are still unclear. This indeed highly limits the understanding of various MLCs, and potentially leads to narrow and biased designs. To deal with such issue, unified mathematical models of MLCs should be obtained by establishing the fundamental relationships among different topologies in a structure-level. And then, the general derivation rules can be introduced to concretely deal with the MLC derivation issues in a comprehensive way. This part of work will be discussed in detail in **Chapter 3**.

(3) PWM design for non-modular MLC topology

Suffering from a more complex circuit appearance, the PWM design of some non-modular MLCs tend to become dramatically complicated with an increased number of output levels. Till present, the general PWM design method is still missing for those with complicated circuits and lack of modular structure. In particular, ANPC converters are chosen as examples since most of the non-modular MLCs can be derived from this type. To fully explore the potentials of MLCs, especially for the internal device utilizations, the new modulation design method is highly demanding and will be presented in **Chapter 4**. On the other hand, the multilevel ANPC converters have more control freedoms compared to the conventional NPC topology due to increased switching redundancies. However, the device utilization is inherently low with conventional PWM methods compare to other modular MLCs (e.g. FCC, CHB converters and MMC). To deal with such challenge, the identical circuits in ANPC topology are utilized in **Chapter 4** with PS PWM method to achieve similar features in CHB converter or MMC.

(4) Practical concerns in terms of converter simplifications and fault-tolerance

(i) With the increase of voltage levels, active-neutral-point-clamped (ANPC) multilevel topology can be dramatically complex and consists of a high number of switching devices. Therefore, simplification of ANPC topology is favored by both manufacturers and customers, as the device costs, control complexity, and maintenance burden, can be reduced. However, due to the complicated topological structure of ANPC topology, systematic simplification method is not available in the literature. To solve this problem, in **Chapter 5**, the matrix representation of multilevel converter can be utilized combined with the systematic PWM design method to achieve a general systematic simplification approach for multilevel ANPC converter.

(ii) Fault-tolerant operation is another concern addressed in **Chapter 5**. Open-circuit faults in ANPC converters can degrade the reliability and cause distorted outputs. However, the systematic analysis and PWM design method are still unclear in the literature, particularly when multiple switches suffer from open circuit faults. In fact, due to the similarity between topology simplification and switch-open-fault-tolerance, the same philosophy for topology simplification could be utilized. Though the unified matrix structure is introduced for multilevel topology derivation, now it can also be further modified for the open-circuit fault analysis and PWM design. By using such a tool, the applicable PWM patterns of fault-condition ANPC converter can be systematically derived. Therefore, random enumeration and non-systematic case-by-case design can be avoided for ANPC converters.

In summary, this work achieves contributions on four levels:

(1) In theory level, the isomorphic theory is implemented for VSCs and CSCs in the first time to establish the intrinsic principles for power converters. In addition, existing dual methods are thoroughly investigated with practical considerations.

(2) In the circuit level, both the duality and isomorphism are utilized to transform different power converter topologies. Special attentions are dedicated to the VSCs and CSCs. Besides, the topology cycling phenomenon is systematically investigated, and the cycling rules will be proposed for dual and isomorphic topologies.

(3) In the structure level, the fundamental relationships are utilized for obtaining the general structures of MLCs, e.g. duality. Then, a method for systematical topology derivation of MLCs is proposed to cover voltage-source MLCs, current-source MLCs, matrix MLCs with unified matrix models. In such a way, the derivation process of MLCs is systematically simplified and results in various emerging topologies with practical values. Meanwhile, the topology cycling rules are implemented for various MLCs with sharing knowledge of existing converters.

(4) In PWM level, the hierarchical decomposition method is utilized for systematical PWM design for ANPC converters. The internal identical parts of converters are hierarchically

decomposed to show how the utilized structure-level equivalent relationships are utilized to not only transfer topology properties from one converter to another but also transfer the operation properties simultaneously to facilitate the PWM design. Besides, matrix-based approach is also utilized and combined with the aforementioned systematic carrier-based PWM for topology simplification and fault-tolerant operation of ANPC converters, which also has potentials for other ANPC-based derivatives.

The research logic can also be demonstrated through the following **Figure 1-10**.

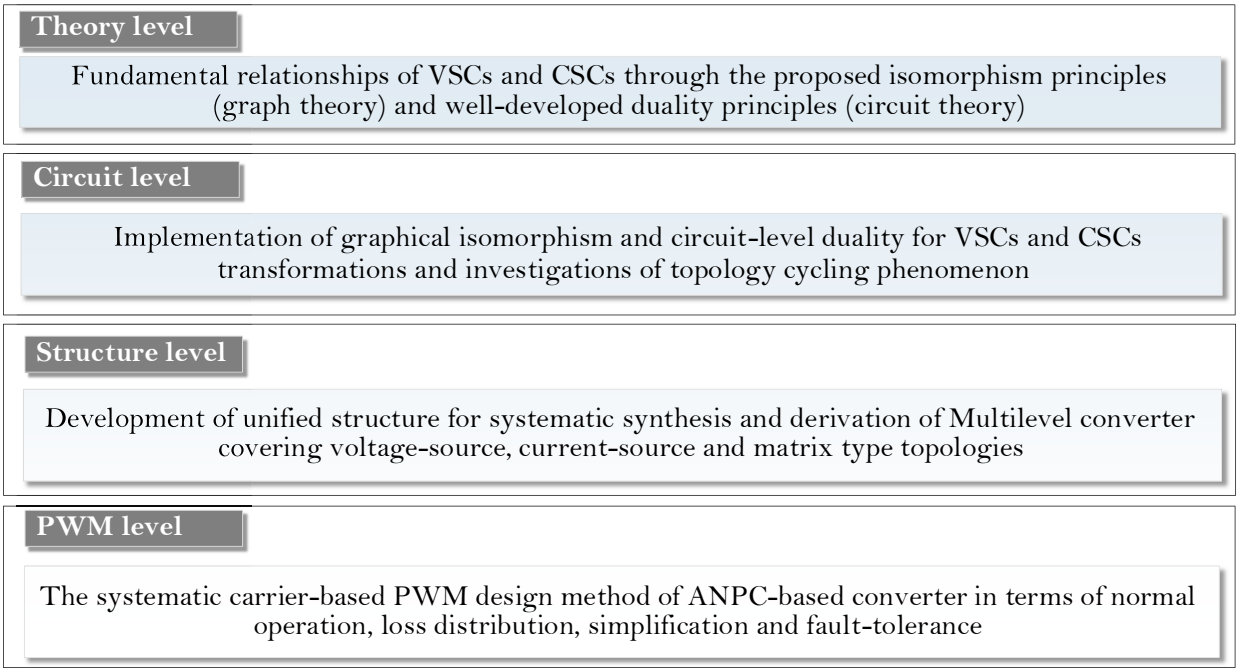


Figure 1-10 Research logic of this work.

Chapter 2

Fundamental relationships of power converters[1]

As briefly reviewed in **Chapter 1**, the topology derivation and modulation design are two of the challenges in MLC research, and lack of systematic methodologies. This can be potentially solved by developing new fundamental relationships among power converters. Historically, various topologies were developed through topological transformation in a circuit/graph theoretical perspective. To better understand the relationship of various converter topologies, circuit theory combined with graph theory can be utilized to link different circuits with universal principles.

In this chapter, the major achievements are focused on the theoretical level innovations of the power converters, in particular, for VSCs and CSCs. In details, three tasks have been done: (1) First, the dual transformation of power converters is thoroughly demonstrated, some of them may not be well-known by the power electronics community, i.e. duality in non-planar circuits; (2) Furthermore, the isomorphic transformation is investigated for VSCs and CSCs in the first time, followed by its potentials on modulation design; (3) At the end, the cycling phenomenon of dual and isomorphic converters is elaborated for the first time. Cycling rules are highlighted with discussions of potential applications.

These achievements can facilitate topology derivation and modulation design in comprehensive ways. For instance, the isomorphic theory can be utilized to transfer the existing modulation schemes from one converter to its isomorphic converter. Such isomorphism can be utilized to unify the modulation design process, providing a much more systematic approach covering various VSCs and CSCs. In **Chapter 3**, the relationships in a structure level of the MLCs are investigated, e.g. duality, resulting in the unified matrix models of the MLCs that will be utilized for

[1] Publications out of this Chapter:

Yuzhuo Li and Yunwei Li, "Power Converters Topological Transformation Using Dual and Isomorphic Principles," in *IEEE Open Journal of Power Electronics*, vol. 1, pp. 74-87, 2020.
Yuzhuo Li, Li Ding and Yunwei Li, "Isomorphic Relationships between Voltage-Source and Current-Source Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 34, no. 8, pp. 7131-7135, Aug. 2019.
Yuzhuo Li and Yunwei Li, "Dual and Isomorphic Power Converters with the Topology Cycling Phenomenon," *2020 IEEE Applied Power Electronics Conference and Exposition (APEC)*, New Orleans, LA, USA, 2020, pp. 1176-1182.
Li Ding, **Yuzhuo Li** and Yunwei Li, "A New Current Source Converter Using AC-type Flying-Capacitor Technique," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, 2021, in press.

systematic topology derivations for all kinds of topologies. Besides, the cycling transformation rules can be utilized to establish the links among VSCs and CSCs so that if one converter was well-studied, the knowledge (e.g. operation methods, topology) of it can be transferred for associated ones (examples can be found in **Chapter 3**).

The logic structure of this chapter is shown in **Figure 2-1**.

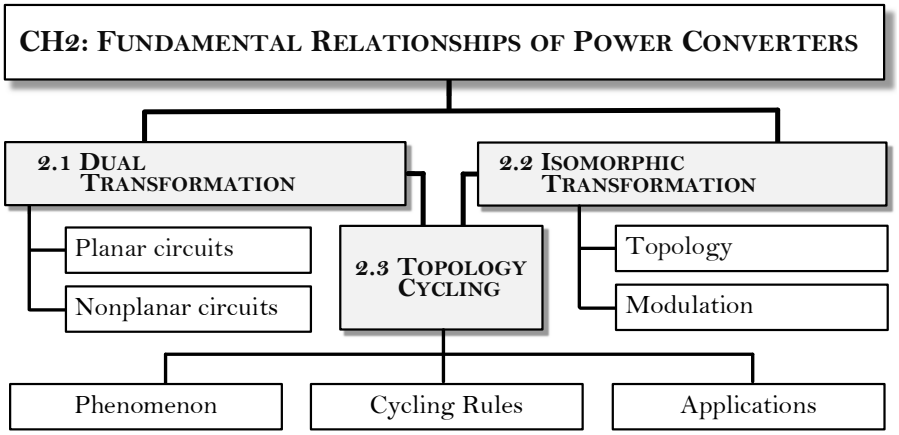


Figure 2-1 Logic structure of Chapter 2.

2.1. Dual transformation

First, some basic concepts of circuit theory are introduced as follows [112], [145]:

(1) A ***graph*** is a finite set of N vertices (nodes in circuit), together with a set of L edges (branches in circuit), each of them connecting a pair of distinct vertices. In circuit theory, the graph of an electrical circuit can be uniquely determined by the topological information. **Figure 2-2(a)** shows a graph (N=4 and L=4) abstracted from the demonstrated circuit when its switch is in OFF state (S=0).

(2) A ***vertex*** in the graph of a circuit refers to any node on a circuit where two or more circuit components meet (e.g. what the number 1, 2, 3, 4 denote in **Figure 2-2(a)**).

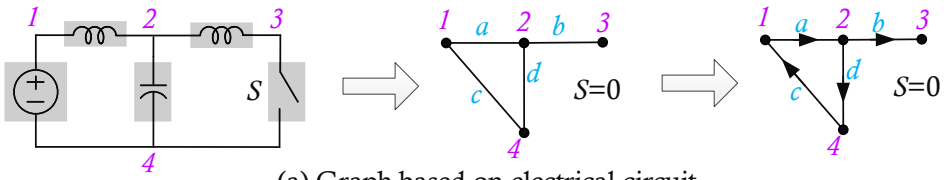
(3) An ***edge*** in the graph of a circuit refers to the branch connecting two vertices (e.g. what the letter a, b, c, d denote in **Figure 2-2(a)**).

(4) A ***directed graph*** or ***digraph*** is a graph that has oriented edges (or directed edges or directed arcs or directed lines) (e.g. the graph with arrows in **Figure 2-2(a)**).

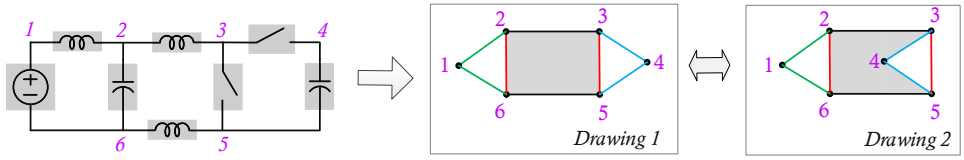
(5) A ***planar graph*** is a graph that can be drawn on the plane with all its edges intersect only at their endpoints. **Figure 2-2(a)** is typically a planar graph, and the corresponding circuit is called a ***planar circuit***.

(6) A ***mesh*** is a loop of a planar graph not containing any graph elements either inside or outside (e.g. in **Figure 2-2(a)**, loop 1→2→4→1 is a mesh).

(7) A ***drawing*** is an injective mapping from a graph into its geometric realization. Two drawings are different if their meshes are different. Therefore, different drawings could exist for the same graph of an electrical circuit (e.g. the shadow two meshes in **Figure 2-2(b)** are bounded by different sets of edges: 2→3→5→6→2 in drawing 1, 2→3→4→5→6→2 in drawing 2).



(a) Graph based on electrical circuit



(b) Different drawings based on the same electrical circuit

Figure 2-2 (a) A simple demonstration circuit with controlled switch S. (b) Different drawings of the same electrical circuit.

2.1.1 Dual transformation of planar circuit

As reviewed in the first chapter, there are various circuits can be linked through the dual relationships. For planar circuits, the geometrical dual methods are commonly implemented in circuit theory. The basic idea is to utilize the dual relationships on the geometric realizations of electrical circuit, i.e. drawings. Followings are some examples.

A. Geometrical dual Example 1

For the circuit shown in **Figure 2-3(a)**, the current in the inductor *L* is a maximum based on [115] when:

$$K = \frac{L}{R^2+\omega^2 L^2} \tag{2-1}$$

where the value *K* is called capacitance in modern way.

On the other hand, for the circuit shown in **Figure 2-3(b)**, the potential difference across *K* is a maximum when it is put in series with an inductor whose self-inductance:

$$L = \frac{K}{1/R^2+\omega^2 K^2} \tag{2-2}$$

It is easy to see that the **Figure 2-3(a)** is dual to **Figure 2-3(b)**. In **Figure 2-3(a)**, the *inductor* is *series* connected with a resistor, and then, RL branch is *parallel* connected with a *capacitor*. In **Figure 2-3(b)**, the *capacitor* is *parallel* connected with a resistor, and then, RC branch is *series* connected with an *inductor*. If the resistance in **Figure 2-3(b)** is 1/R, then, the (2-1) and (2-2) will hold the same form with only exchange between *L* and *K*.

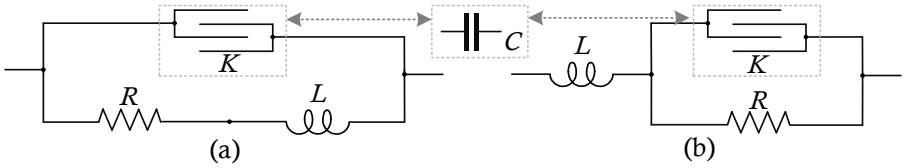


Figure 2-3 Duality between two different RLC resonance circuits [115], (a) RLC circuit with RL series connection, (b) RLC circuit with RC parallel connection.

B. Geometrical dual Example 2

Based on the method introduced in [115], one can derive the dual circuit of **Figure 2-4(a)** into **Figure 2-4(b)**. The series connection of voltage source *E*, resistor *R*, inductor *L* and capacitor *C* is dual with parallel connection of the current source *I*, and *R*', *C*', *L*'.

Such process was generalized in [116] as follows: (1) select a node for each mesh of the original circuit as shown in **Figure 2-4(a)** (note that a node should be assigned for the outside of the mesh, normally it will serve as a reference potential), (2) join each neighbor node with branches

to form the dual graph, each new branch crossed one original branch as shown in **Figure 2-4(a)**, and the component of each new branch is dual to the original one.

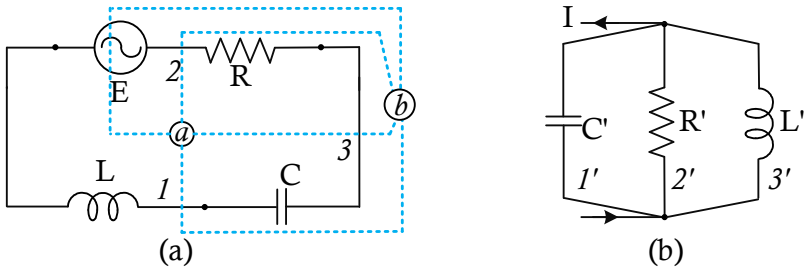


Figure 2-4 Duality between two different RLC circuits with power source [116], (a) RLC circuit with series connection, (b) RLC circuit with parallel connection.

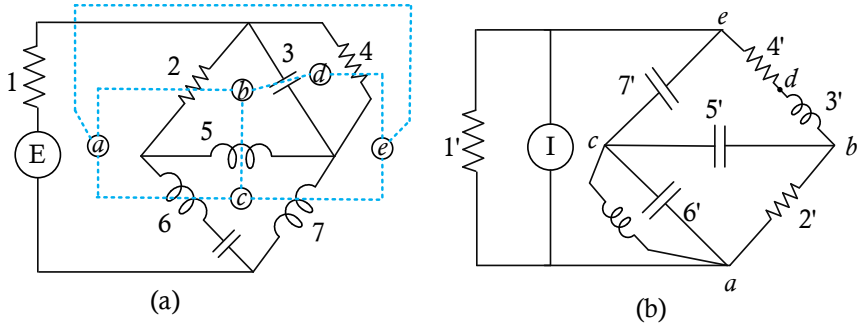


Figure 2-5 Duality between two circuits with multiple meshes [116], (a) passive RLC circuit with active source, (b) the dual version of (a).

Such procedures can be implemented for any planar circuit, e.g. circuit with multiple meshes as shown in **Figure 2-5**. In **Figure 2-5(a)**, the new circuit is sketched in dotted lines, in **Figure 2-5(b)** it is redrawn. It is worth noted that, for each given drawings of an electrical circuit, the geometrical dual of the dual circuit is itself[1].

C. Geometrical dual Example 3

In [117], an identical relation of pattern exists between the magnetic circuit of a transformer and its equivalent electric circuit was revealed through dual principles. As shown in **Figure 2-6(a)**, the fluxes satisfy:

$$\Phi_1+\Phi_2+\Phi_3+\Phi_4=0 \tag{2-3}$$

The induced voltages satisfy:

$$e_1+e_2+e_3+e_4=0 \tag{2-4}$$

[1] This is easy to illustrate by considering the dual circuit drawing (blue dot in **Figure 2-5(a)**) as the circuit to be transformed by duality. Then, the node (from the original circuit drawing) can be selected for each mesh, and the branches (from the original circuit drawing) can be selected as the dual of the dual circuit drawing (blue dot in **Figure 2-5(a)**).

The currents satisfy if it is an ideal transformer:

$$i_1=i_2=i_3=i_4=i \tag{2-5}$$

While the equivalent electric circuit can be derived through a unique dual transformation which shows the same voltage and current relationships. Note that this unique duality only transforms the circuit connection, not the component types.

For an ideal transformer with the series magnetic circuit as shown in **Figure 2-6(b)**, the same procedure can be implemented, and a meshed equivalent circuit can be derived. Based on [146], the equivalent electric circuits are developed with the effects of magnetic non-linearity and losses preserved. The introduced duality follows the same method as in **Figure 2-5**.

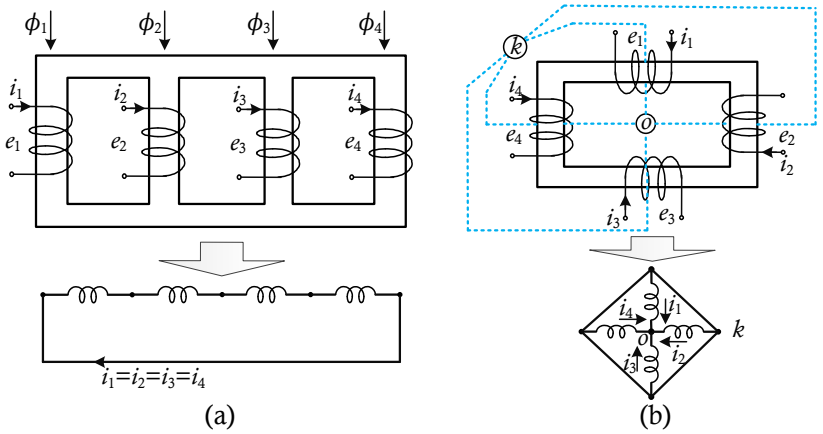


Figure 2-6 (a) Mesh-type transformer and its equivalent electric circuit, (b) junction-type transformer and its equivalent electric circuit.

D. Geometrical Example 4

In [2], the geometrical dual relationship is discussed for power converter with actively controlled switches. The general dual relationship is indicated as shown in **Figure 2-7**. It is one of the most general relationships among switching structures. In addition to the dual circuit connection, for each parts of the original converter, there is an associated dual component in a dual converter including the active switches as shown in **Figure 2-8**.

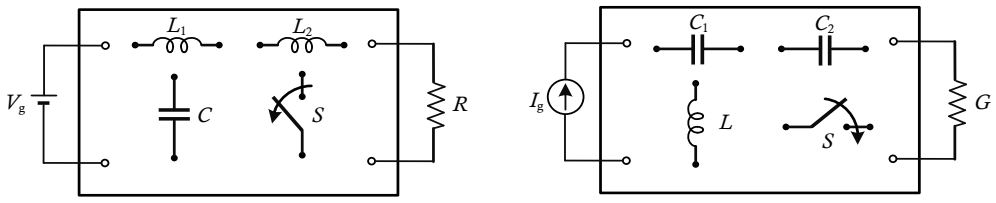


Figure 2-7 Duality among switching DC-to-DC converters.

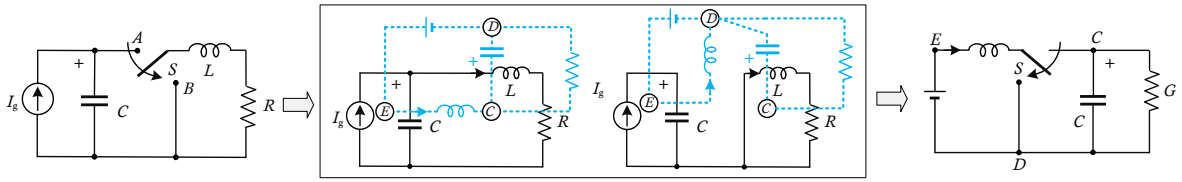


Figure 2-8 Duality between the buck and the boost switching converters.

In [118], this relationship in power circuits is thoroughly discussed. Various dual pairs of ideal power switches are discovered as shown in **Table. 2-I**. In addition, the magnetic device in power converter can also be considered, which can cover a large number of power converters (e.g. resonant converter). However, due to the complicated physical nature of the magnetic components, such derivation is normally conducted with certain simplifications. The transformer can be modeled as an ideal transformer with the magnetizing inductance split as demonstrated in **Figure 2-9**. And the dual transformation can preserve the ideal transformer while substitute the inductor with capacitors. The resulting impedance can have the dual equations as listed in **Figure 2-9**.

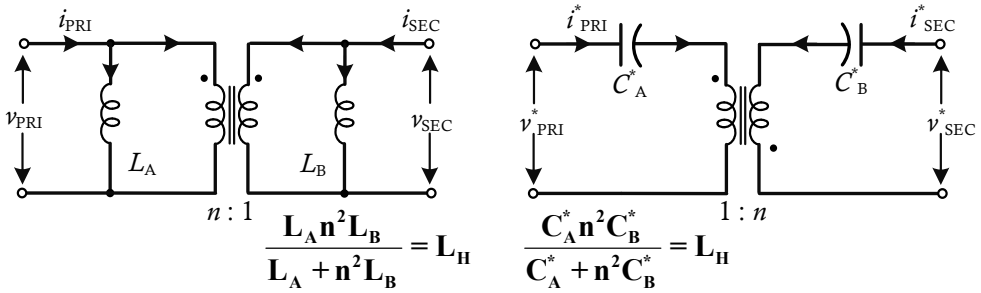
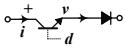
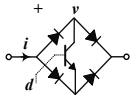
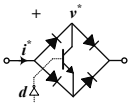


Figure 2-9 An ideal transformer with the magnetizing inductance split, and its dual.

Table 2-I Ideal switches and their duals

Symbol and name	Defining relations	Dual defining relations	Symbol and name
 Ideal rectifier	$i \geq 0$ $v \leq 0$ $iv = 0$ always	$v^* \geq 0$ $i^* \leq 0$ $i^*v^* = 0$ always	 Rectifier (reversed)
 1-Quadrant switch	$v = 0$, $i \geq 0$ } for d=1 $v \geq 0$, $i = 0$ } for d=0 $iv = 0$ always	$i^* = 0$, $v^* \geq 0$ } for d=1 $i^* \geq 0$, $v^* = 0$ } for d=0 $i^*v^* = 0$ always	 1-Quadrant switch (inversed control)
 2-Quadrant switch	$i \geq 0$, $v \leq 0$ } for d=1 $i = 0$ for d=0 $iv = 0$ always	$v^* \geq 0$, $i^* \leq 0$ } for d=1 $v^* = 0$ for d=0 $i^*v^* = 0$ always	 2-Quadrant switch

(bidirectional voltage)			(bidirectional current)
 4-Quadrant switch	$v = 0$ for d=1 $i = 0$ for d=0 $iv = 0$ always	$i^* = 0$ for d=1 $v^* = 0$ for d=0 $i^*v^* = 0$ always	 4-Quadrant switch

2.1.2 Dual transformation of non-planar circuit

In addition to geometrical duality-based methods which is preferred for planar circuits, some other dual methods was introduced in the literature to deal with nonplanar circuits. The basic idea is to transform the nonplanar circuit into equivalent planar circuits, while all the operation features are preserved. Followings are some typical examples.

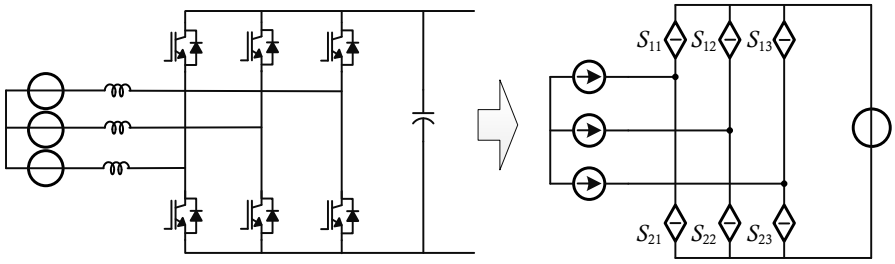


Figure 2-10 Power circuit of a three-phase DC voltage link converter system.

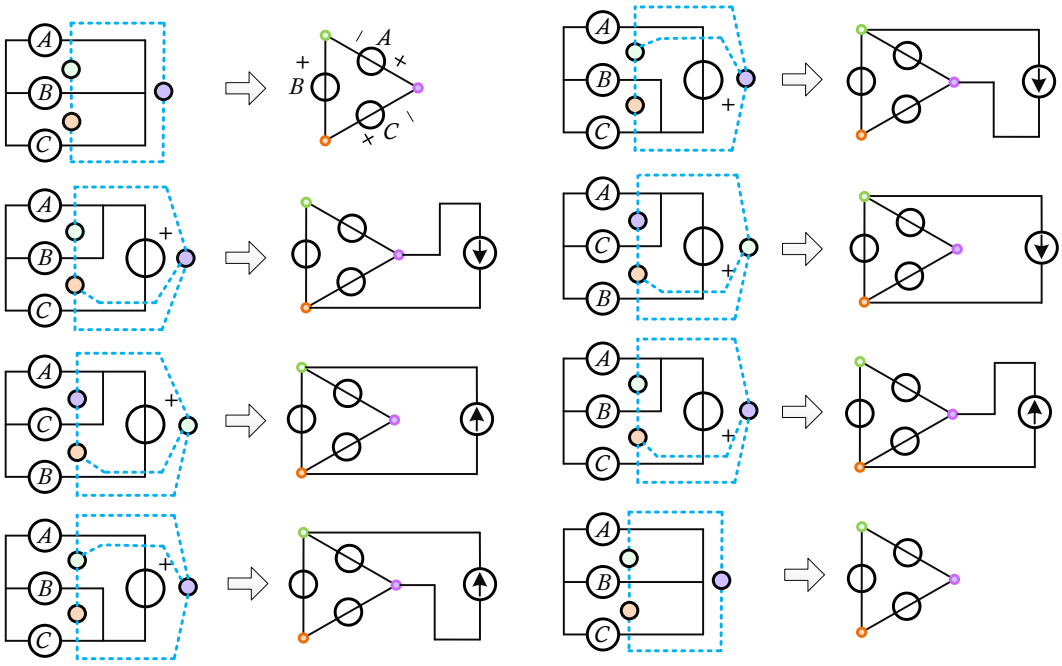


Figure 2-11 Dual transformation of all eight switching states from DC voltage link converter to DC current link converter.

A. Quasi-dual Example

In [119], the topological transformation between a three-phase DC voltage link converter (see **Figure 2-10**) and a three-phase DC current link converter (see **Figure 2-12**) is realized through the quasi-dual method. In fact, although the three-phase converter is a nonplanar circuit, the power circuit under each switching states is planar, with which the strict dual method is compatible. The details of such transformation process are shown in **Figure 2-11**. After derivation of all switching states of three-phase DC voltage link converter, the eight dual circuits are combined to form the complete topology of three-phase DC current link converter as shown in **Figure 2-12**.

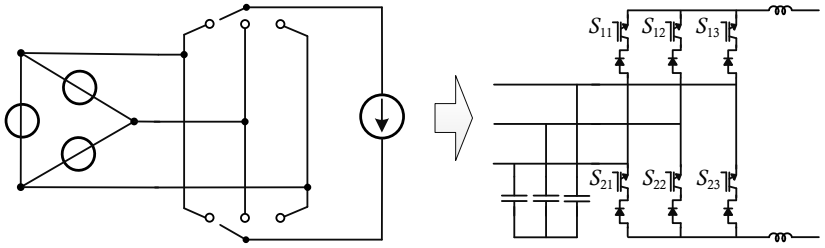


Figure 2-12 Power circuit of a three-phase DC current link converter system.

B. Input-output dual Example

To overcome the nonplanar nature of three-phase converter system and establish the dual duality relationship between voltage-source inverter (VSI) and current-source inverter (CSI), the input-output dual method is introduced in [120]. Although the three-phase system is nonplanar, the input/output equivalent circuits are planar as shown in **Figure 2-13** and **Figure 2-14** where the strict dual relationship can be derived as summarized in **Table 2-II**. Besides, the PWM method of VSI can be transformed into CSI version through such dual relationship, resulting in a dual performance of the input/output harmonics.

Table 2-II Dual relationships between voltage-source and current-source three-phase inverters

Voltage-source	**Current-source**
Line-to-line voltages	Line currents
Line-to-line switching states	Line switching states
AC voltage sources	AC current sources
AC inductance	AC capacitance
DC current source	DC voltage source
DC side current	DC side voltage
DC capacitance	DC inductance

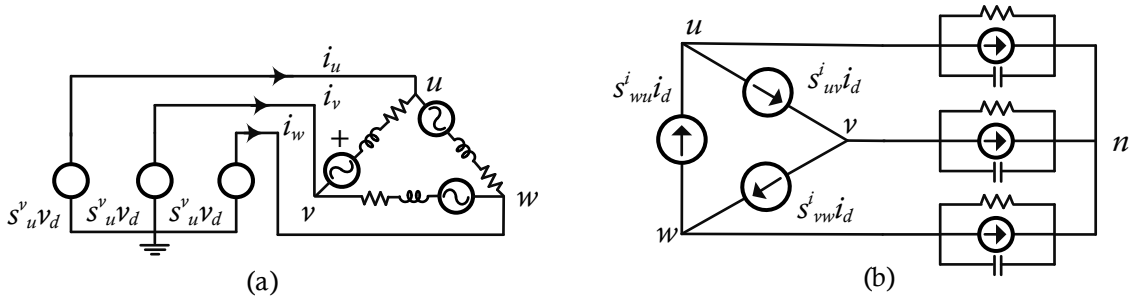


Figure 2-13 Output equivalent circuits of (a) voltage-source and (b) current-source inverters.

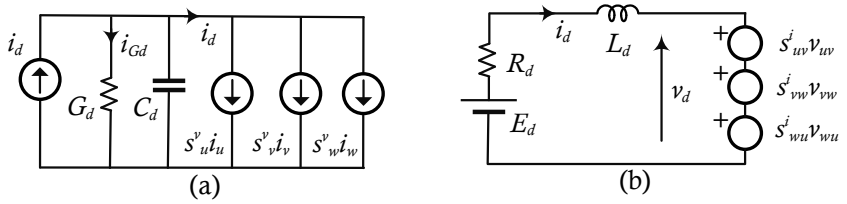


Figure 2-14 Input equivalent circuits of (a) voltage-source and (b) current-source inverters.

C. Physical dual Example 1

In *Julia*'s method [121], the first step is to choose a proper node, and then introduce a junction-type transformer to preserve the physical properties, e.g. current distributions. Such an introduced transformer should result in a planar circuit. After the transformation, the dual circuit can be easily derived through conventional geometrical duality. In **Figure 2-15**, the process is shown in detail. Node A is chosen, and a transformer is introduced to replace the original intercross branch *AD* with a separated new branch *A'D'*. The conventional strict dual method can be implemented for derived equivalent planar circuit **Figure 2-15(d)** and resulting in a transformer-enabled planar dual circuit as shown in **Figure 2-15(f)** or **(g)**.

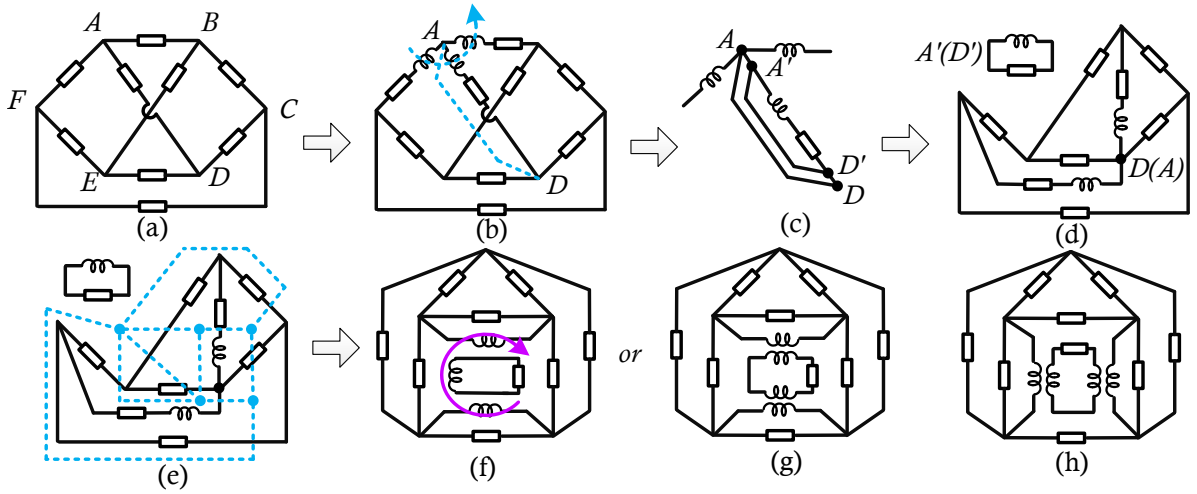


Figure 2-15 *Julia*'s physical dual method for a nonplanar circuit. (a) Original nonplanar circuit, (b) selected node A, (c) equivalent transformation through ideal transformer, (d) derived equivalent planar circuit, (e)

implementation of conventional geometrical dual method, (f) derived dual circuit, (g) another dual circuit with 2-widing transformer, (h) derived dual circuit if node D is chosen.

D. Physical dual Example 2

Another method was introduced by *Bloch* in [121] through the fictitious junction point, which is the generalization of *Julia*'s method. The basic idea is to utilize an ideal transformer to enable the introduced node to remove the intercross branches. Therefore, all the cross-over branches can be transformed into planar circuit with introduced nodes. In **Figure 2-16**, this method is implemented for the same nonplanar circuit in **Figure 2-15(a)** and results in another dual circuit as shown in **Figure 2-16(f)**. Furthermore, the required number of ideal transformers is reduced compared to *Julia*'s method (see **Figure 2-15(f)~(h)**).

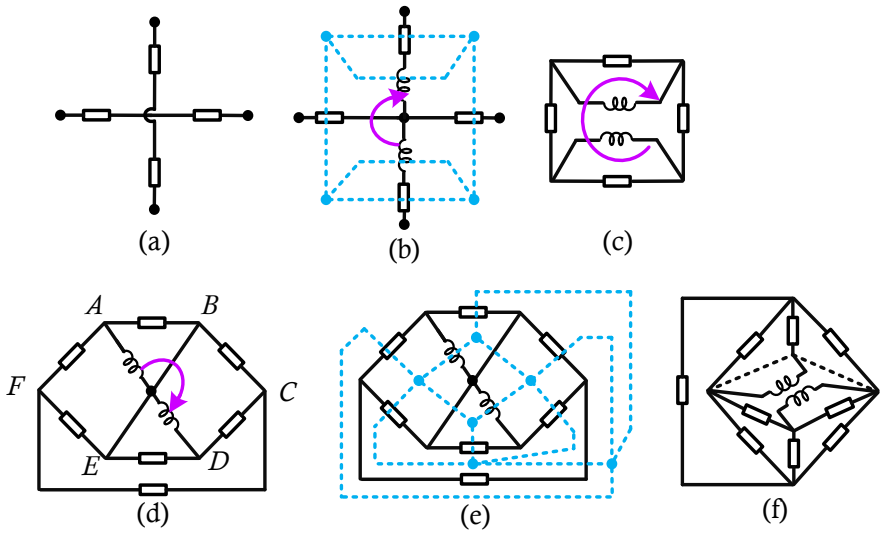


Figure 2-16 Physical dual method through fictitious junction point for a nonplanar circuit. (a) Original nonplanar circuit, (b) introduced fictitious junction point through ideal transformer, (c) the dual transformation, (d) implementation of fictitious junction point method for nonplanar circuit in Figure 17, (e) the dual transformation through strict dual method, (f) derived dual circuit.

E. Other dual method

In addition to geometrical and physical duality-based transformation methods, other methods can also be found in the literature. Recently, in [147], the *Lagrangian* dynamic-based method is introduced for both planar and non-planar circuit. This method utilizes the *Lagrangian* dynamics to model the power circuits in terms of charges and fluxes directly. And the constraints of electric nodes and magnetic nodes are shown in **Figure 2-17**. In this method, resistors can be modeled by electric dissipation through Reighley's dissipation function inductance (see **Figure 2-18(a)**). While the *Lagrangian* of a current source can be modeled as an inductor with an infinite

inductance (see **Figure 2-18(b)**). Since the dynamic properties can be preserved through equivalent *Lagrangian* without the circuit limitations, it can be implemented for any types of power converters. In **Figure 2-19**, two dual converters are shown through this method: (a) the conventional CSC same as in **Figure 2-12**, (b) a planar dual version also mentioned in [148]. Different from other methods, the *Lagragian* dynamic transformation also preserves the switching action constraints which are also known as modulation process. Therefore, not only the topology appearance but also the modulation schemes are transformed simultaneously.

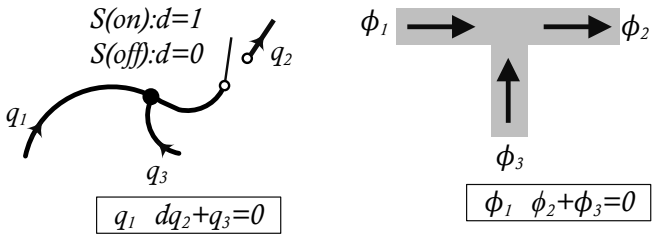


Figure 2-17 Constraints of an electric/magnetic node. (a) Constraint at a node of conductive wires, (b) Constraint at a node of magnetic core.

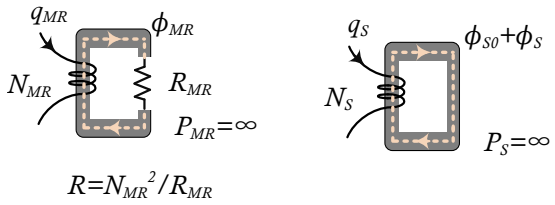


Figure 2-18 Analytical models of a resistor and a current source. (a) Magnetic model of resistance R, (b) Model of current source.

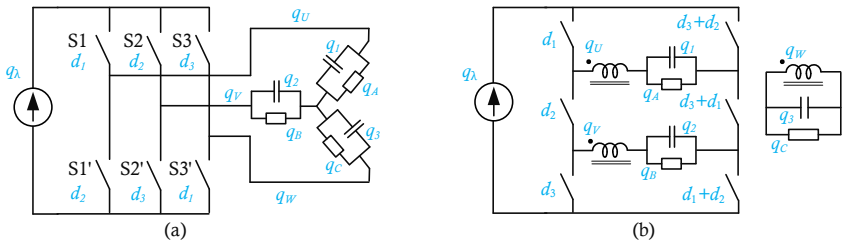


Figure 2-19 Dual topologies of a conventional non-planar three-phase VSC. (a) Non-planar three-phase CSC with three legs, (b) planar three-phase CSC with two legs and enabled through a three-phase transformer.

2.1.3 Summary of various duality-based methods

A. The application scenarios of different dual methods

In literature, the geometrical dual methods are the most commonly used duality method of power converters. In [81], such a method is verified thoroughly for many types of multilevel CSCs conformation. While the conventional geometrical dual method can only be implemented for planar

circuits, which are basically the single-phase DC-AC/AC-AC converters or DC-DC converters with simple circuit forms.

For nonplanar circuits shown in **Figure 2-20**, other dual methods should be considered. While quasi-dual method is particularly implemented for dual transformation from three-phase VSC to three-phase CSC based on each switching state since the VSC becomes equivalently planar under each state. On the other hand, the *Lagrangian* dynamic-based method is implemented for dual transformations of converters which are based on the equivalent transformation of circuit dynamics instead of topological 1-to-1 mapping, therefore, can be applied for non-planar circuit without the limitation of strict dual methods.

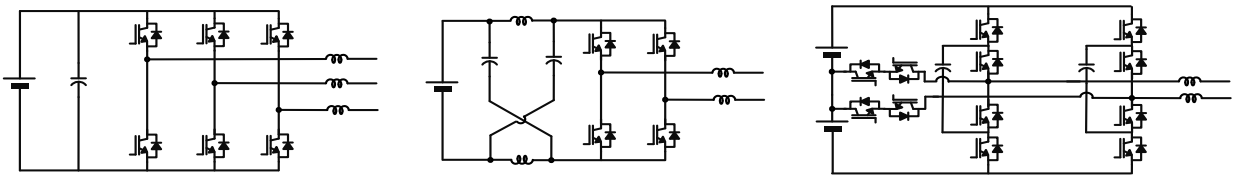


Figure 2-20 Typical examples of power converters with non-planar circuits [11], [149], [150].

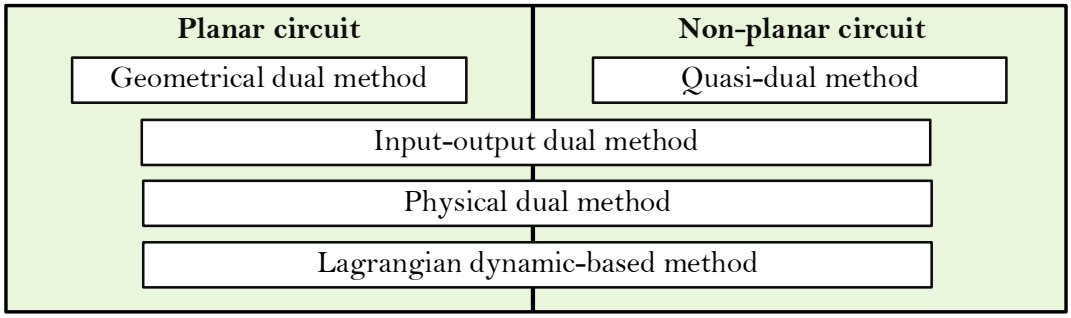


Figure 2-21 Applicable circuits types for different dual methods.

B. The dual transformation process

To implement the dual methods for power converters, the 1st step is to distinguish the circuit is planar or nonplanar. The 2nd step is to utilize compatible methods for it (see **Figure 2-22**).

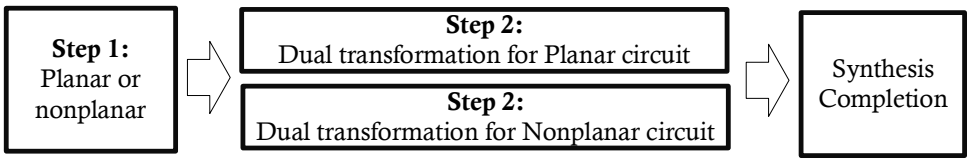


Figure 2-22 Topology transformation process through duality.

Let us take the electrical circuit in **Figure 2-2(b)** as an example. Note that, for the same circuit

(graph), there could be different drawings, which could lead to different circuits (circuit 2 and 3 in **Figure 2-23**) through the geometrical dual method. Conversely, it is also possible that different drawings from different circuits (circuit 2 and 3) can be dual to the same circuits (circuit 4 in **Figure 2-23**). Therefore, the unique mapping relationships between an electrical circuit and its dual is established on the drawing-level, not the converter-level.

On the other hand, the two different duals (e.g. circuit 2 and 3, or circuit 1 and 4) from the same original circuit can be considered as electrical equivalence based on *R. M. Foster*'s work in 1932 [151]. For example, same loop voltage equations can be established for circuit 1 and 4, meanwhile, equivalent node current equations can be derived as well. Therefore, the electrical behavior can be modeled in a unified way for both circuits.

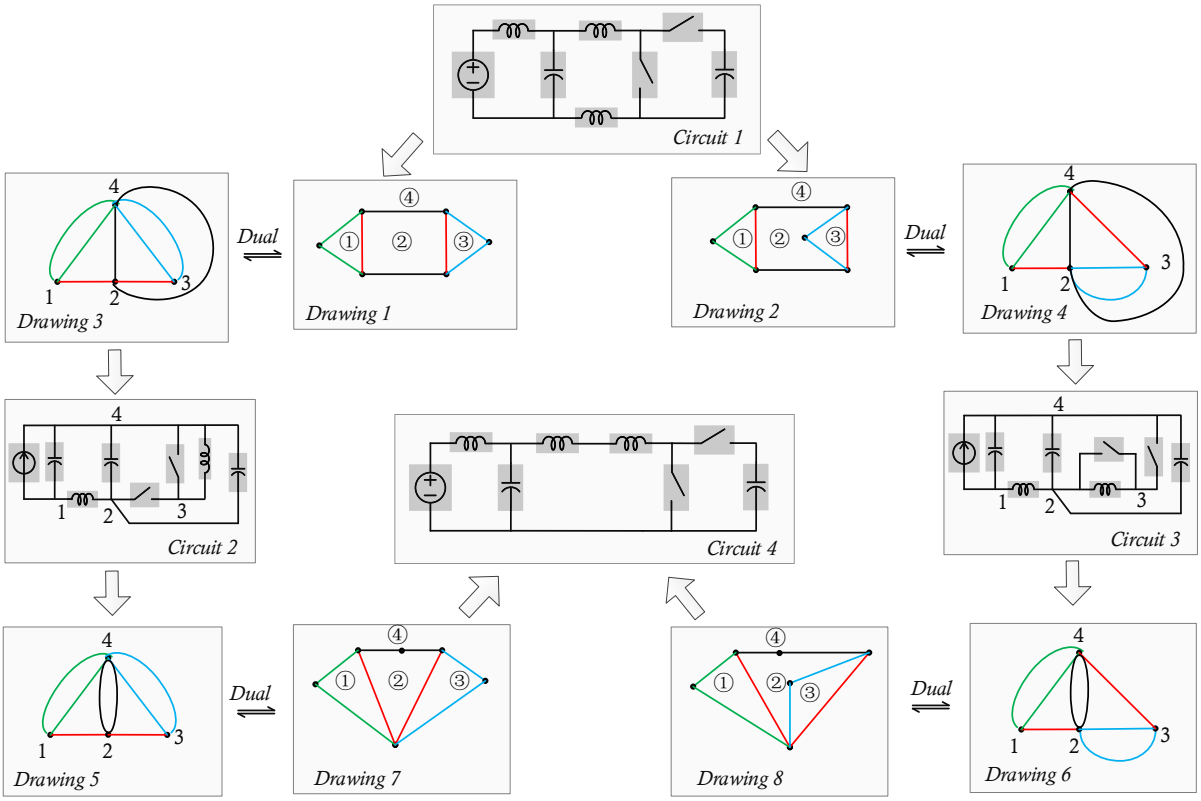


Figure 2-23 Different circuits can be obtained through the geometrical duals based on different drawings of the same electrical circuit.

2.2. Isomorphic transformation

The graph theory can be dated back to 1736 when *Euler* dealt with the famous puzzle of the bridges of *Königsberg*. However, the definition of *isomorphic* graph was systematically presented in the graph-theoretical field till the early 1930s [129], [152]. A similar word *homeomorphism* (coined by

Poincaré in 1895) appeared in literature quite earlier and its concept kept evolving till 1930s [130]. The concept *homomorphism* in the graph theory can be thought as a more general graphical mapping than *isomorphism*. In power electronics field, *isomorphism* or *homomorphism* is normally replaced by a much more ambiguous word "*equivalence*" to state a similarity between two circuits (geometrically or physically). In this section, the concept of isomorphism and the definitions of power converter isomorphism are introduced, and the implementation of such concept is shown with examples of various power electronic converters.

As presented in *Whitney*'s work, the *isomorphic* relationship indicates the electrical equivalence. Therefore, even two power converters look different, they may share the common electrical features as long as they are *isomorphic* in the sense of graph representation. A natural problem is to find an efficient algorithm for determine whether there is an *isomorphism* between two given graphs. In literature, this is normally referred as to graph *isomorphism* (GI) problem [132], [133]. Such problem arises in many practical applications, e.g. automatic retrieval of information, machine translation of languages, pipeline and electric networks, pattern recognition, graph-theoretic enumeration problems, the four-color conjecture, and the problem of "squaring the rectangle" [134]. Though it looks like a straightforward question, the algorithms of GI problem may require a surprisingly high computation resource due to the lack of efficient algorithms [135]. For instance, through an exhaustive search algorithm, there are $n!$ (factorial of n) possible permutations to be compared for two graphs with n vertices, which will easily exceed the practical capability of a real-world computer [134]. In computer science field, complexity theory is established focus on quantifying computational efficiency of this kind of problems [136], [153]. Although efficient algorithms have already been known for many special classes of graphs, however, they are most unlikely to be useful in practice. The available algorithms with practical significance are still limited only for certain graph classes, e.g. trees, planar graphs.

2.2.1 VSCs and CSCs transformation using the proposed isomorphic method

As demonstrated in **session 2.1**, the dual relationships between VSC and CSC are commonly discovered in power converter fields. However, not all methods can be easily interpreted through dual relationships.

In [154], the voltage-based Bi-Tri logic PWM was proposed to realize the carrier-based modulation for CSC. The basic idea is to translate the bi logic PWM signal of VSC into tri logic PWM signal of CSC through Bi-Tri logic translation. This abstract dual relationship under three-phase

configuration was revealed in the sense of physic: line-to-line voltage in VSC is the dual of line current in CSC [120]. While the utilization of zero states between VSC and the dual CSC are not 1-to-1 mapping. In [20], the carrier-based PWM for direct matrix converter was proposed through the mapping of topology and modulation between the direct matrix converter and the three-phase three-level VSC. However, the physical meaning of this method can hardly be understood by dual principles, i.e. the dual of a three-phase direct matrix converter is itself, which has no dual relationship with VSC. In [155], [156], another type of carrier-based PWM called direct PWM was introduced for CSC, of which the gating signals are generated through direct comparisons between reference and carriers without logical mapping. Still, its physical interpretation is ambiguous and has difficulties with dual principles.

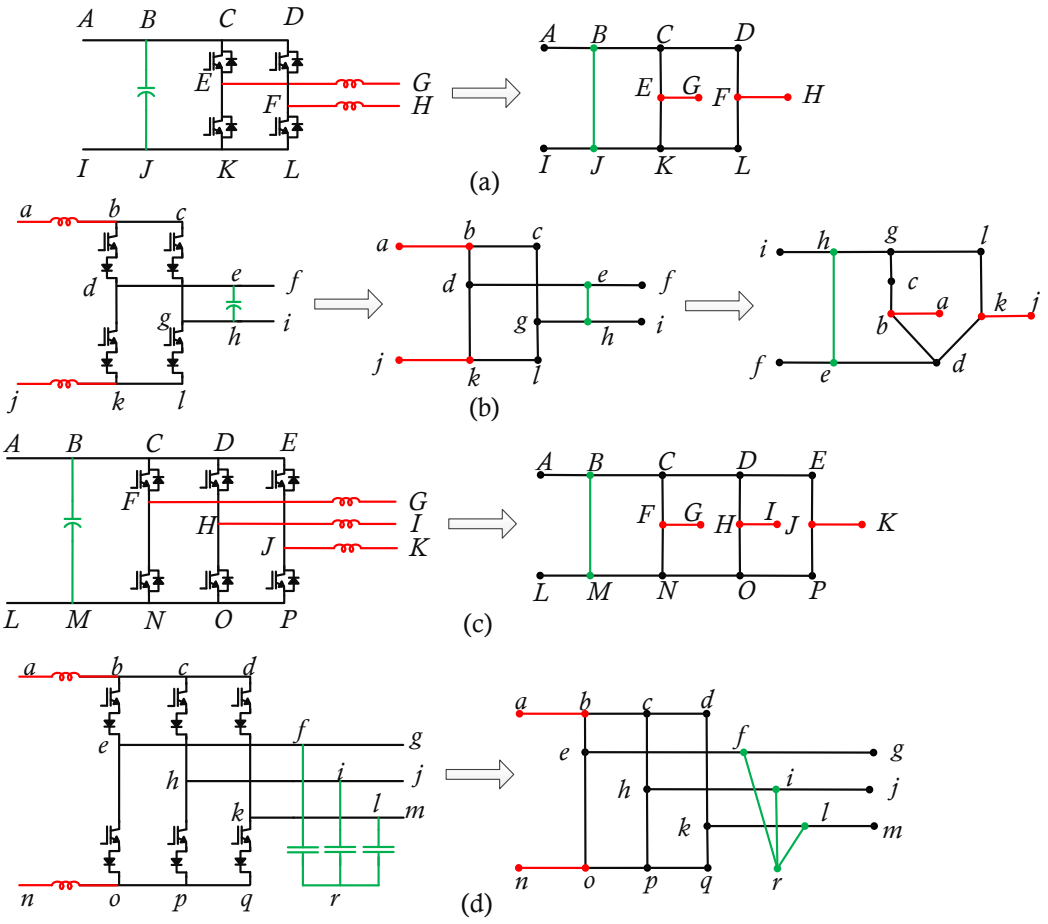


Figure 2-24 The geometric graphs of typical power converters: (a) single-phase VSC G_a, (b) single-phase CSC G_b, (c) three-phase VSC G_c, (d) three-phase CSC G_d.

A. Graphs of VSCs and CSCs

Based on graph theory, the graphs of VSCs and CSCs can be established, such that each graph G consists of a set $[e_i]$ of e edges (physical branches with components) and a set $[p_i]$ of v vertices

(physical nodes in the circuit). Associated with each edge e_i is an orientation, and a weight (representing voltage, and/or current, and/or admittance). To simplify the representation, both orientation and weight are omitted here.

In **Figure 2-24**, the geometric graphs of four power converters are shown. For example, the first graph G_a consists of a set of 13 edges (branches) and a set of 12 vertices (nodes). The label order of vertices is arbitrarily chosen. The least number of vertices is limited by the physically distinguishable components of the converter. If the admittance weight of an edge is unit, i.e. a conductor in the physical sense, then, the joint vertices can be simplified into one vertex. For a graph without unit weight edge, it is called a minimum graph in this work. It is easy to observe that G_a, G_b, and G_c are planar graphs, while G_d is nonplanar based on the definition introduced in [142]. Also, the similarity of G_a, G_b can be shown through a simple graph mapping.

In terms of VSCs and CSCs topologies, two converters are isomorphic if and only if their minimum graphs are isomorphic with correspondence weight of each edge (i.e. current-to-current, voltage-to-voltage, same type impedance). The 1-to-1 mapping of two isomorphic graphs guarantees that topological features in one graph can be losslessly transformed into another one.

B. The proposed isomorphic transformation process

The isomorphic transformation can be applied for either VSC or CSC that converts the AC power to DC power, or vice versa. In details, the process can be divided into three steps (see **Figure 2-25**):

The 1st step to derive the isomorphic converter of the origin is to ***draw the minimum graphs***. The graph is undirected, and the label order of nodes is arbitrarily chosen. The least number of nodes is limited by the physically distinguishable components of the converter. If the admittance weight of an edge is unit, i.e. a conductor in the physical sense, then, the joint nodes can be simplified into one.

The 2nd step is to ***reverse the input and output of the converter***. In this step, only the power form are reversed, such that the DC (AC) link should be changed into the AC (DC) link of its isomorphism, while the passive components and all the connections are maintained the same. By the common sense, such change will lead to the type of converter change, e.g. from voltage-source type to current-source type. If the power flow of the original converter is unidirectional, then, by reversing the input and output power forms, the power direction of the isomorphic converter should also be reversed, e.g. from AC-DC to DC-AC.

The 3rd step is to ***implement the compatible switches in the derived converter***. Since the input-output features are exchanged along with the power flow directions, the switches should

be changed accordingly. For instance, the IGBT with anti-parallel diode for a VSC will normally be replaced with IGBT with a series diode for a CSC.

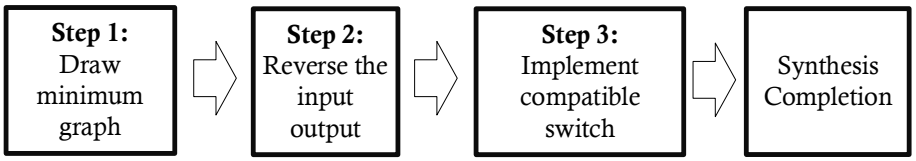


Figure 2-25 Topology transformation process using isomorphism.

C. Single-phase VSC and single-phase CSC

The single-phase VSC and single-phase CSC are demonstrated here as the first isomorphic pair through the isomorphic transformation. To derive the minimum graph of single-phase/H-bridge VSC, vertices *B*, *C* and *D* can be merged into one vertex, so can *J*, *K*, and *L* (the same process can be applied for single-phase/H-bridge CSC). This process does not change any topological properties of both converters. In **Figure 2-26**, it is clearly shown that the minimum graphs are isomorphic. Interestingly, the single-phase/H-bridge VSC and single-phase/H-bridge CSC are also the best-known dual pair [119]. Such topological invariants (dual circuits with isomorphism) can be considered as the iconic properties of the canonical circuit as introduced in [142].

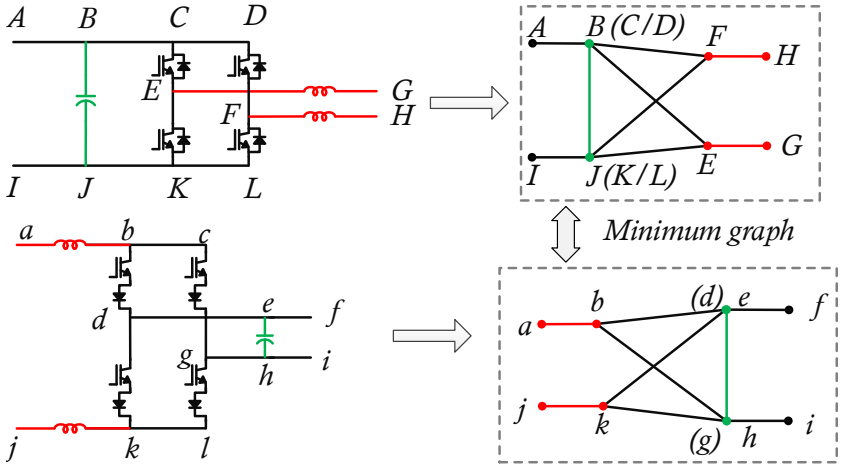


Figure 2-26 Isomorphic transformation from a single-phase VSC to a single-phase CSC.

D. Single-phase three-level T-type VSC and three-phase CSC

The second isomorphic pair is the single-phase/H-bridge three-level VSC and three-phase CSC as shown in **Figure 2-27**. Note that there is a third capacitor in the three-level VSC, which is compatible with *Kirchhoff*'s laws. A similar modification is done towards the filters of CSC (from Y-connection to Δ-connection). With the simplification of wires, the minimum graphs of these two converters are clearly isomorphic.

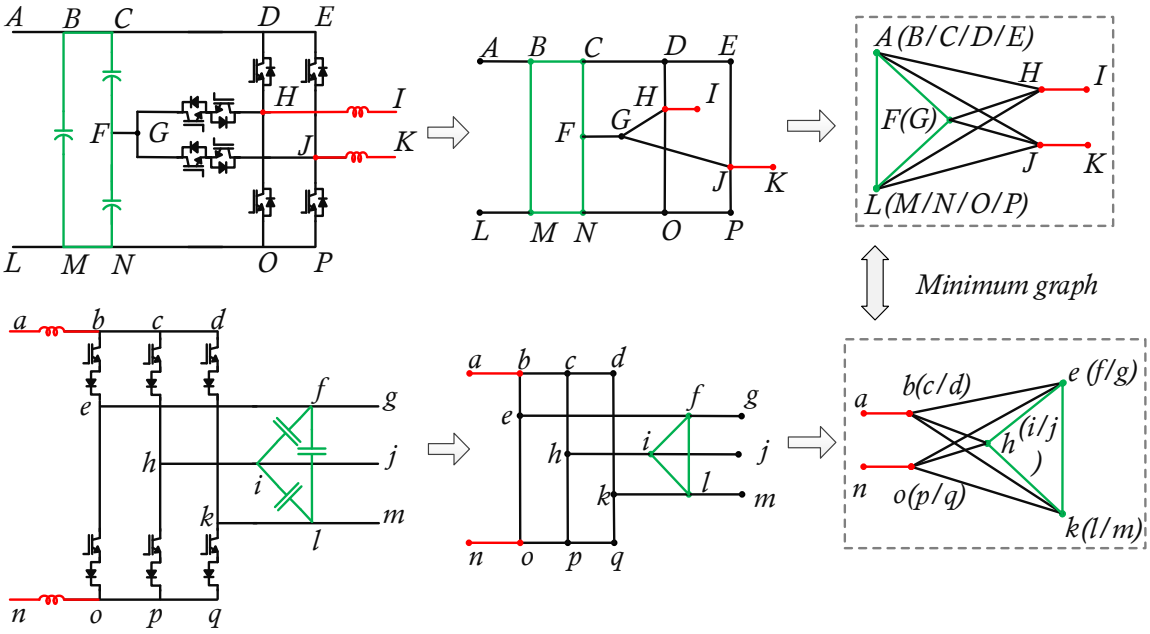


Figure 2-27 Isomorphic transformation from a single-phase three-level T-type VSC to a three-phase CSC.

E. Single-phase multilevel T-type VSC and multiphase CSC

Extended from **Figure 2-27**, the key isomorphism is obtained for the popular single-phase multilevel T-type VSC and multiphase CSC: each N-phase CSC has its isomorphic single-phase N-level T-type VSC as shown in **Figure 2-28**. Note that the additional capacitor in the dc-link of the converter in **Figure 2-28** is added to be compatible with KVL. To guarantee the completeness of graph, it is always recommended to be added for VSC.

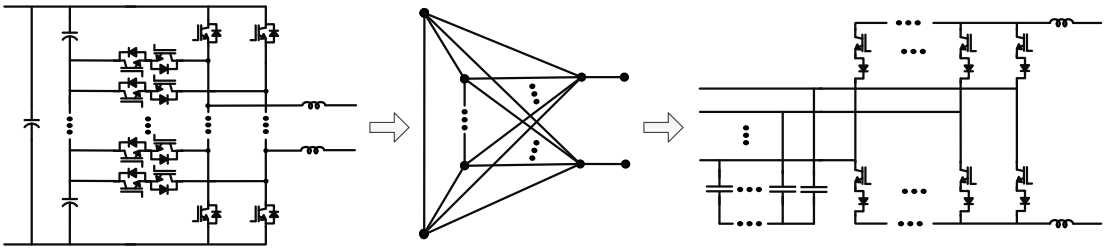


Figure 2-28 Isomorphic transformation from a single-phase multilevel T-type VSC to a multiphase CSC.

F. Other isomorphic pairs

In addition to three-level T-type VSC, there are other three-level topologies, e.g. ANPC converter [9], that can have isomorphic relationship with associated CSC (see **Figure 2-29(a)**). The derived CSC has similar device rating and same device number as conventional CSC with series-connected devices, but more redundant vectors for optimal operation. Isomorphism can also be

found between three-phase two-level VSC and an H-bridge multilevel CSC (proposed in [157]) as shown in **Figure 2-29(b)**. The derivation process is based on minimum graph criterion stated in previous. The detail is omitted here. The above case can be further extended to multiphase multi-level (MPML) T-type VSC and MPML CSC as shown in **Figure 2-29(c)**. As for multiple VSCs and CSCs system, if one VSC and one CSC are isomorphic, then their composite systems with identical connection are also isomorphic as the single-phase example shown in **Figure 2-29(d)**.

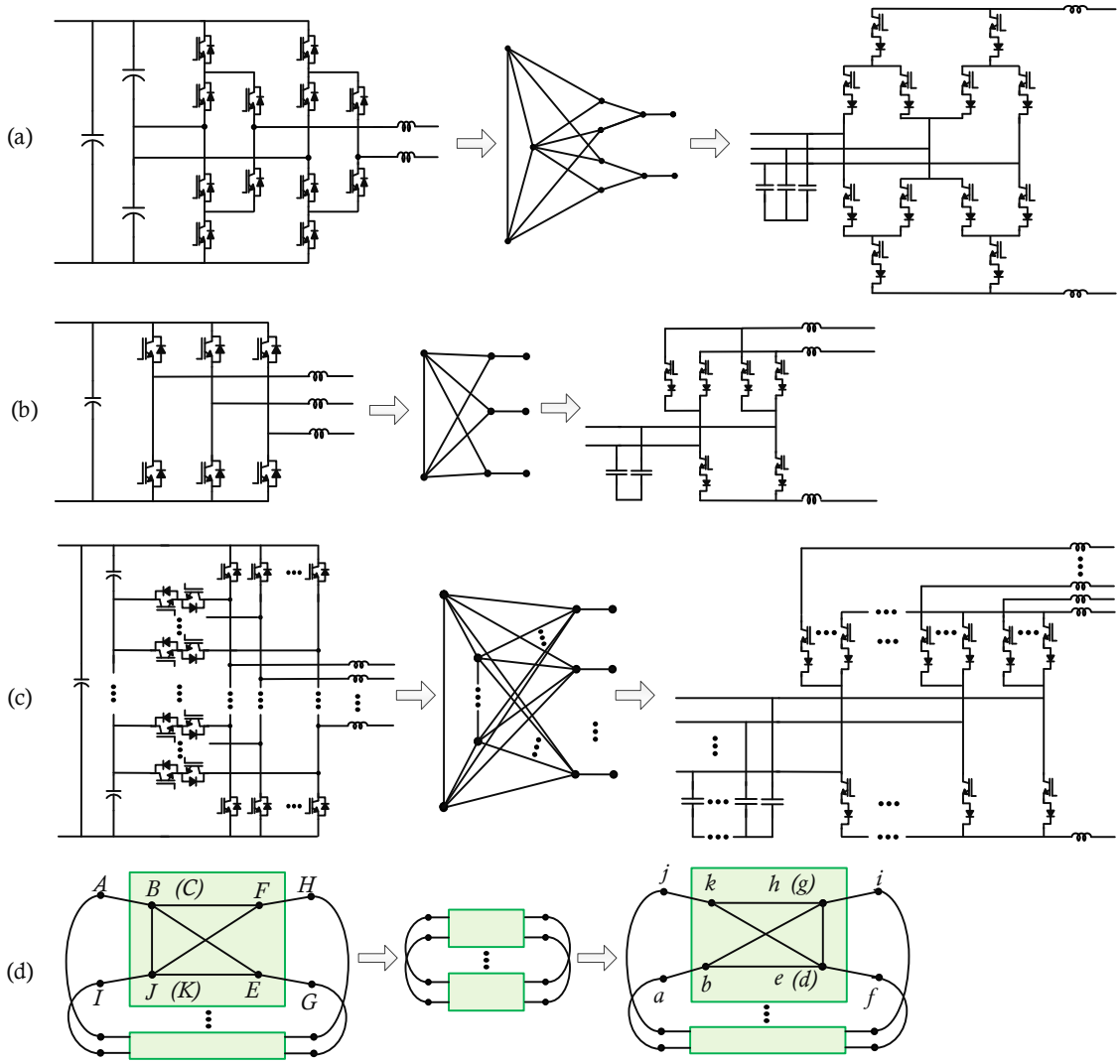


Figure 2-29 (a) Isomorphic transformation from single-phase three-level ANPC VSC and associated three-phase CSC. (b) Isomorphic transformation from three-phase two-level VSC and an H-bridge multilevel CSC. (c) Isomorphic transformation from multiphase multilevel T-type VSC and multiphase multilevel CSC. (d) Isomorphic transformation from paralleled single-phase VSCs and single-phase CSCs.

2.2.2 Modulation transformation of VSCs and CSCs

In addition to topological isomorphism, a similar relationship can be established towards

modulation schemes of VSC and CSC. Here the second isomorphic pair (**Figure 2-26**) is chosen as an example.

A. Space vector modulation

Since two converters of the second isomorphic pair share the same graph, same labels can be assigned without losing generality. Therefore, the diagrams of space vector modulation (SVM) for both single-phase three-level VSC and three-phase CSC can be derived as shown in **Figure 2-30**. Each space vector of one converter can be strictly mapped into another converter with the same type of physical meaning, i.e. the switching state of the converter. That is the SVM isomorphism between the second isomorphic pair. Note that dual principle does not work well here. Recall the quasi-dual modulation introduced in [119], [120], the active vectors of VSC and CSC have 1-to-1 dual relationship, however, this does not hold for their zero vectors. As for this isomorphism pair, the one-to-one mapping of zero vectors are clearly shown in **Figure 2-31**, that is, each zero vector of three-phase CSC has a uniquely associated zero vector of single-phase three-level T-type VSC.

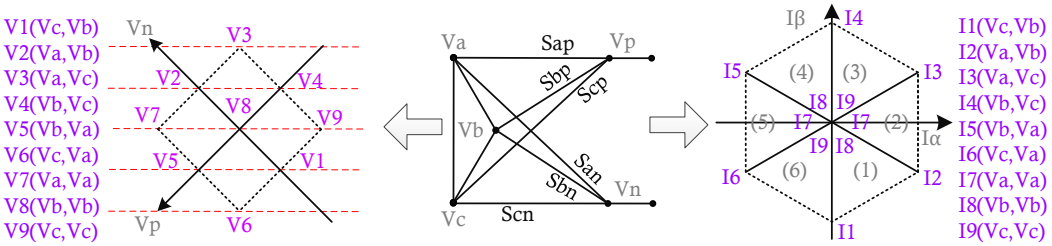


Figure 2-30 Space vector modulation diagrams of single-phase three-level T-type VSC and three-phase CSC derived from the isomorphic graph.

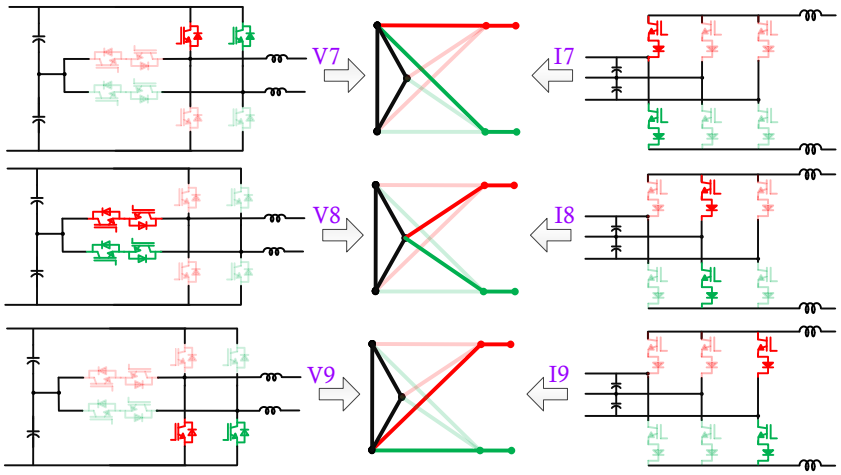


Figure 2-31 The one-to-one mapping of zero vectors between single-phase three-level T-type VSC and three-phase CSC derived from the isomorphic graph.

B. Carrier-based pulse width modulation

Direct PWM for CSC is realized through the direct comparison of targeting reference signals and the carriers [155], [156]. In [156], the normal three-phase references are transformed into three sets of signals arranged in large, medium and small (maximum, middle, and minimum), which can be considered as the isomorphic mapping between abc domain and max-mid-min domain, as shown in **Figure 2-32**. Such transformation does not change the topological relationship, thus, the resulting PWM schemes can be interpreted in the isomorphic point of view. That is: the structure of PWM algorithms for VSCs and CSCs in max-mid-min domain share the isomorphic relationship. To summarize, the physical meaning of direct PWM for CSC is the modulation process of the DC-side voltage of three-phase CSC.

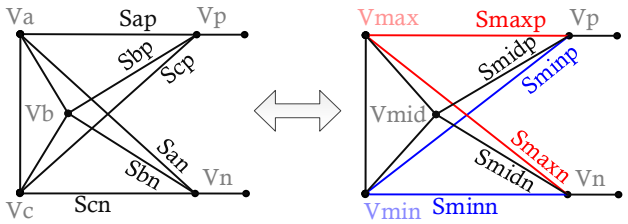


Figure 2-32 Graph transformation from abc domain to max-mid-min domain.

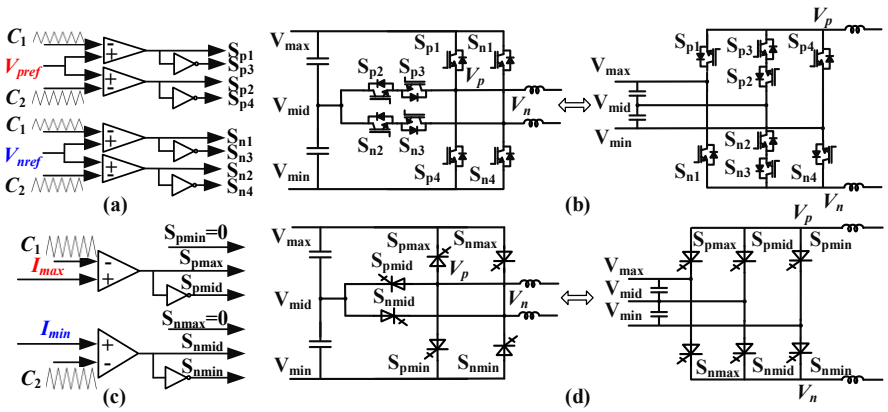


Figure 2-33 (a) The algorithm of carrier-based PWM for VSC, (b) VSC main circuit. (c) The algorithm of direct PWM for CSC, (d) CSC main circuit.

C. Theoretical and Experimental Verifications

To demonstrate the modulation isomorphism phenomenon in detail, the phase disposition (PD) PWM and phase opposition disposition (POD) PWM of both VSC and CSC are implemented. The detailed realization of these PWM schemes is shown in **Figure 2-33**. For VSC and CSC, the same logic is used for these two PWM. Under normal operation, DC-link voltage potentials of VSC should be maintained max, mid, min (normally labeled as V_P, V_O, V_N) all the time. Therefore, the synthesis of gating signals is naturally taken in the max-mid-min domain to generate its AC-side PWM pulses, which is equivalent to the direct PWM for CSC in the max-mid-min domain. As for

CSC, the phase current references are mapped into the max-mid-min domain, and then they are compared with carriers (PD or POD), resulting in max-mid-min domain gating signals. That is, the direct PWM of CSC has the same modulation process as carrier-based PWM of VSC in the max-mid-min domain if voltage reference V_{pref}>0 and V_{nref}<0 (note that in CSC, I_{max}>0 and I_{min}<0).

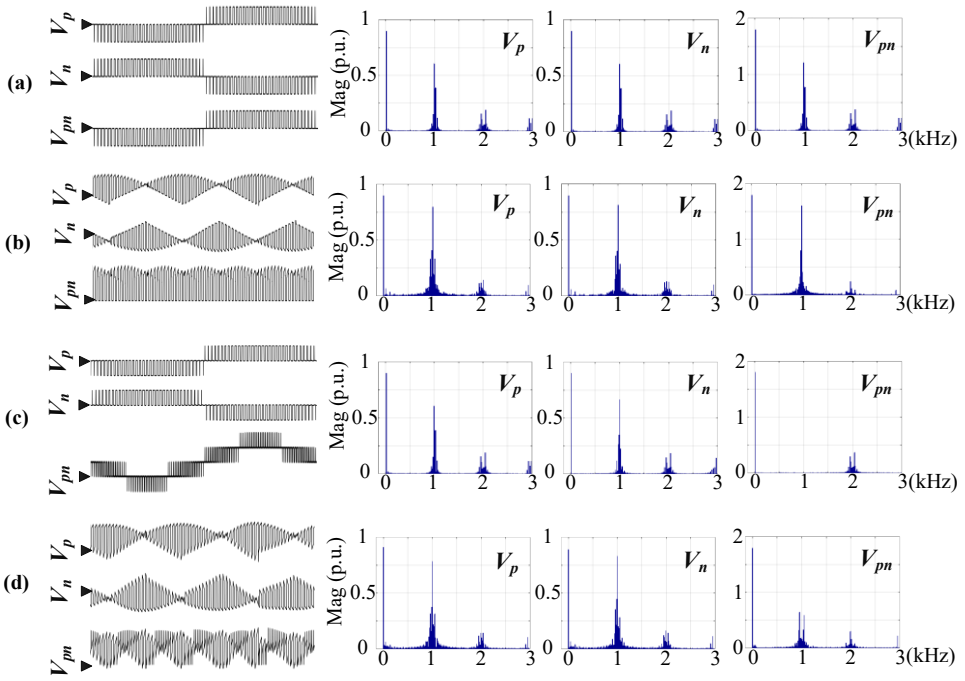


Figure 2-34 POD PWM waveforms and corresponding FFT results of V_p, V_n, and V_{pn} in (a) VSC, (b) CSC. PD PWM waveforms and corresponding FFT results of V_p, V_n, and V_{pn} in (c) VSC, (d) CSC.

Figure 2-34 shows the analogous theoretical PWM waveforms and corresponding harmonic spectrums of both VSC and CSC with PD and POD PWM (carrier frequency is 1k Hz, the modulation index is 0.6). Note that the doubled equivalent switching frequency of CSC with PD PWM (**Figure 2-34(d)**) is limited compared with VSC case (**Figure 2-34(c)**). This is mainly due to incomplete harmonic cancellation of utilized carrier-based PWM with non-sinusoidal DC-side references with 60° phase shift [158]. While the 1kHz component can be seen largely reduced compared to POD PWM (**Figure 2-34(b)**), which can also be observed in VSC case. Thus, the CSC under direct PWM (PD and POD) and its isomorphic VSC not only have similar modulation schemes in max-mid-min domain (see **Figure 2-33**), but also share a common modulation property: both voltage PWM waveforms in CSC (DC side) and VSC (AC side) are multilevel and share similar harmonic spectrums distribution.

To further verify the isomorphic relationship, the experiment of three-phase IGCT-based CSC

(with POD PWM) is also carried out (parameters are listed in Table.2-III). The experimental waveforms of phase A current I_A and DC voltage V_p and V_n (respect to the neutral point of three-phase loads) are shown in **Figure 2-35(a)** and are consistent with theoretical analysis.

Table 2-III Experiment Parameters

DC link Current	4 A	AC Capacitors	120μF
Line Frequency f_1	15 Hz	AC Loads	5.76Ω/5 mH
Carrier Frequency f_c	1 kHz	DC Inductor	10 mH

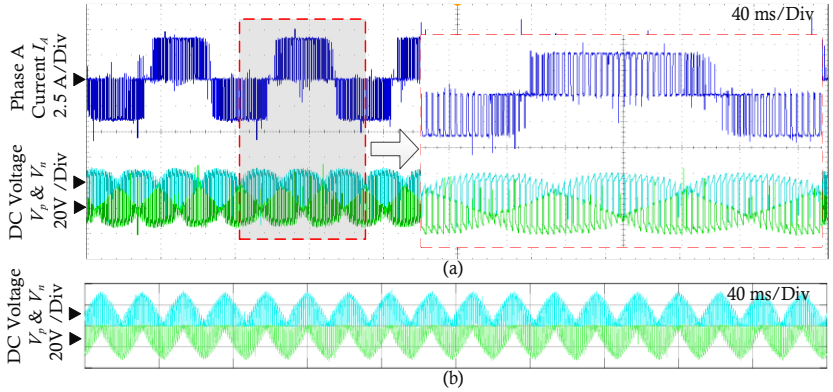


Figure 2-35 (a) Experimental results of a three-phase IGCT-based CSC with Direct POD PWM. The 1st waveform (top) is the phase A current I_A before filtered. The 2nd (middle) and 3rd (bottom) waveforms are DC voltage V_p and V_n with respect to the neutral point of three-phase loads. (b) Waveforms of DC voltage V_p and V_n with respect to the middle phase voltage (after data processing in the max-mid-min domain).

Recall the topological isomorphism between VSC and CSC, the DC-side of CSC is corresponding to the AC-side of VSC. Such that, if we formalize the DC voltages of CSC with respect to the middle phase voltage (obtained through voltage transformation from abc domain to max-mid-min domain), the resulting PWM pulses (see **Figure 2-35(b)**) will be a three-level waveform which resembles with the VSC with POD PWM. So will be the PD PWM case. It is given that the physical meaning of carrier-based PWM of VSC is the modulation process of AC-side voltage [159]. Therefore, in this considered isomorphic pair, it can be easily concluded that the physical interpretation of direct PWM for CSC is the modulation process of the DC-side voltage of three-phase CSC.

2.2.3 Potential applications

A. PWM design for Multi-phase CSC through isomorphism

Recall **section 2.1.1.C**, if N=4, then, it is given the isomorphic relationship between single-phase four-level T-type VSC and four-phase CSC. To operate four-phase CSC, both the SVM and direct

PWM can be implemented through existing modulation schemes of the four-level VSC. To fully control the AC currents of CSC, the DC capacitor voltage balance methods of VSC (e.g. carrier-based PWM methods in [103], [160]) can be easily implemented for CSC with isomorphic relationship. In **Figure 2-36**, the theoretical waveforms of CSC with carrier-overlapped PWM is shown and the multilevel DC voltage with doubled switching frequency can be observed in four-phase CSC.

B. Fault tolerant for CSC through isomorphism

With the isomorphism relationship, the fault tolerant methods of VSCs can be utilized for associated CSCs. The DC-side fault tolerant of CSCs can be derived through AC-side methods of VSCs [161], and vice versa. In **Figure 2-37**, the reconfigurable CSC can operate as the CSC proposed in [157] after DC-side fault.

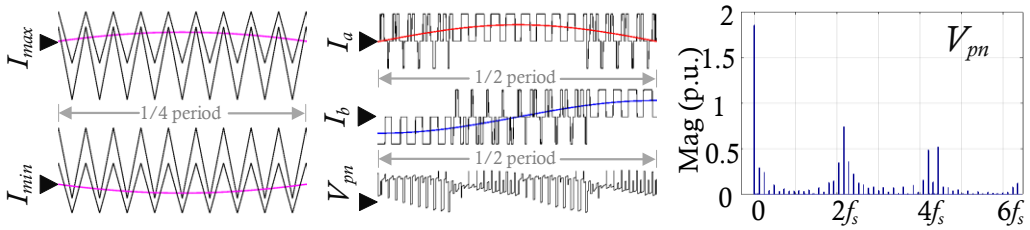


Figure 2-36 The theoretical waveforms (modulation index is 0.6) of four-phase CSC with carrier-overlapped PWM developed from four-level VSC.

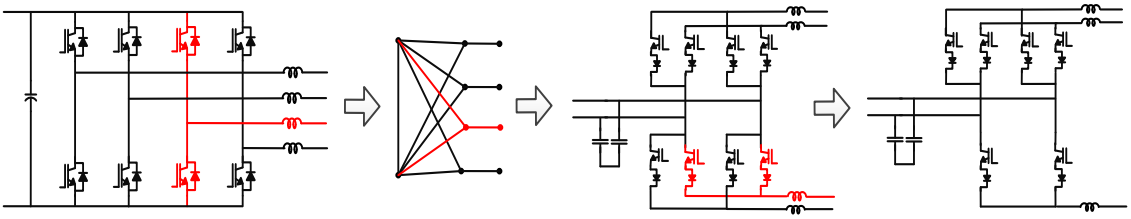


Figure 2-37 A reconfigurable CSC topology derived from four-leg VSC for DC-side fault.

C. Other potential applications

To reduce the DC-side ripples of CSC, AC-side harmonic cancellation methods of VSC can be implemented, e.g. PD PWM for CSC as shown in **Figure 2-34**. To reduce the DC-side ripples of VSC, AC-side harmonic cancellation methods of CSC can also be implemented, e.g. parallel VSCs. To increase the DC voltage blocking capability of CSC, AC cascaded VSC structure can be utilized, e.g. series CSCs.

2.3. Topology cycling phenomenon

In this section, the dual principles and isomorphic principles are utilized together to reveal the

circuit-level fundamental relationships of VSCs and CSCs. It can be seen that a VSC or CSC can always be transformed into itself through two or four steps of dual and isomorphic transformations. Here we define this phenomenon as the topology cycling phenomenon. Various VSCs and CSCs with planar/nonplanar circuits are investigated and linked with each other through such universal relationships.

2.3.1 Cycling phenomenon in power converters

A. VSCs and CSCs with planar circuits and cycling phenomenon

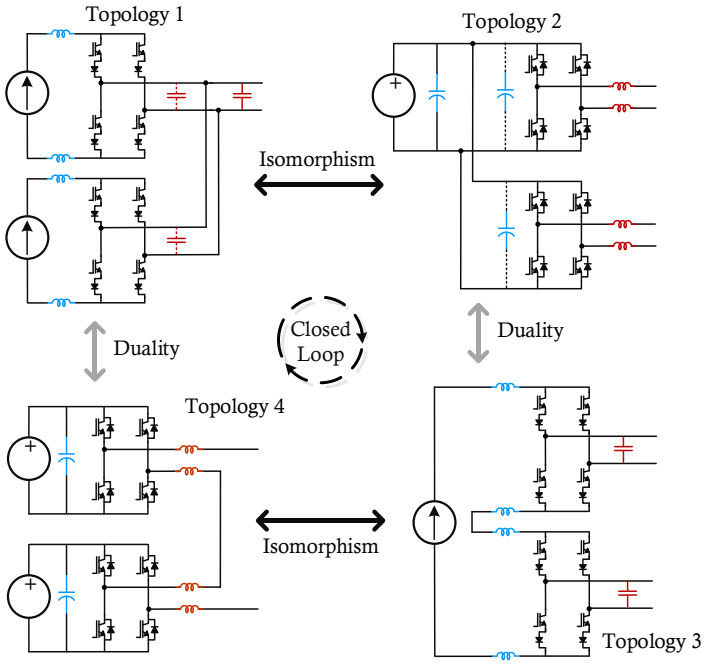
In example 1 (**Figure 38 (a)**), four topologies with planar circuits are investigated. An AC-parallel H-bridge CSC system is isomorphic with a DC-parallel H-bridge VSC system. And a DC-parallel H-bridge VSC system is strict dual to a DC-series H-bridge CSC system. The DC-parallel H-bridge CSC system is isomorphic with an AC-series H-bridge VSC system which is strict dual to the previously introduced AC-parallel H-bridge CSC system. This complete the cycling as a closed loop: Topology 1-2-3-4-1.

In example 2 (**Figure 2-38 (b)**), another four topologies are investigated. Utilizing the same H-bridge modules, they form different converter systems, and another closed loop: Topology 5-6-7-8-5. The main features of these examples are summarized in Table 2-IV regarding the operation [162], [163].

It is worth noted that each converter in the examples can be transformed into itself by a 4-step topological transformation regardless of its order inside the loop. Even though some features are different with each other, there are some commonalities within the loop, e.g. all converters have the same number of devices and applicable switching states, all converters are consisted of two H-bridge modules and have doubled parameters compared to single H-bridge module, all converters have the same order of output filters, etc.

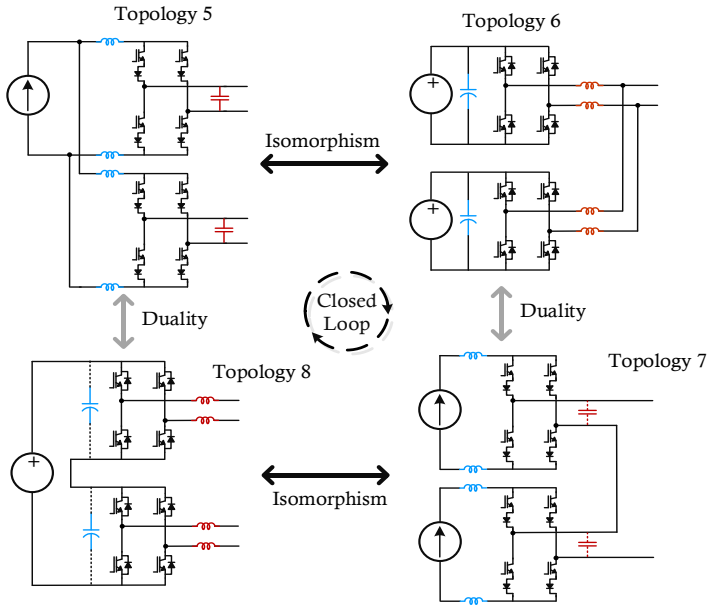
Table 2-IV Planar Circuits with Four-Step Topology Cycling Phenomenon

Topology		Features
1	AC-parallel H-bridge CSCs	Voltage boost; doubled AC current
2	DC-parallel H-bridge VSCs	Voltage buck; doubled DC current
3	DC-series H-bridge CSCs	Voltage boost; doubled DC voltage
4	AC-series H-bridge VSCs	Voltage buck; doubled AC voltage
5	DC-parallel H-bridge CSCs	Voltage buck; doubled AC current
6	AC-parallel H-bridge VSCs	Voltage boost; doubled DC current
7	AC-series H-bridge CSCs	Voltage boost; doubled AC voltage
8	DC-series H-bridge VSCs	Voltage buck; doubled DC voltage



Topology 1: AC-parallel H-bridge current-source converter
Topology 2: DC-parallel H-bridge voltage-source converter
Topology 3: DC-series H-bridge current-source converter
Topology 4: AC-series H-bridge voltage-source converter

(a) Example 1 with 4-step closed loop.



Topology 5: AC-parallel H-bridge voltage-source converter
Topology 6: DC-parallel H-bridge current-source converter
Topology 7: DC-series H-bridge voltage-source converter
Topology 8: AC-series H-bridge current-source converter

(b) Example 2 with 4-step closed loop.

Figure 2-38 Cycling transformation phenomenon of power converters with H-bridge modules.

B. Topology cycling phenomenon for other VSCs and CSCs circuits

The topology cycling phenomenon for planar circuits is clear and easy to follow: the physical properties (both the circuits appearance and the operation principles) can be preserved/transformed through isomorphic transformation and strict dual transformation.

On the other hand, the topology cycling phenomenon for non-planar circuits is more complicated. In fact, isomorphic transformation is bijection mapping for any circuits. While the dual transformation is not straightforward for non-planar circuits. To complete the closed loop, the dual method needs to be a bijection, which means circuits will cycle back to its origin by doing the transformation twice. For non-planar circuits, extra constraints are necessary for the utilized dual methods, e.g. physical dual method or Lagrangian dynamics-based method.

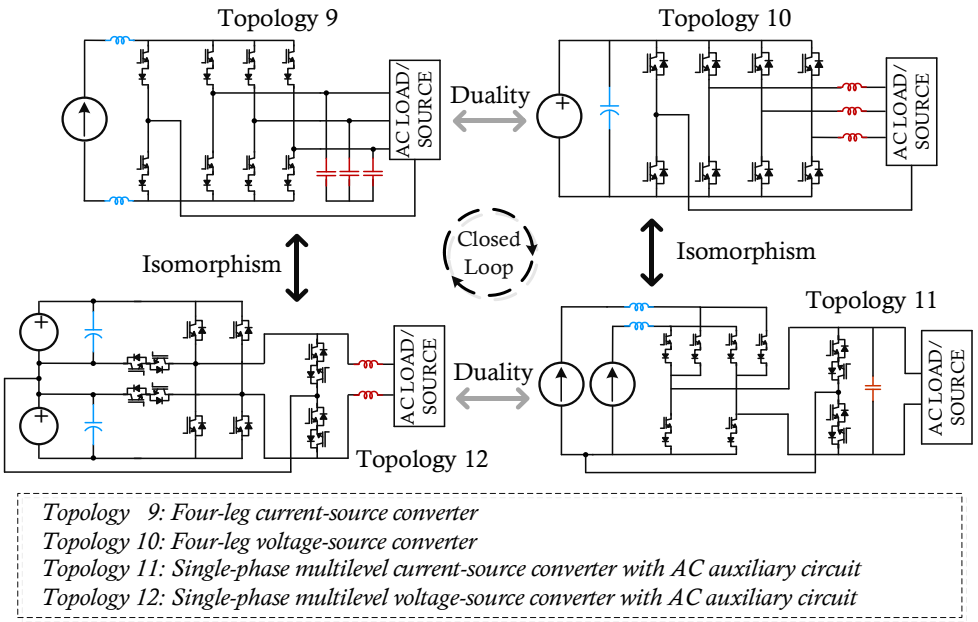


Figure 2-39 Cycling transformation Example 3 of power converters with nonplanar circuits.

Table 2-V Nonplanar Circuits with Four-Step Topology Cycling Phenomenon

Topology		Features
9	Four-leg CSC	Voltage boost; unbalanced power regulation; 18 switching states
10	Four-leg VSC	Voltage buck; unbalanced power regulation; 16 switching states
11	Single-phase CSC with auxiliary circuits	Voltage boost; common-mode suppression capability; 16 switching states
12	Single-phase VSC with auxiliary circuits	Voltage buck; common-mode suppression capability; 18 switching states

In **Figure 2-39**, four topologies with nonplanar circuits are presented as Example 3. The main features of the converters are summarized in Table 2-V regarding the operation. Similar with the planar cases, all converters within cycling loop have some commonalities, e.g. same number of switches (if bidirectional switching is realized by one device like RB-IGBT), same number of non-zero switching vectors, same filter orders, etc.

C. Topology cycling phenomenon for matrix converters

In addition to DC-AC converters, the cycling transformation phenomenon can also be found in AC-AC converters by generalization of the concepts regarding VSCs and CSCs. A typical example is the direct matrix converter (the input terminal can be linked to voltage source and called voltage-source input, while output linked to current source and called current-source output), which is dual to itself (with reversed input-output terminals) as shown in **Figure 2-40**.

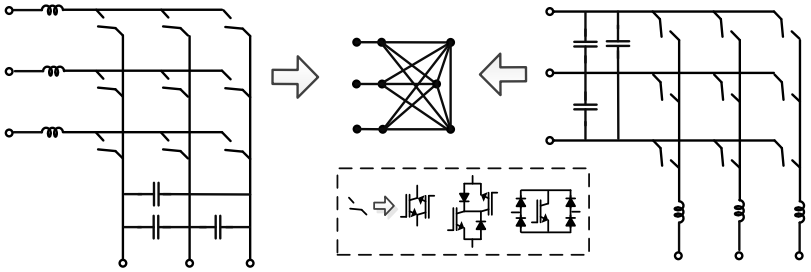


Figure 2-40 The general cycling transformation phenomenon of direct matrix converter.

2.3.2 Cycling rules for VSCs and CSCs

In this section, the theoretical discussions of the discovered topology cycling phenomenon are presented. In particular, the relationships of dual and isomorphic converters are discussed, and the cycling rules are proved as well.

A. The converter relationships among dual and isomorphic converters

As investigated previously, the geometrical dual method is implemented in the drawing-level, such that, each drawing can have its unique dual, and vice versa. Therefore, same converter could have different duals since its drawings could be different, and this leads to different dual converters. On the other hand, the isomorphic method only alters the input-output forms of the converter and preserve the graph during the transformation process. Therefore, same converter won't lead to different isomorphic converter.

To systematically demonstrate such relationships in theory, the transformation process in **Figure 2-23** is extended as an example by adding the related isomorphic transformations. For simplicity, only the name of the converters and drawings are preserved. It can be observed in **Figure 2-41** that four closed loops exist in this mapping networks, e.g. one of them is {circuit 1, circuit 2, circuit iso. 1, circuit iso. 2} highlight with a dotted red circle.

When implementing the geometrical dual transformation, if the dual circuit is unique, then, it normally forms a 2/4-step cycling loop among the converters. If the dual circuit is not unique, all the different drawings of each circuit can be considered to help derive multiple related dual circuits (as demonstrated in **Figure 2-41**). Therefore, multiple loops could co-exist among more converters, and the 2/4-step cycling loop can be considered as the minimum cycle linking the neighboring converters.

This is also true when implementing other dual transformation methods (e.g. physical dual method through the electrical equivalence), such that all the possible dual circuits from same converter can be linked with each other, forming an extended network together with the isomorphic circuits (such that more converters can be linked with each other).

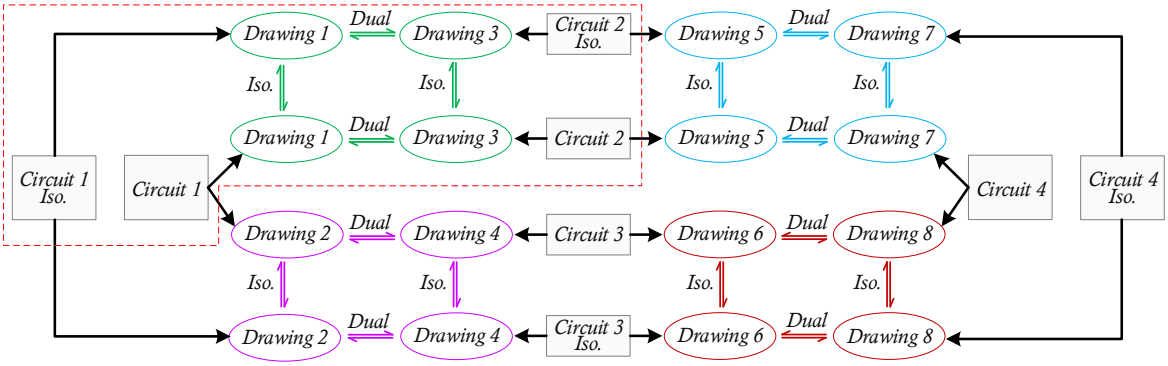


Figure 2-41 Multiple loops of converters and their drawings based on the dual and isomorphic method. ("Iso." Stands for "isomorphic" in the figure.)

Based on such observation, we may have two propositions regarding the topological transformations of the power converters, especially for the VSCs and CSCs, such that:

Proposition 1: *An arbitrary VSC or CSC can always be transformed into itself by limited steps of 1-to-1 mappings on its drawing.*

Proposition 2: *If the 1-to-1 mappings are based on the dual/isomorphic method on its drawing, then, the steps in* ***Proposition 1*** *are two or four.*[1]

B. Proof of Proposition 1

[1] Here the notion of "isomorphic" is in the sense of the isomorphic transformation for power converters.

First, define the 1-to-1 mapping of the drawings of VSCs and CSCs as the morphism between objects $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}$, such that, all the properties of $\boldsymbol{A}$ ($a1$, $a2$,...) are mapped into the associated properties of $\boldsymbol{B}$ ($b1$, $b2$,...) through $\boldsymbol{T}$, and ($b1$, $b2$,...) can be mapped into ($a1$, $a2$,...) through the reverse process of $\boldsymbol{T}$, named $\boldsymbol{T}^{-1}$. This is also presented as follows:

$$A \xrightarrow{T} B \xrightarrow{T^{-1}} A \;\&\; B \xrightarrow{T^{-1}} A \xrightarrow{T} B \tag{2-6}$$

Such mapping relationships will satisfy composition law:

$$A \underset{T_1^{-1}}{\overset{T_1}{\rightleftarrows}} B \underset{T_2^{-1}}{\overset{T_2}{\rightleftarrows}} C \Rightarrow A \underset{(T_1 \circ T_2)^{-1}}{\overset{T_1 \circ T_2}{\rightleftarrows}} C \Rightarrow A \underset{T_3^{-1}}{\overset{T_3}{\rightleftarrows}} C \tag{2-7}$$

The symbol "$\circ$" means a composed action of two transformations. Obviously, isomorphic transformation is a 1-to-1 mapping for any circuits based on this definition (e.g. **Figure 2-42**). Note that the isomorphic transformation in this work is particularly designed for the power converter, such that, the minimum graph of the converters are maintain the same after the transformation. Dual transformation is 1-to-1 mapping for planar circuits on the drawing-level[1], and conditional 1-to-1 mapping for nonplanar circuits (additional constraints like the dual voltage/current relationships using ideal transformer or the three-phase balanced output, as introduced in **section 2.1.2**).

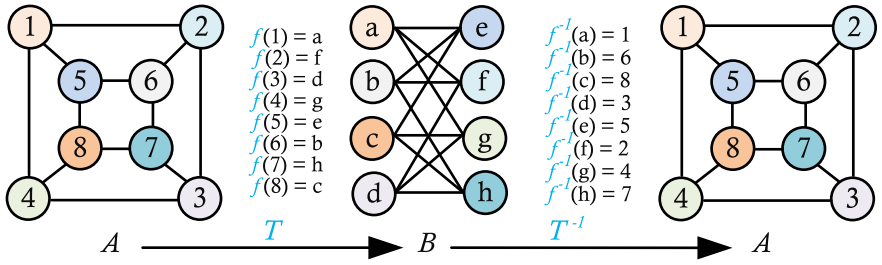


Figure 2-42 1-to-1 mapping of isomorphic transformation.

(i) Proof of sufficient conditions:

Given limited steps of 1-to-1 mappings,

$$A \underset{T_1^{-1}}{\overset{T_1}{\rightleftarrows}} B \underset{T_2^{-1}}{\overset{T_2}{\rightleftarrows}} \cdots \underset{\cdots}{\overset{\cdots}{\rightleftarrows}} N \Rightarrow A \underset{T^{-1}}{\overset{T}{\rightleftarrows}} N \tag{2-8}$$

Define the mapping $\boldsymbol{T}=\boldsymbol{T}_1 \circ \boldsymbol{T}_2 \cdots$, then, $\boldsymbol{A}$ can be transformed into itself by $\boldsymbol{T} \circ \boldsymbol{T}^{-1}$, which proves an arbitrary drawing of converter can always be transformed into itself by given limited steps of 1-to-1 mappings.

[1] This is true since each circuit is drawn in the way that there is unique 1-to-1 mappings between the circuit and its drawing in any dual pair.

(ii) Proof of necessary conditions:

Given an arbitrary converter, and there is a 1-to-1 mapping that the drawing of VSC or CSC can be transformed into itself.

Then there is at least one intermediate drawing ***B***, such that,

$$A \xrightarrow{T_1} B \xrightarrow{T_1^{-1}} A \tag{2-9}$$

Based on the given condition, there is at least one intermediate drawing ***C*** associated with ***B***, such that,

$$B \xrightarrow{T_2} C \xrightarrow{T_2^{-1}} B \tag{2-10}$$

Therefore,

$$A \underset{T_1^{-1}}{\overset{T_1}{\rightleftarrows}} B \underset{T_2^{-1}}{\overset{T_2}{\rightleftarrows}} C \tag{2-11}$$

Based on the same rules, we can have a limited number of drawings and from A to N by a limited number of steps:

$$A \underset{T_1^{-1}}{\overset{T_1}{\rightleftarrows}} B \underset{T_2^{-1}}{\overset{T_2}{\rightleftarrows}} \cdots \underset{\cdots}{\overset{\cdots}{\rightleftarrows}} N \tag{2-12}$$

In summary, it is proved that an arbitrary drawing of converter can always be transformed into itself by limited steps of 1-to-1 mappings.

C. Proof of Proposition 2

To prove **Proposition 2**, first, we model an arbitrary circuit of the VSC or CSC as follows:

$$Output = \boldsymbol{F}(Input, \mathbf{M}) \tag{2-13}$$

where **M** is the model of the main circuit of the power converter and **M**= [*node*, *edge*, *drawing*][1], ***F*** indicates the basic circuit laws, e.g. KVL or KCL.

Then, we utilize dual principles to transfer this model into:

$$\boldsymbol{D}(Output) = \boldsymbol{F}[\boldsymbol{D}(Input), \boldsymbol{D}(\mathbf{M})] \tag{2-14}$$

The duality maintains the numbers of all the circuit elements, but change the inputs, outputs, components, and drawings into dual versions. Next, we use isomorphic principles to transfer (2-15) into:

$$\boldsymbol{D}(Input) = \boldsymbol{F}[\boldsymbol{D}(Output), \boldsymbol{D}(\mathbf{M})] \tag{2-15}$$

The isomorphism of converters utilized here swaps the inputs and outputs of original circuits.

If

[1] In practice, the model corresponds to a unique drawing, such that each converter can be represented by some specific drawings. The dual transformation, especially the geometrical dual methods, are based on drawing-level transformation.

$$\boldsymbol{D}(\mathbf{M})=\mathbf{M},\ \boldsymbol{D}(Input)=Output,\ \boldsymbol{D}(Output)=Input \tag{2-16}$$

then, the cycling is complete with two transformation steps: one is dual, another one is isomorphic.

We utilize dual principles again to transfer (10) into:

$$\boldsymbol{D}^2(Input)=\boldsymbol{F}[\boldsymbol{D}^2(Output),\ \boldsymbol{D}^2(\mathbf{M})] \tag{2-17}$$

where D^2 indicates the dual transformation is conducted twice. Note that, for the drawing of planar circuits, the utilized dual principle is bijection mapping. Therefore, the circuits will cycle back to its origin by doing the transformation. While for nonplanar circuits, to guarantee such property, additional constraints are needed (e.g. balanced operation in a three-phase system). Then, (2-17) can be rewritten as:

$$Input=\boldsymbol{F}(Output,\ \mathbf{M}) \tag{2-18}$$

If we swap *Input* and *Output* again through isomorphic principles, we will get (2-13) eventually.

Therefore, it is proved that the topology transformation steps for the cycling phenomenon of dual and isomorphic power converters are always two/four on the drawing-level. To demonstrate such rules, the converter is drawn as a building block with n-port inputs and m-port outputs, as shown conceptually in **Figure 2-43**, while the inputs and outputs can be arbitrarily assigned as DC-type or AC-type.

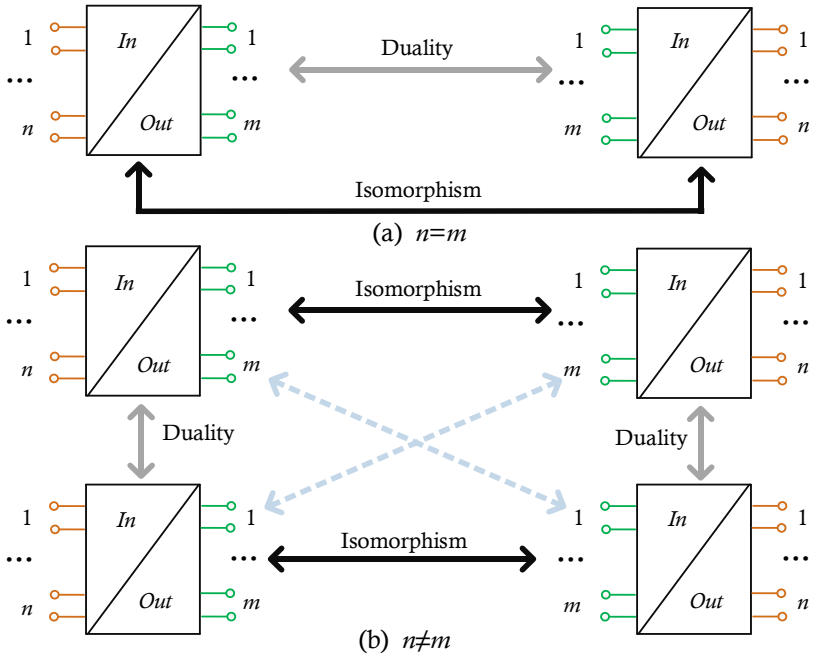
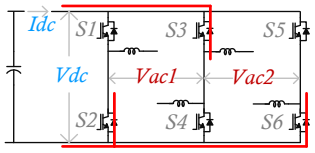
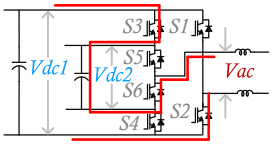
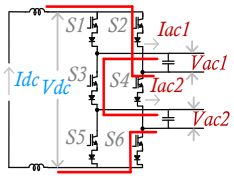
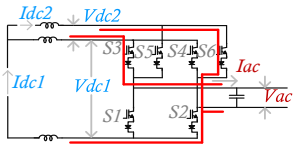


Figure 2-43 The general cycling transformation phenomenon of topology with n-port inputs and m-port outputs. (a) 2-step closed loop, (b) 4-step closed loop.

2.3.3 Potential applications

In previous sections, the topology cycling phenomenon of VSCs and CSCs is thoroughly investigated with examples and theoretical proof. It is demonstrated that such phenomenon is not a simple combination of dual and isomorphic methods, but a unified abstract relationship that exists in all power converters. In this section, the potential applications of discovered cycling phenomenon are discussed with various VSCs and CSCs examples.

Table 2-VI Details of the Operation Analysis of Topology 13~16

Topology	Switching States			
 Topology 13 (state 3) [164]	S1 S3 S5 S2 S4 S6	Vac1	Vac2	Idc
	000 111 (state 1)	0	0	0
	001 110 (state 2)	0	-Vdc	-Iac2
	010 101 (state 3)	-Vdc	Vdc	-Iac1+Iac2
	011 100 (state 4)	-Vdc	0	-Iac1
	100 011 (state 5)	Vdc	0	Iac1
	101 010 (state 6)	Vdc	-Vdc	-Iac2+Iac1
	110 001 (state 7)	0	Vdc	Iac2
	111 000 (state 8)	0	0	0
 Topology 15 (state 3) [165]	S1 S2 S3 S4 S5 S6	Vac		Vdc2 (i+)
	01 0101 (state 1)	0		-
	01 0110 (state 2)	Vdc2		discharge
	01 1001 (state 3)	Vdc1-Vdc2		charge
	01 1010 (state 4)	Vdc1		-
	10 0101 (state 5)	-Vdc1		-
	10 0110 (state 6)	Vdc2-Vdc1		charge
	10 1001 (state 7)	-Vdc2		discharge
	10 1010 (state 8)	0		-
 Topology 14 (state 3) [166]	S1 S3 S5 S2 S4 S6	Iac1	Iac2	Vdc
	000 111 (state 1)	0	0	0
	001 110 (state 2)	0	-Idc	-Vac2
	010 101 (state 3)	-Idc	Idc	-Vac1+Vac2
	011 100 (state 4)	-Idc	0	-Vac1
	100 011 (state 5)	Idc	0	Vac1
	101 010 (state 6)	Idc	-Idc	-Vac2+Vac1
	110 001 (state 7)	0	Idc	Vac2
	111 000 (state 8)	0	0	0
 Topology 16 (state 3) [157]	S1 S2 S3 S4 S5 S6	Iac		Idc2 (v+)
	01 0101 (state 1)	0		-
	01 0110 (state 2)	Idc2		discharge
	01 1001 (state 3)	Idc1-Idc2		charge
	01 1010 (state 4)	Idc1		-
	10 0101 (state 5)	-Idc1		-
	10 0110 (state 6)	Idc2-Idc1		charge
	10 1001 (state 7)	-Idc2		discharge
	10 1010 (state 8)	0		-

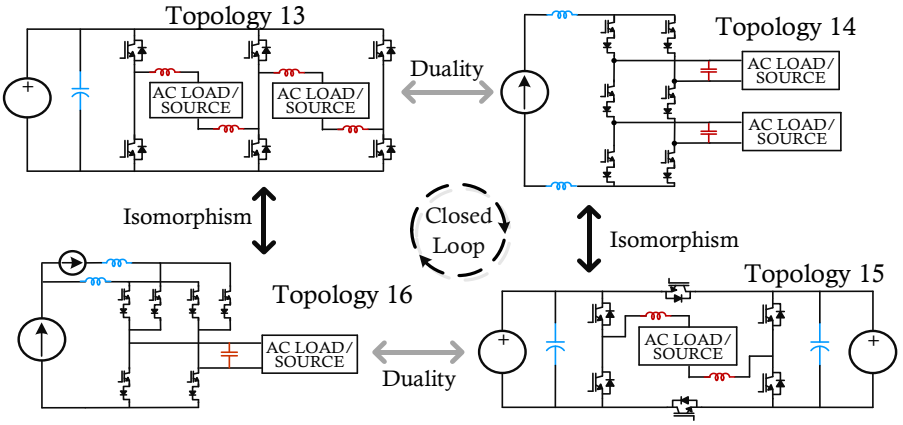
A. Operation analysis

The topology cycling indicates the strong links among VSCs and CSCs which can be utilized for analysis. Take another group of four topologies as demonstrations [157], [164]-[166] (see **Figure**

2-44). Since they are planar circuits, strict mapping relationships are expected for all of them, e.g. same numbers of switching vectors (eight vectors), same (dual) operation limitations of isomorphic (dual) circuits, etc. Based on such interconnections, operation analysis can be done with not only the neighboring topologies but also any pair of topologies inside this loop, e.g. AC currents of Topology 13 and DC voltages of Topology 15, AC voltages of Topology 14 and DC currents of Topology 16.

The detailed features of them are summarized in **Table. 2-VI**. All four topologies share associated AC/DC physical meanings using the same switching tables, e.g., state 3 of topology 15 can be used to charge the V_{dc2}, while the same state of topology 16 leads to charge of I_{dc2}, which implies a similar voltage/current balancing scheme can be implemented for both topologies.

The detailed waveforms of DC current of Topology 13, DC voltage of Topology 14, AC voltage of Topology 15 and DC current of Topology 16 are demonstrated in **Figure 2-45** using the same switching signals (see **Figure 2-46**). The operation principles are based on the conventional modulation of Topology 15, a hybrid phase-shifted scheme, as introduced in [167]. The resulting waveforms show strong similarities in all four topologies. Using proper selected DC-source values, the shapes of I_{dc} of Topology 13 and the V_{dc} of Topology 14 are the same; the shapes of V_{ac} of Topology 15 and the I_{ac} of Topology 16 are the same as well. Through the FFT analysis (see **Figure 2-47**), all these waveforms have a similar harmonic spectrum in theory: the same equivalent switching frequency which is doubled of the carrier frequency. Such performances further show the general similarities of operations among the studied topologies.



Topology 13: Three-leg voltage-source converter with dual AC outputs
Topology 14: Six-switch current-source converter with dual AC outputs
Topology 15: Single-phase multilevel voltage-source converter with dual DC inputs
Topology 16: Single-phase multilevel current-source converter with dual DC inputs

Figure 2-44 The topological transformation cycling Example 3.

Table 2-VII Input/Output Settings of Simulation

Settings of converter input/output	Value	p.u.
AC currents of Topology 13 (I_{ac1}&I_{ac2})	100 A/50 A (peak)	1/0.5
AC voltages of Topology 14 (V_{ac1}&V_{ac2})	100 V/50 V (peak)	1/0.5
DC voltages of Topology 15 (V_{dc1}&V_{dc2})	100 V/50 V	1/0.5
DC currents of Topology 16 (I_{dc1}&I_{dc2})	100 A/50 A	1/0.5

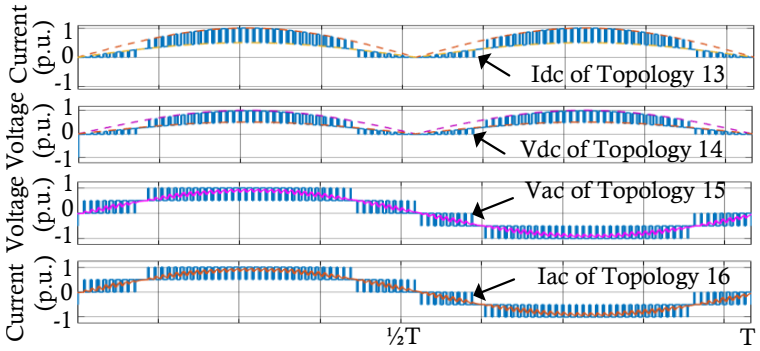


Figure 2-45 Output waveforms of Topology 13~16. Line frequency is 60 Hz, modulation index is 0.9, equivalent switching frequency is 6k Hz.

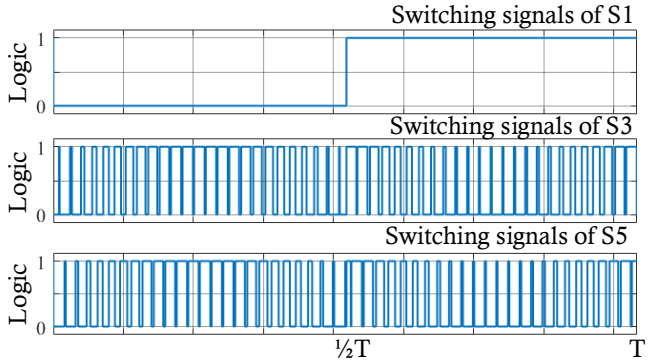


Figure 2-46 The switching signals implemented for Topology 13~16.

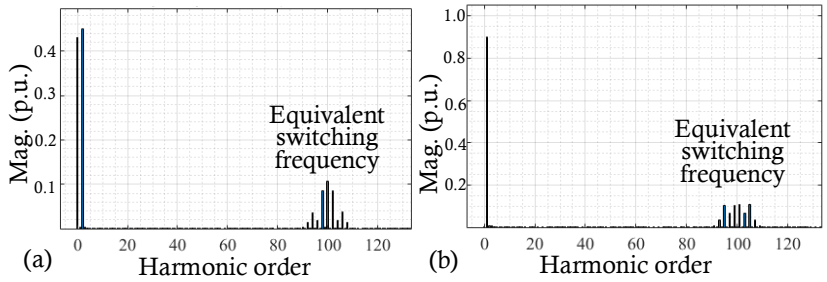


Figure 2-47 FFT analysis results of (a) I_{dc} of Topology 13 and V_{dc} of Topology 14, (b) V_{ac} of Topology 15 and I_{ac} of Topology 16.

B. Modeling of VSCs and CSCs

In addition to operation analysis, the cycling loop can also facilitate the modeling process since the physical properties can be preserved for VSCs and CSCs within the closed loop. Therefore, the modeling process of any converters can be generalized for their counterpart.

Given Example 3, the topology 13 can be modeled as:

$$V_{L1}=L_1\mathrm{d}I_{L1}/\mathrm{d}t,\ V_{L2}=L_2\mathrm{d}I_{L2}/\mathrm{d}t,\ I_c=C_{dc}\mathrm{d}V_{dc}/\mathrm{d}t \tag{2-19}$$

where V_{L1} and V_{L2} are the voltages of AC output inductors L_1 and L_2, I_{L1} and I_{L2} are the corresponding currents, V_{dc} is the voltage of DC capacitor C_{dc}, I_c is the DC current of C_{dc}.

The topology 14 can be modeled as:

$$I_{c1}=C_1\mathrm{d}V_{c1}/\mathrm{d}t,\ I_{c2}=C_2\mathrm{d}V_{c2}/\mathrm{d}t,\ V_L=L_{dc}\mathrm{d}I_{dc}/\mathrm{d}t \tag{2-20}$$

where V_{c1} and V_{c2} are the voltages of AC output capacitors C_1 and C_2, I_{c1} and I_{c2} are the corresponding currents, I_{dc} is the DC current, V_L is the voltage of the DC inductor L_{dc}.

The topology 15 can be modeled as:

$$I_{c1}=C_1\mathrm{d}V_{dc1}/\mathrm{d}t,\ I_{c2}=C_2\mathrm{d}V_{dc2}/\mathrm{d}t,\ V_L=L_{ac}\mathrm{d}I_L/\mathrm{d}t \tag{2-21}$$

where I_{c1} and I_{c2} are the currents of DC input capacitors C_1 and C_2, V_{dc1} and V_{dc2} are the corresponding voltages, I_L is the AC current, V_L is the voltage of the AC inductor L_{ac}.

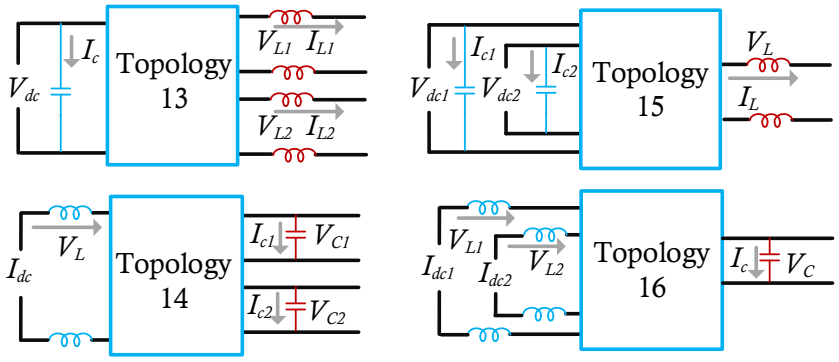


Figure 2-48 The simplified representation of Example 3.

The topology 16 can be modeled as:

$$V_{L1}=L_1\mathrm{d}I_{dc1}/\mathrm{d}t,\ V_{L2}=L_2\mathrm{d}I_{dc2}/\mathrm{d}t,\ I_c=C_{ac}\mathrm{d}V_C/\mathrm{d}t \tag{2-22}$$

where I_{dc1} and I_{dc2} are the currents of DC input inductors L_1 and L_2, V_{L1} and V_{L2} are the corresponding voltages, V_C is the voltage of the AC capacitor C_{ac}, I_c is the corresponding current.

It can be observed that:

(i) (2-19) and (2-20) (or (2-21) and (2-22)) are identical after exchanges, i.e. voltage⇔current, capacitor⇔inductor;

(ii) (2-19) and (2-22) (or (2-20) and (2-21)) are identical after modifications, i.e. only the labels are exchanged ac⇔dc;

(iii) (2-19) and (2-21) (or (2-20) and (2-22)) are also linked through the cycling with bijection as voltage⇔current, capacitor⇔inductor, ac⇔dc.

To summarize, the uniform of (2-19)~(2-22) can be written as:

$$X_1=Z_1\mathrm{d}Y_1/\mathrm{d}t,\ X_2=Z_2\mathrm{d}Y_2/\mathrm{d}t,\ Y_3=Q\mathrm{d}X_3/\mathrm{d}t \tag{2-23}$$

X, Y, Z or Q denotes the same types of physical parameters, e.g. current or voltage for X or Y, capacitance or inductance for Z or Q, while the subscripts denote the different allocations. The switching functions of converters can be obtained based on their switching tables. Therefore, the model of all converters in a closed loop can be unified as one form.

C. Modulation/control strategy design of VSCs and CSCs

Another important implementation of this discovered general relationship is to facilitate the design of modulation and control strategies for VSCs and CSCs, especially the ones that are not well known to everyone.

Take an aforementioned cycling loop as a demonstration, e.g. Example 1 in **Figure 2-38**. Comparing to Topology 2 and 4, Topology 3 consists of two DC-series current-source-type H-bridges and is not popularly studied in literature as far as we know. To design the modulation schemes for Topology 3, conventionally, we have to start from the operation analysis and modeling of the converter, which is normally time-consuming. However, with the discovered cycling, the existing methods for Topology 2 and 4 can be utilized in a systematic way.

If the reduction of DC-side voltage ripples of Topology 3 is the objective of modulation design, then, the AC-side multilevel modulation of Topology 4 can be directly utilized. If the objective is to modulate the AC-side currents of Topology 3, then, the AC-side voltage modulation of Topology 2 can be directly utilized. Since carrier-based PWM can be applied for both the Topology 2 and 4, it can also be implemented for Topology 3. The modulation logic should follow the switching functions exactly as shown in **Figure 2-49**. Due to the dual and isomorphic relationships, the DC voltages and AC currents of Topology 3 can be express in the same forms as its counterparts.

Therefore, the phase-shifted PWM can be implemented for Topology 3, the modulation logic is shown with details in **Figure 2-50**. To validate the designed modulation scheme, experiments are done with the platform shown in **Figure 2-51** and parameters listed in **Table. 2-VIII**. The experiment waveforms are shown in **Figure 2-52**. It can be observed that the AC output voltage is tracked as sinusoidal as well as the AC current, while the DC voltage is modulated as a semi-multilevel waveform, which indicates reduced DC ripples. Note that some spikes in the waveforms are likely caused by the EMI from the experimental platform. In particular, we use SiC MOSFET (SCT3080KLHR) and SiC Schottky barrier diode (SCS220AE) in the main circuit. And the

switching turn ON/OFF time is very short (less than 100ns), which will easily lead to transient voltage spikes on the parasitic inductor in the current path. In addition, the DC-offset of the DC voltage waveforms could be caused by the inherent voltage drop of the conducting devices in the current path.

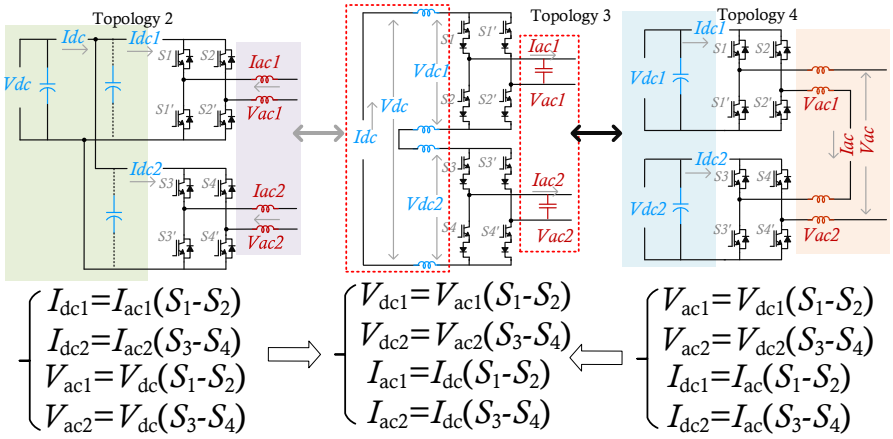


Figure 2-49 The switching functions of three topologies in Example 1. Topology 2: DC-parallel H-bridge VSCs. Topology 2: DC-series H-bridge CSCs. Topology 2: AC-series H-bridge VSCs.

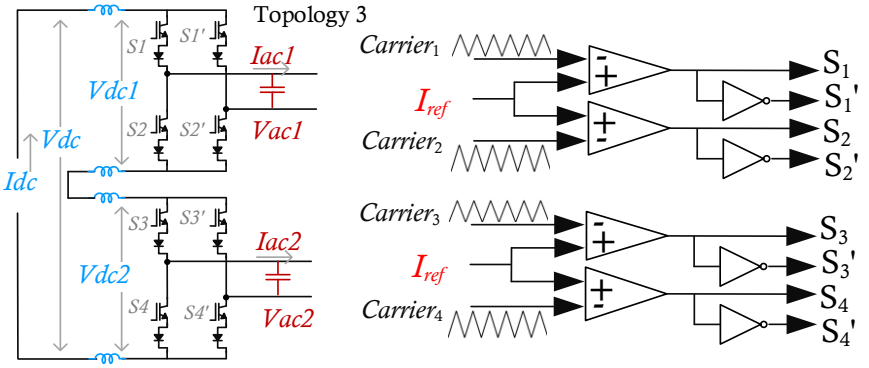


Figure 2-50 Implementation of carrier-based PWM for Topology 3.

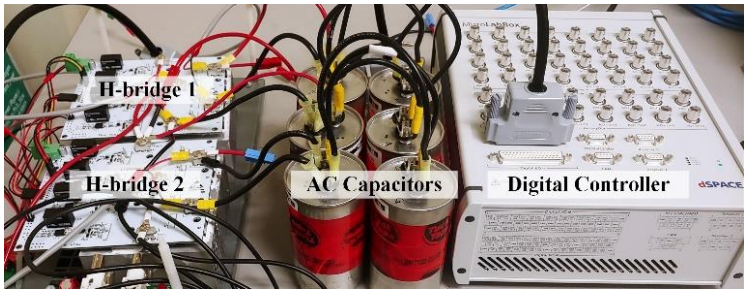


Figure 2-51 Experimental platform.

Table 2-VIII Experiment Settings of Topology 3

Parameter	Value
DC current (I_{dc})	3 A
AC-side filter	120 uF
AC-side load	5 mH 6 ohm
Carrier frequency	2000 Hz
Line frequency	60 Hz
Phase-shift angle of four carriers	90°

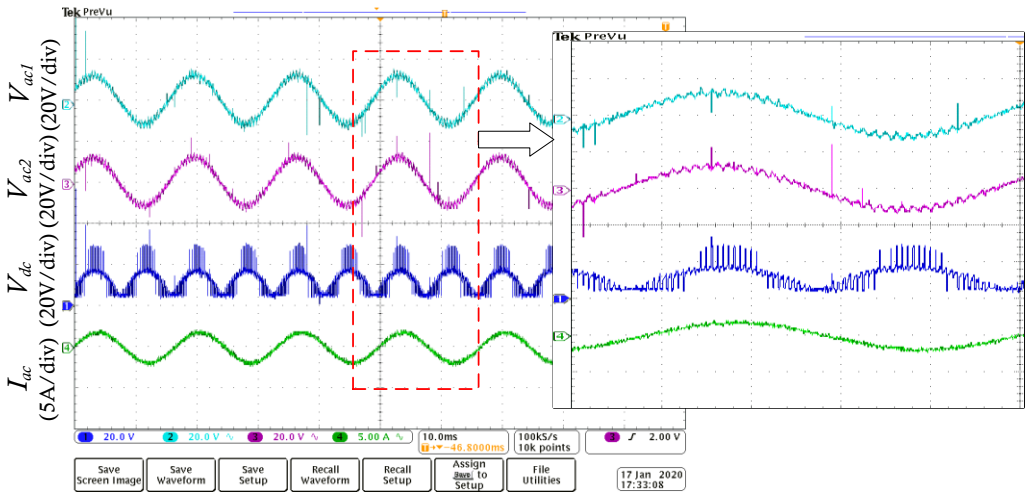


Figure 2-52 Implementation of carrier-based PWM for Topology 3.

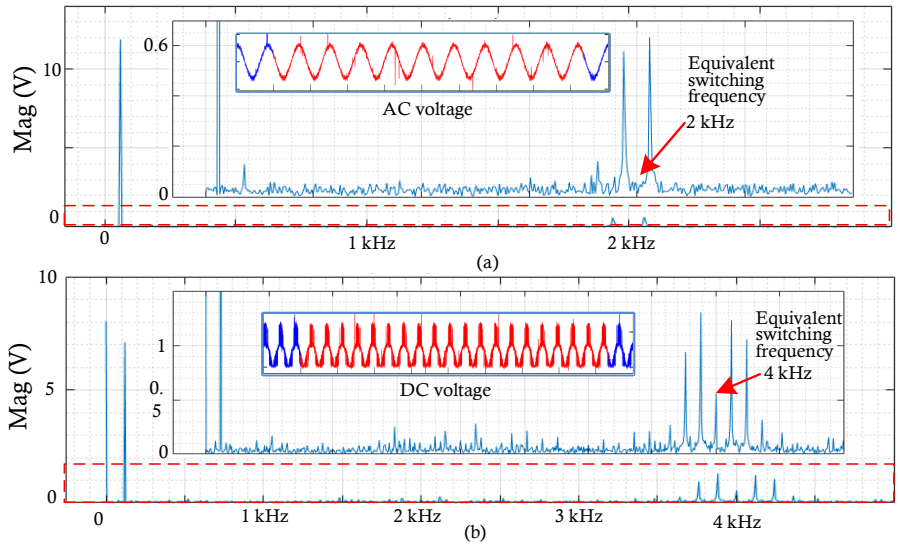


Figure 2-53 Harmonic spectrum of (a) V_{ac} of Topology 3, (b) V_{dc} of Topology 3.

The harmonic spectrums are also demonstrated in **Figure 2-53**, which shows a doubled equivalent frequency of DC voltage ripples. This phenomenon commonly exists in Topology 4 if phase-shifted PWM is applied. In summary, by implementing the existing methods of the well-studied Topology 2 and 4, Topology 4 can be modulated with good AC-side and DC-side waveforms.

Based on the discussions of the previous section, all converters in one closed loop have a unified form of the average model and switching functions. Therefore, the same control structures can be designed for them systematically. Either the single-loop or dual-loop control strategy can be designed based on the filter orders of converters [168].

2.4. Summary

In this chapter, the fundamental relationships of power converters are thoroughly investigated, especially for the VSCs and CSCs. Meanwhile, two major types of theories are highlighted: one is the famous dual theory, the other one is the emerging isomorphic theory.

Firstly, the dual theory for planar circuits and non-planar circuits are reviewed. Especially for converters with non-planar circuits, various methods have been proposed in literature and are systematically summarized here. To overcome the limitations, additional constraints are normally needed for dual transformation of those converters (e.g. balanced output, physical equivalent, etc.). Then, the isomorphic theory is introduced for establishing another intrinsic relationship among VSCs and CSCs. Not only the topology but also the operation rules (e.g. modulation) can be transformed from one converter to another. In particular, the single-phase three-level VSC is isomorphic with the three-phase CSC, and they share the one-to-one modulation scheme as verified in this work. Finally, instead of implementing the dual methods and isomorphic methods in an independent way, we use both the duality and isomorphism synthetically and discover the topology cycling phenomenon. Such a new finding reveals the common properties among various VSCs and CSCs in terms of their topologies, operation principles, modulation/control strategies, etc. To demonstrate this work, the theoretical proof is given to show the versatility of these new findings for all kinds of power converters. Then, the systematic operation analysis and the unified model of selected VSCs and CSCs examples are given to show the similarities among the cycling topologies. The modulation scheme of the DC-series H-bridge CSC is designed to reduce the DC ripples based on the existing PWM of existing VSC topology. In summary, by properly utilizing the discovered relationships, both existing and future VSCs and CSCs topologies can be linked with each other and sharing the existing knowledge in a more comprehensively way.

As for the following chapters, the theory-level achievements in **Chapter 2** can be implemented for voltage-source/current-source MLCs and facilitate the topology derivation and modulation

design in a systematic way. In **Chapter 3**, the fundamental relationships in a structure level of the MLCs will be investigated, e.g. duality, resulting in the unified matrix models of the MLCs that will be applied for systematic topology derivations for voltage-source/current-source MLC topologies. Then, the cycling rules can be utilized for generating more new derivations by generalizing the derived VSC or CSC topology into more circuit forms.

Chapter 3

Systematic derivation of multilevel converters[1]

In conventional ways, MLCs derivations are mainly realized through circuit-level synthesis (e.g. voltage-source MLCs) or dual transformation (e.g. current-source MLCs). To derive current-source MLCs, dual principles are normally utilized to facilitate the topological derivation process [81], [82], [169]. In [81], the duality principle is utilized to construct the current-source MLCs topologies based on the existent voltage-source MLCs topologies. In [82], such duality principle is utilized for MMC derivation considering both the sub-modules and cell connections. However, these methods tend to be quite complicated when dealing with high-level/non-planar circuits. In this chapter, we establish the unified models of MLCs based on the structure-level fundamental relationships extended from **Chapter 2**. And develop the systematic topology derivation approach for three types of MLCs (voltage-source, current-source, matrix type).

As introduced in **Chapter 2**, the duality can be adopted for revealing such relationships in a higher-level abstract way. For voltage-source MLCs and current-source MLCs, dual relationships can be found in a structure-level by representing in matrix models. It will be demonstrated that both types of MLCs can be modeled in stage-based common structures. Therefore, it is possible to derive these two types of MLCs in a structure-level by following a universal approach. As for each stage, the basic circuit forms are summarized and can be directly utilized for topology synthesis without conducting dual transformation. Moreover, it is well established that matrix-type MLCs have the equivalent circuits with voltage-source and current-source MLCs, which can be considered as another structure-level relationships. Therefore, the matrix-type of MLCs can be synthesized by directly combining voltage-source and current-source MLCs. In addition, to further generalize the derived topology database, the discovered cycling rules can be utilized here. Once an original topology is derived, it can be transformed into another one/three forms with clear fundamental relationships (as established in **Chapter 2**).

[1] Publication out of this Chapter:

Yuzhuo Li, Yunwei Li and Zhongyi Quan, "Systematic Synthesis and Derivation of Multilevel Converters Using Common Topological Structures with Unified Matrix Models," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 35, no. 6, pp. 5639-5659, June 2020.
Yuzhuo Li, Nie Hou, Li Ding and Yunwei Li, "Unfolder Operation and Modulation Strategy of Paralleled Current-Source Converters," *2019 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition (ECCE)*, Baltimore, MD, USA, 2019, pp. 5089-5095.

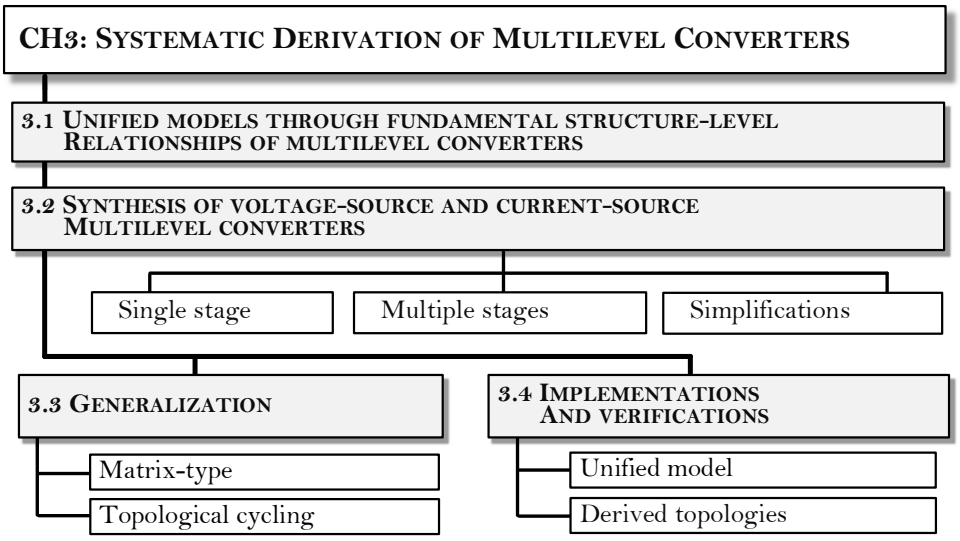


Figure 3-1 Logic structure of Chapter 3.

3.1. Unified models and structures of multilevel converters

In literature, some research works summarize the common structure of certain types of voltage-source MLCs which can help the derivation process of new topologies [29], [66], [80]. For example, in [80], two types of derivation methods are reviewed: 1) generalized-topology method; 2) basic-cell method. Based on the former type, the structure of general topology is needed first, and then simplify it according to various requirements. However, the general principles of topology deduction can hardly be obtained in this way. While the second one limits the basic cells must be self-balanced, which in fact makes the topology deduction lose generality. While the self-voltage balancing capability is appreciated in some applications, we certainly cannot eliminate other options especially considering that the topologies that require external balancing force may still be valuable for low voltage applications. In [66], five main submodules (SMs) are introduced as the basic structures covering a large number of voltage-source MLC structures. The common structures are shown in specific types of circuit connection forms, e.g. series connection and parallel connection. While the structure properties among different topologies are still ambiguous due to the lack of universal representation models in a mathematical point of view.

In this section, the structures of all three types of MLCs are thoroughly investigated, i.e. voltage-source MLC, current-source MLC, and matrix-type MLC. To cover mainstream converters, eight typical topologies (e.g. half bridge, H bridge, MMC, generalized self-balance MLC, two kinds of general multilevel CSCs, 3-level and 5-level matrix converters) are presented with associated mathematical representations to demonstrate the common topological features of all three types of MLCs.

3.1.1 Structure-level relationships based on matrix models

A. Voltage-source multilevel converters

First, four voltage-source topologies are selected and discussed as follows.

Voltage-Source Example 1: Circuit form of 2-level (2L) output half-bridge converter is shown in **Figure 3-2**. Points A1 and A2 are the output terminals. If A1 is the midpoint of the DC side, then the output voltage level can be $+V_d/2$, or $-V_d/2$.

The output voltage can be expressed as:

$$V_{A2A1} = \begin{bmatrix} s_1 & s_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_1 \\ L_2 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-1}$$

Note that two vectors are implemented: one represents the switching states with conventional bi-logic, and another one represents the available input voltage levels.

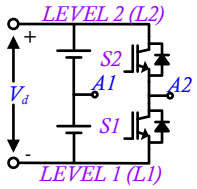


Figure 3-2 Half-bridge converter with two-level output.

Voltage-Source Example 2: Similarly, the circuit form of 3L output H-bridge converter is shown in **Figure 3-3**. Points A1 and A2 are the output terminals and the output voltage levels can be $+V_d$, 0, or $-V_d$.

The output voltage can be expressed as:

$$V_{A1A2} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{11} - s_{21} & s_{12} - s_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_{11} \\ L_{12} \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-2}$$

Similar to (3-1), two vectors are also implemented in (3-2).

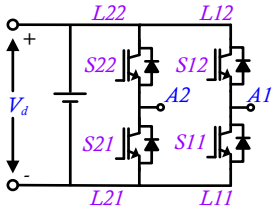


Figure 3-3 H-bridge converter with three-level output.

Voltage-Source Example 3: Circuit form of MMC with half-bridge sub-module (also can be referred to as double-star chopper cell (DSCC) converter in [7]) is shown in **Figure 3-4(a)**. The topology can be equivalently transformed into **Figure 3-4(b)**.

The output voltage w.r.t. potential *A*1 of each sub-module is related to its switching states, the DC capacitor voltage, and the input voltage levels. The output voltage can be expressed as:

$$V_{A2A1} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{n4} & S_{n3} & S_{n2} & S_{n1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_{n22} \\ L_{n21} \\ L_{n12} \\ L_{n11} \end{bmatrix}, \tag{3-3}$$

The equation (3-3) is for the rightmost two SMs, which can be expanded to cover all the sub-modules information through iterative substitution.

The matrix model of Stage *n-1* of MMC is:

$$\begin{bmatrix} V_{o(n-1)1} \\ V_{o(n-1)2} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{(n-1)4} & S_{(n-1)3} & & \\ & & S_{(n-1)2} & S_{(n-1)1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_{(n-1)22} \\ L_{(n-1)21} \\ L_{(n-1)12} \\ L_{(n-1)11} \end{bmatrix} \tag{3-4}$$

Substitute the (3-4) into the Eq. (3-3), we have the extended model of V_{A2A1}:

$$V_{A2A1} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{n4} & S_{n3} & S_{n2} & S_{n1} \end{bmatrix} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} S_{(n-1)4} & S_{(n-1)3} & & \\ S_{(n-1)4} & S_{(n-1)3} & & \\ & & S_{(n-1)2} & S_{(n-1)1} \\ & & S_{(n-1)2} & S_{(n-1)1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_{(n-1)22} \\ L_{(n-1)21} \\ L_{(n-1)12} \\ L_{(n-1)11} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -V_{dn2} \\ V_{dn1} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \tag{3-5}$$

If the stage *n-2* of MMC is considered, (3-5) will be extended with the information of next neighboring SMs (associated with $[S_{(n-2)4}\ S_{(n-2)3}\ S_{(n-2)2}\ S_{(n-2)1}]$ and $[L_{(n-2)22}\ L_{(n-2)21}\ L_{(n-2)12}\ L_{(n-2)11}]^T$). In such a way, V_{A2A1} can contain all SMs information.

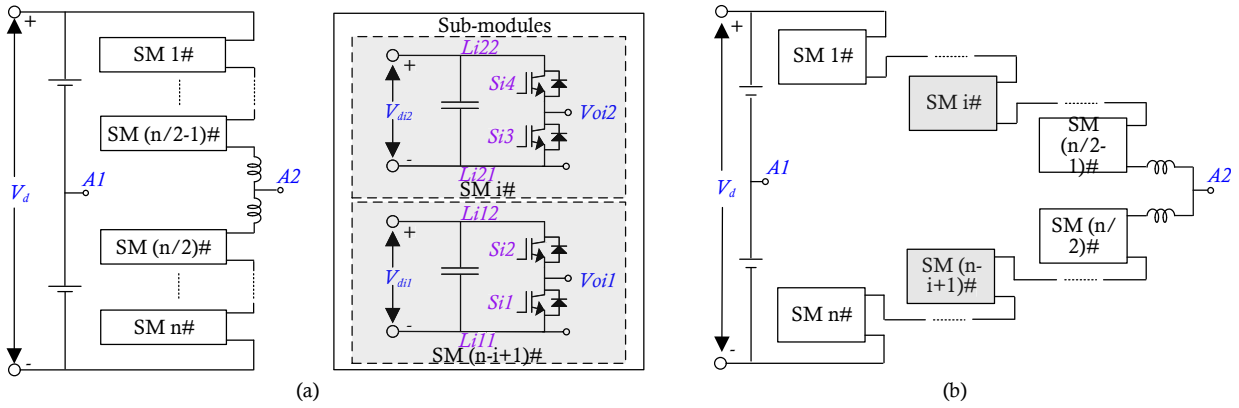


Figure 3-4 Generalized MMC with half-bridge sub-module. (a) Circuit form. (b) Equivalent circuit form.

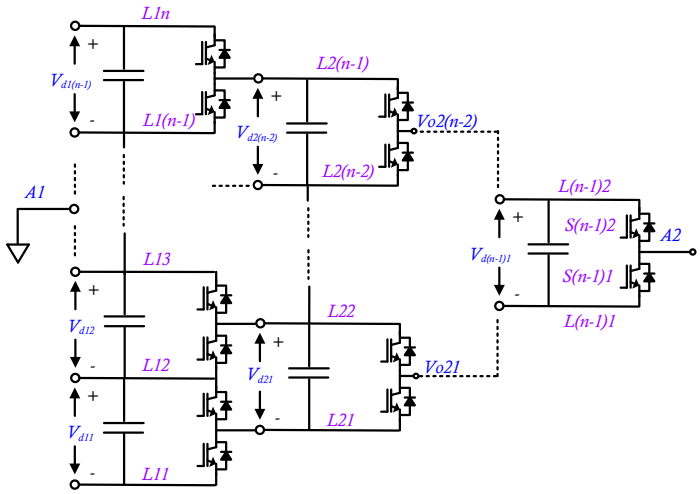


Figure 3-5 Generalized self-balancing MLC.

Voltage-Source Example 4: Circuit form of generalized self-balancing MLC in [78] is shown in **Figure 3-5**.

The output voltage can be expressed as:

$$V_{A2A1} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{(n-1)2} & S_{(n-1)1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_{(n-1)2} \\ L_{(n-1)1} \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-6}$$

The equation (3-6) is for the rightmost half-bridge and can also be expanded with all the clamping capacitors and associated switch networks through iterative substitution.

B. Current-source multilevel converters

Next, two examples are presented to illustrate the common structure of current-source MLC.

Current-Source Example 1: Circuit form of single-phase single-rating inductor current-source MLC is shown in **Figure 3-6** [169]. The output current can be expressed as:

$$I_o = \begin{bmatrix} s_{11} s'_{12} & s_{12} s'_{11} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I_1 \\ -I_1 \end{bmatrix} + \cdots + \begin{bmatrix} s_{n1} s'_{n2} & s_{n2} s'_{n1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I_n \\ -I_n \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-7}$$

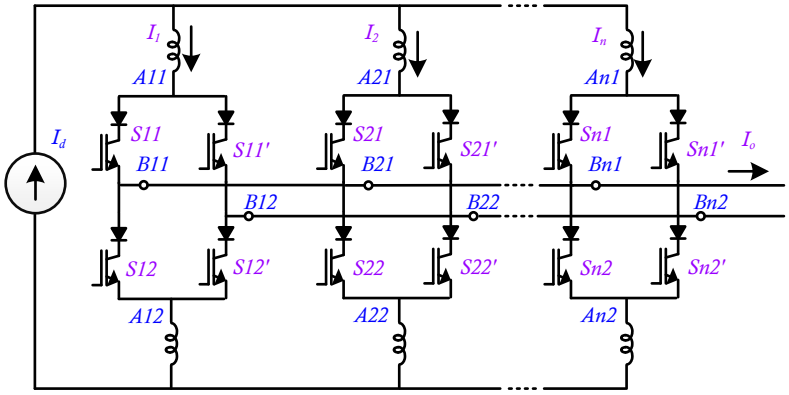


Figure 3-6 Single-phase single-rating inductor current-source MLC.

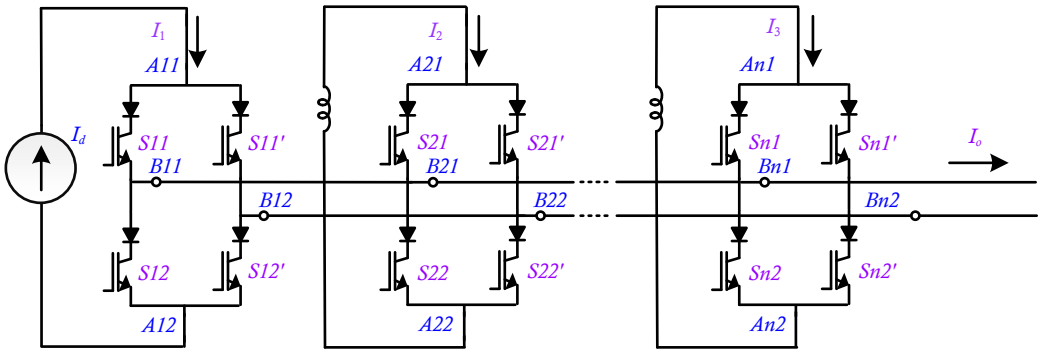


Figure 3-7 H-bridge current-source inverter.

Normally, the upper switches are complementary (e.g. S_{11} and S'_{11}), which simplifies (3-7) into:

$$I_o = \begin{bmatrix} s_{11} & s_{12} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I_1 \\ -I_1 \end{bmatrix} + \cdots + \begin{bmatrix} s_{n1} & s_{n2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I_n \\ -I_n \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-8}$$

Note that two types of vectors are implemented: one represents the switching states, and another one represents the available input currents.

Current-Source Example 2: Circuit form of H-bridge current-source inverter is shown in **Figure 3-7** [170]. The output current can be expressed as the same as (3-7) or (3-8). It can be considered as the counterpart of a conventional voltage source converter with floating capacitor H-bridge cells [171] and shares similar modulation schemes and control strategies.

C. Duality in structure-level of MLCs

Through the above examples, it is straightforward to summarize the common structure of a voltage-source MLC as the dot product of two vectors:

$$v = \mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{L}, \tag{3-9}$$

where v denotes the output voltage, **S** denotes the switching state vector, **L** denotes the voltage level vector. Such equation can also be written for any intermediate output voltages inside the voltage-source MLCs. In such a unified way, all topologies discussed in [66] can be systematically represented.

Also, the common structure of a current-source MLC can be expressed as the dot product of two vectors:

$$i = \mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{I}, \tag{3-10}$$

where i denotes the output current, **S** denotes the switching state vector, **I** denotes the current vector. Such an equation can also be written for any sub-module output currents inside the MLCs.

Comparing the (3-9) and (3-10), it is easy to observe the following relationships in between: (i) the output voltage is dual to the output current; (ii) the voltage level vector is dual to the current vector. The switching state vector is remained the same form in both types.

Fundamentally, the unified matrix representation can be derived:

$$\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{S} * \mathbf{L} \tag{3-11}$$

where **X** denotes the output voltage/current matrix of an arbitrary stage, **S** denotes the level selector matrix of this stage through basic bi-logic representation (value 1 for switch "ON", value 0 for switch "OFF"), **L** denotes the level generator matrix of the same stage, * represents the most basic matrix multiplication. With that, the topological synthesis and derivation process can be considered as basic linear equation calculation. While the topology simplification process is the transformation of equations.

D. Equivalent topological features in matrix-type multilevel converters

Finally, for matrix converters, two examples are presented to illustrate their topological features.

Matrix Converter Example 1: A 3-voltage-level matrix MLC is shown in **Figure 3-8**. The detailed analysis of a similar 3L matrix MLC using NPC was given in [31].

The equation of input voltages and output voltages can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{V}_{inv} = \mathbf{S}_{3L}\mathbf{V}_{rect} \tag{3-12}$$

where $\mathbf{V}_{inv}$, $\mathbf{S}_{3L}$, and $\mathbf{V}_{rect}$ can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{V}_{inv} = \begin{bmatrix} v_A & v_B & v_C \end{bmatrix}^T, \mathbf{V}_{rect} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{V}_{rect1}^T & \mathbf{V}_{rect2}^T \end{bmatrix}^T, \mathbf{S}_{3L} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{inv1} & \mathbf{S}_{inv1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{rect1} \\ \mathbf{S}_{rect1} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{rect1} = \begin{bmatrix} v_{a1} & v_{b1} & v_{c1} \end{bmatrix}^T, \mathbf{V}_{rect2} = \begin{bmatrix} v_{a2} & v_{b2} & v_{c2} \end{bmatrix}^T.$$

Assume there is an intermediate voltage vector such as $\mathbf{L}=[L_3\ L_2\ L_2\ L_1]^T$, the voltage relationship between rectifier parts and inverter part can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{rect1} \\ \mathbf{S}_{rect2} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{V}_{rect}, \mathbf{V}_{inv} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{inv1} & \mathbf{S}_{inv2} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{L} \tag{3-13}$$

where the equations of the two parts have the same structures of voltage-source MLC and current-source MLC (i.e. structure-level isomorphism), respectively. And the $\mathbf{S}_{rect1}$, $\mathbf{S}_{rect2}$, $\mathbf{S}_{inv1}$ and $\mathbf{S}_{inv2}$ can be expressed as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{rect1} \\ \mathbf{S}_{rect1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_1 & s_2 & s_3 \\ s_1' & s_2' & s_3' \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} s_4 & s_5 & s_6 \\ s_4' & s_5' & s_6' \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{inv1} & \mathbf{S}_{inv1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_7 s_{10} & s_7' s_{10} \\ s_8 s_{11} & s_8' s_{11} \\ s_9 s_{12} & s_9' s_{12} \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} s_7'' s_{10}' & s_7''' s_{10}' \\ s_8'' s_{11}' & s_8''' s_{11}' \\ s_9'' s_{12}' & s_9''' s_{12}' \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}.$$

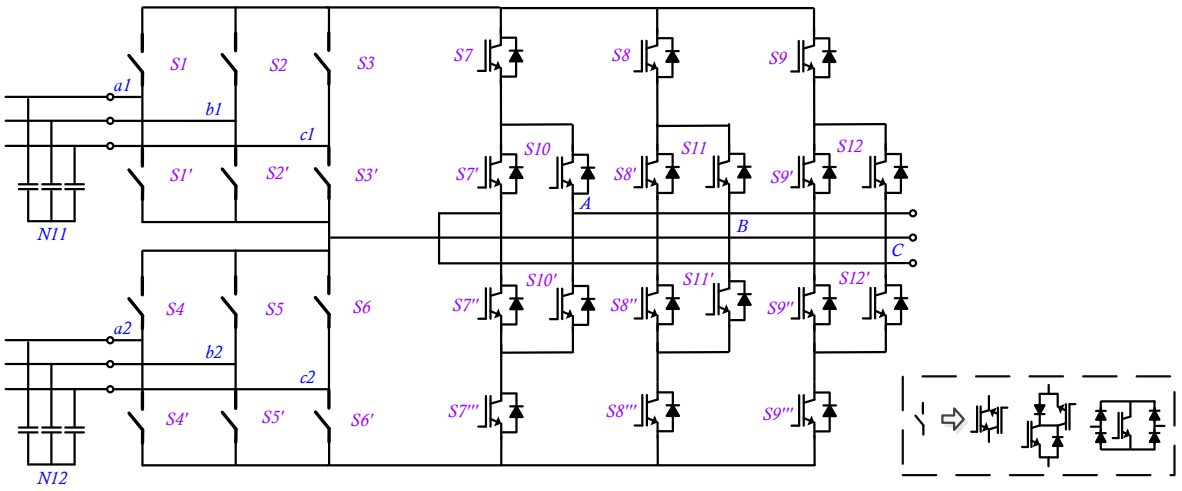


Figure 3-8 3-level indirect matrix converter.

Matrix Converter Example 2: A 5-current-level matrix MLC is demonstrated in **Figure 3-9**. Note that this topology is parallel indirect matrix converters system as described in [172].

The equation of input currents and output currents can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{I}_{rect} = \mathbf{S}_{5L}^{T}\mathbf{I}_{inv} \tag{3-14}$$

where $\mathbf{I}_{inv}$, $\mathbf{S}_{5L}$, and $\mathbf{I}_{rect}$ can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{I}_{inv} = \begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{I}_{inv1}^{T} & \mathbf{I}_{inv2}^{T}\end{bmatrix}^{T}, \mathbf{I}_{inv1} = \begin{bmatrix}i_{A1} & i_{B1} & i_{C1}\end{bmatrix}^{T}, \mathbf{I}_{inv2} = \begin{bmatrix}i_{A2} & i_{B2} & i_{C2}\end{bmatrix}^{T},$$

$$\mathbf{I}_{rect} = \begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{I}_{rect1}^{T} & \mathbf{I}_{rect2}^{T}\end{bmatrix}^{T}, \mathbf{I}_{rect1} = \begin{bmatrix}i_{a1} & i_{b1} & i_{c1}\end{bmatrix}^{T}, \mathbf{I}_{rect2} = \begin{bmatrix}i_{a2} & i_{b2} & i_{c2}\end{bmatrix}^{T},$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{5L} = \begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{S}_{inv1}\mathbf{S}_{rect1} & \\ & \mathbf{S}_{inv2}\mathbf{S}_{rect2}\end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{inv1} = \begin{bmatrix}s_7 & s_7' \\ s_8 & s_8' \\ s_9 & s_9'\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{inv1} = \begin{bmatrix}s_{10} & s_{10}' \\ s_{11} & s_{11}' \\ s_{12} & s_{12}'\end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{rect1} = \begin{bmatrix}s_1 & s_2 & s_3 \\ s_1' & s_2' & s_3'\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{rect2} = \begin{bmatrix}s_4 & s_5 & s_6 \\ s_4' & s_5' & s_6'\end{bmatrix}.$$

Assume the intermediate current vector is $\mathbf{L}=[L_1\ -L_1\ L_2\ -L_2]^T$, the current relationship between rectifier parts and inverter part can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{I}_{rect} = \begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{S}_{rect1}^{T} & \\ & \mathbf{S}_{rect2}^{T}\end{bmatrix}^{T}\mathbf{L}, \quad \mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{S}_{inv1}^{T} & \\ & \mathbf{S}_{inv2}^{T}\end{bmatrix}^{T}\mathbf{I}_{inv}, \tag{3-15}$$

which has the same structure of current-source MLC (i.e. structure-level equivalence).

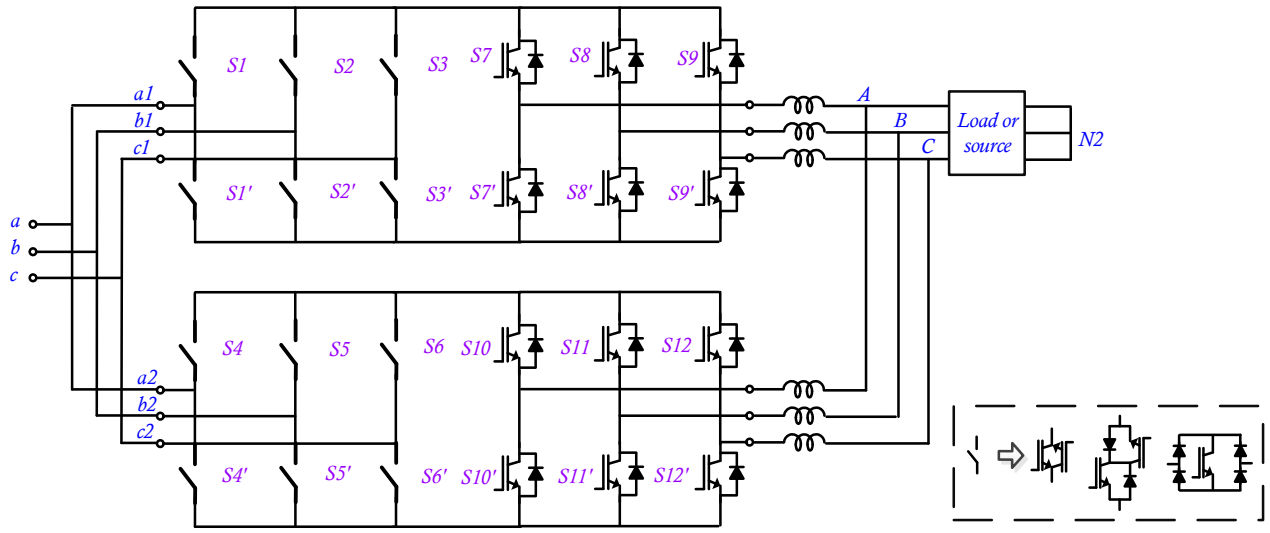


Figure 3-9 Indirect matrix converter with 5L current output.

This section investigates the common structures among all three kinds of MLCs with associated matrix representations. It is demonstrated that the outputs of MLCs can be represented in a unique dot product of two matrices. For complex circuits, the models can be developed iteratively. In such way, the similarity and difference of various MLCs can be exhibited in a mathematical way, and the derivation method for one topology can be mathematically transformed into another one which will greatly facilitate the derivation process.

3.1.2 Stage-based structures of multilevel converters

In literature, similar concepts towards the MLC structure have been developed e.g. level lines, layers [78]-[80], [173]which easily leads to confusions under different semantics towards different types of topologies. Based on the summary of common structures of MLC topologies in the previous section, all three types of MLCs can be represented in a unified mathematical form. In this section, such a concept is defined more precisely and will be discussed thoroughly with demonstration examples to help better understand the mathematical models and the topological relationships of various MLC topologies.

To represent voltage-source and current-source MLC in a generalized manner, the concept of the stage is introduced in this section. In the proposed concept, a multilevel topology is composed of several stages, as shown in **Figure 3-10**. Herein a voltage-source MLC or a current-source MLC is considered as a composition of several consecutively connected stages as shown in **Figure 3-10(a)** and **(b)**. Each stage can have single or multiple inputs and single or multiple outputs with different circuit appearance. A stage can be further decomposed into a combination of level generators (LGs) and level selectors (LSs). An LG is a circuit responsible for generating or retaining the desired voltage/current levels. An LS is a circuit responsible for selecting the proper voltage/current levels that generated from the previous LG. The typical structure of a stage is composed of an LG and an LS. Since selecting level within each stage is actually based on modulation strategy, both high and low-frequency behavior can be represented in the proposed concept.

A matrix MLC can be considered as a combination of voltage-source MLC with a virtual voltage source and current-source MLC with a virtual current source. Furthermore, the physical switches are abstracted into the node-branch diagram. The topology synthesis and derivation are realized by designing and manipulating the stages with node-branch diagram.

The stage-based common structure of MLC with shared DC link shows that a stage has a complete voltage/current level output capability, which can be considered as the smallest unit of functional circuits in a topology. Two-level topologies can be considered special cases from the stage-based point of view.

The connection rule of LG and LS in a stage is that the number of input terminals of an LS and the number of output terminals of an LG must be same when they are to be connected. After connection, the generated levels (from an LG) can be selected by the subsequent LS. By coordinating the behaviors of all the LSs, desired output levels can be obtained. The procedure is also known as modulation. Since there is no restriction on the switching frequency of the LSs, the coupling between an LG and an LS can be either high frequency or low frequency in the proposed concept. Examples are given in following sections for better understanding of the concept of stage and the node-branch diagram.

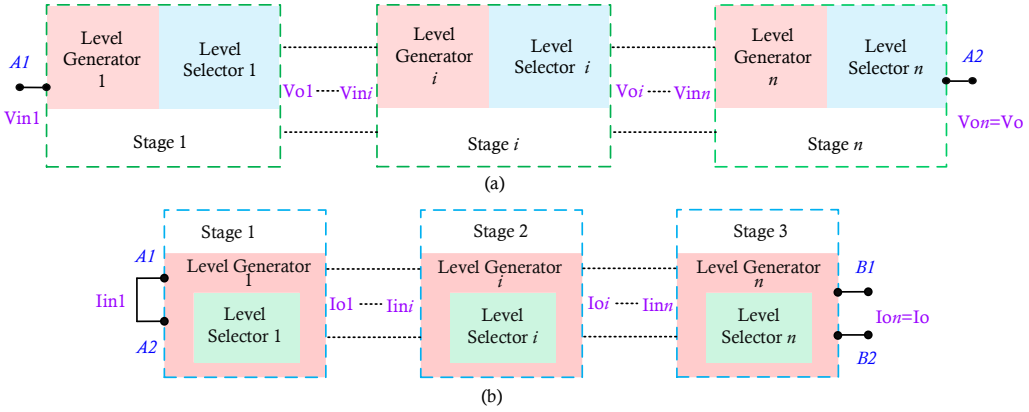


Figure 3-10 A generalized representation of multilevel topology based on the concept of the stage for (a) voltage-source MLC, (b) current-source MLC.

3.1.3 Commonly used level generators, level selectors

A. Graphical representation through node-branch diagram

The node-branch diagram has been a useful tool to represent the electrical topologies [174]-[177]. It provides a general way to present the multilevel topologies. However, conventionally, the node-branch diagram cannot reveal the structural synthesis of a multilevel topology. In this work, this diagram is combined with the concept of the stage, providing an efficient and generalized approach to represent and derive topologies. The definitions of node and branch are as follows:

(i) Node: A node is a point.

(ii) Branch: A branch is a line segment joining two nodes.

In a physical circuit, a node represents any chosen positions in a lumped circuit. While a branch represents the conductor connecting two chosen points in a lumped circuit. In a multi-level circuit, the power electronic switch is abstracted as a special node-branch diagram that can be controlled. From the signal flow point of view, it has only two states. One is the state of signal transmission, one is the state of the signal block. For each topology, the node-branch diagram can be drawn

based on the concept of the stage. To better explain the concept of stage and the node-branch diagram, examples are given in the following sections.

B. Commonly used level generators, level selectors of voltage-source MLCs

Considering the generality of multilevel topologies, the basic LGs and LSs of voltage-source MLC are firstly introduced in both circuit form and node-branch form in the following context.

Firstly, the circuit form of *n*-input-*n*-output (*n*-to-*n*) LG is shown in **Figure 3-11(a)**. Such a level generator is the most basic component of a voltage-source multilevel topology. Each input terminal A_j can be chosen as the reference point (j=1, 2, ..., *n*), which can be arbitrarily selected. Voltage levels are generated by the linked dc source which is named as V_{di} for *i*th dc source. In general, the dc sources can either be the outputs of dc-dc converters, or simply ideal voltage sources, or capacitor buffered voltage from the front end. LEVELi mean the generated voltage of *i*th output terminal relative to the reference point, *i*=1, 2, ..., *n*. Node-branch form of the *n*-to-*n* LG is shown accordingly in **Figure 3-11(b)**. It should be noted that in an LG, the sources are neglected while only levels remain. When drawing a node-branch diagram, the level must be labeled using the term LEVELi or Li to indicate the voltage level information. The associated level generator vector is expressed as follow:

$$\mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} L_n & L_{n-1} & \cdots & L_1 \end{bmatrix}^T . \tag{3-16}$$

Note that the arbitrarily selected input terminal is served as a reference to simplify the representation of circuit voltages and will not change the difference between adjacent terminal voltage potentials. In **Figure 3-11(c)** and **(d)**, a 1-to-*n* LG is shown, while A1 is the reference point (usually chosen as the mirror symmetry point of the circuit, also known as a neutral point).

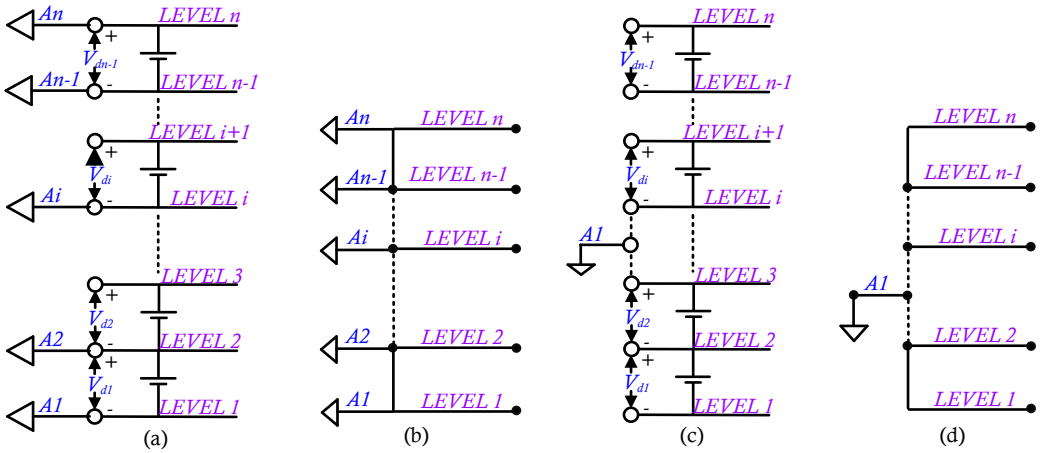


Figure 3-11 (a) Circuit form of the n-to-n level generator, (b) node-branch diagram of n-to-n level generator, (c) circuit form of the 1-to-n level generator, (d) node-branch diagram of the 1-to-n level generator.

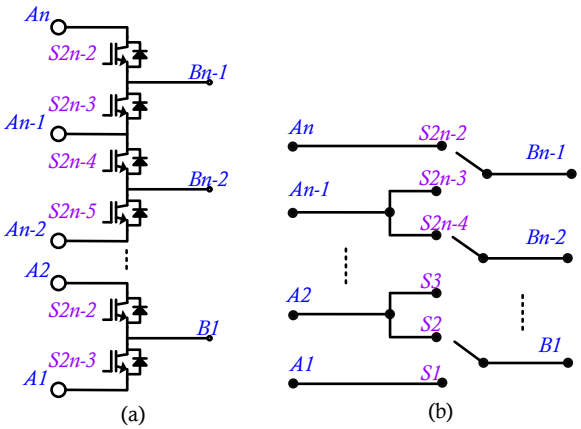


Figure 3-12 n-to-(n-1) level selector. (a) Circuit form. (b) Node-branch diagram.

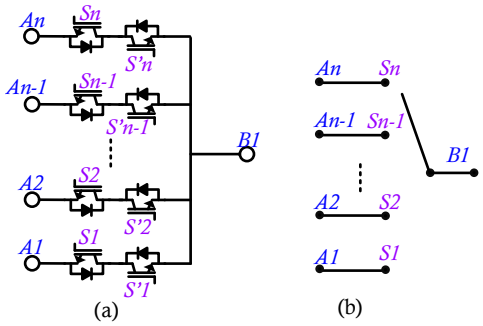


Figure 3-13 n-to-1 level selector. (a) Circuit form. (b) Node-branch diagram.

Secondly, the circuit form of n-input-(n-1)-output (n-to-(n-1)) LS is shown in **Figure 3-12(a)**. This type of LS, which is commonly used as part of the generalized voltage-source MLC [78], is composed of connected half bridges. Node-branch diagram of n-to-(n-1) LS is shown in **Figure 3-12(b)**. The associated level selector matrix is written as follow:

$$\mathbf{S}=\begin{bmatrix} s_{2n-2} & s_{2n-3} & & & \\ & s_{2n-4} & s_{2n-5} & & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & & s_2 & s_1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-17}$$

Note that the input nodes of a LS can be connected to a LG or a LS with compatible output terminals (i.e. to form an n-to-m LS, in which $n>m$, one can link ($n-m$) LS with input-output terminals following such order: n-to-(n-1) LS, (n-1)-to-(n-2) LS, ..., (m+1)-to-m LS. If m=1, the connected LGs form the main topology of a general ANPC [96]).

In literature, the LS with $n<m$ can also be found in switching-cell arrays proposed in [178]. Another type of voltage LS is shown in **Figure 3-13(a)**. Its node-branch diagram is shown in **Figure 3-13(b)**. The associated level selector matrix is written as follow:

$$\mathbf{S} = \begin{bmatrix} S_n & & & \\ & S_{n-1} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & S_1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-18}$$

Note that each branch can represent an active bi-directional switch. Practically, to achieve the same function, whether the polarity of the internal switch of the selector is unidirectional or bidirectional can be determined by considering the designer's requirements based on the principle of simplification (details will be presented in **section 3.2.3**). The simplest example is the 3-level (3L) T-type NPC converter shown as in **Figure 3-14** [179].

Note that only single-phase topologies are considered here. The derivation of multi-phase converters can be treated as a permutation and combination of the data of the derived phase-leg "topology database". For the multi-phase converter design, the derivation is still a step-by-step process. One can decide to use: (a) identical phase-leg topology, (b) different phase-leg topology. While the topology of each leg is still needed to be derived before the combination of them to form a converter, which means the proposed method should be carried out first to form the database of possible topologies of single-phase leg.

For example, if a four-leg converter for four-wire application is to be designed, either identical phase legs or different phase legs can be utilized. Such a hybrid combination of legs will result in various multi-phase topologies. There can be 16 possible solutions, e.g. 4 same legs, 3 same legs with 1 different leg, 2 same legs with 2 different leg, ... Assume four identical phase legs are utilized to form a converter towards four wire application. Next step is to choose a topology for each phase leg, e.g. 2-level phase leg. In this case, this derived converter is the conventional four-leg 2-level converter.

To summarize, derivation of phase-leg topology is needed to be completed before the multi-phase converter derivation process. This paper is intended to be focused on the phase-leg derivation since such work will lay the fundamentals of multi-phase scenarios.

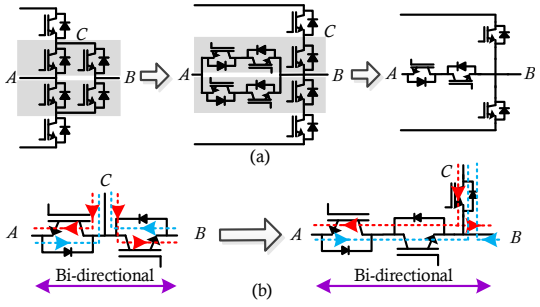


Figure 3-14 (a) Simplification of one type LS into T-type LS circuits. (b) The equivalent function between two switching circuits.

C. Commonly used level generators, level selectors of current-source MLCs

The basic LGs and LSs of current-source MLC are introduced in both circuit form and node-branch form in the following context.

Firstly, the circuit form of 1-input-*n*-output (1-to-*n*) current LG is shown in **Figure 3-15(a)**. This type of LG is normally expected as the general element of current-source MLCs, which can be found in [180]. Its node-branch diagram is shown in **Figure 3-15(b)**.

The associated level generator vector is expressed as follow:

$$\mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} L_n & L_{n-1} & \cdots & L_1 \end{bmatrix}^T. \tag{3-19}$$

The output current level, however, could be $2n+1$ for such LG, which is different from its voltage counterpart. Therefore, the level generator vector is normally expanded into the following the form:

$$\mathbf{L}' = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{L}^T & -\mathbf{L}^T \end{bmatrix}^T. \tag{3-20}$$

Each current loop is generated by the linked dc source which is named as I_{di} for *i*th dc source. In general, the dc sources can either be the outputs of dc-dc converters, or simply ideal current sources, or inductors buffered voltage from the front end. Similarly, in an LG, the sources are neglected while only loops remain. The loop must be labeled using the term LOOPi or Li to indicate the current loop information.

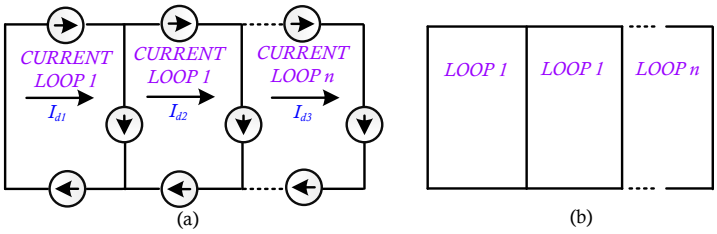


Figure 3-15 1-to-n level generator for current-source MLC. (a) Circuit form. (b) Node-branch diagram.

Secondly, the circuit form of a type of *n*-input-1-output (*n*-to-1) current LS is shown in **Figure 3-16(a)**. This type of LS is composed of parallel connected full bridges [81], [169]. Node-branch diagram of *n*-to-(*n*-1) LS is shown in **Figure 3-16(b)**. Each full bridge has a two-terminal input port and a two-terminal output port, which are expected to be linked with either LG or LS with compatible terminals. The associated level selector matrix is written as follow:

$$\mathbf{S} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{n1} & S_{(n-1)1} & \cdots & S_{11} \\ S_{n2} & S_{(n-1)2} & \cdots & S_{12} \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-21}$$

An alternative circuit form of n-input-1-output (n-to-1) current LS is shown in **Figure 3-17(a)**, with the node-branch diagram shown in **Figure 3-17(b)**. This type of LS is basically the combination of n half bridges and a full bridge [169].

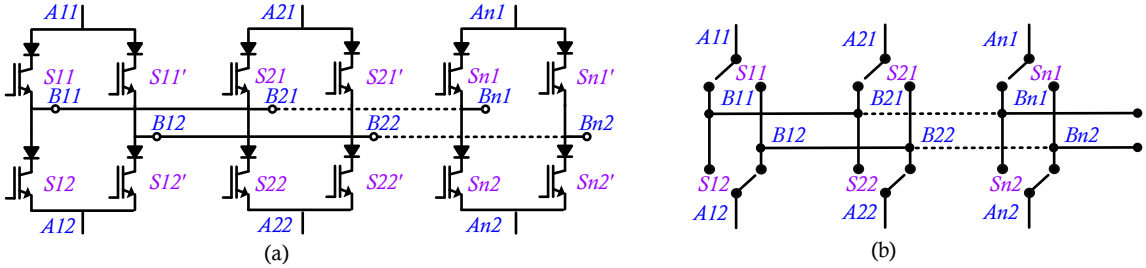


Figure 3-16 n-to-1 level selector for current-source MLC. (a) Circuit form. (b) Node-branch diagram.

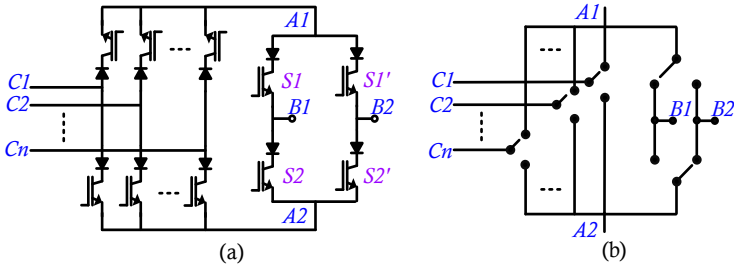


Figure 3-17 n-to-1 level selector for current-source MLC. (a) Circuit form. (b) Node-branch diagram.

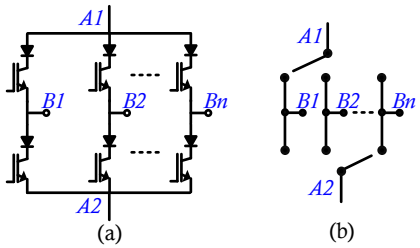


Figure 3-18 1-to-n level selector for current-source MLC. (a) Circuit form. (b) Node-branch diagram.

Thirdly, the circuit form of 1-input-n-output (1-to-n) current LS is shown in **Figure 3-18(a)**, with the node-branch diagram shown in **Figure 3-18(b)**. The associated level selector matrix is written as follow:

$$\mathbf{S}=\begin{bmatrix} s_{1n} & s_{1(n-1)} & \cdots & s_{11} \\ s'_{1n} & s'_{1(n-1)} & \cdots & s'_{11} \end{bmatrix}^{T}. \tag{3-22}$$

When n=3, this type of LS is a three-phase bridge of current-source converter, which is very common in practical application.

3.2. Synthesis of voltage-source and current-source multi-level converters

Based on the concept of the ***stage***, the unified method of synthesis and deduction for various multilevel topologies is proposed and summarized as in **Figure 3-19**.

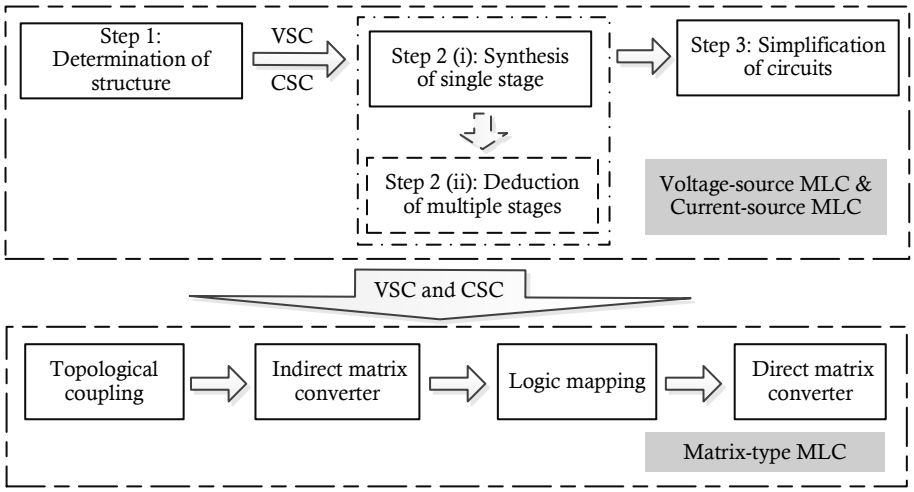


Figure 3-19 The unified method of synthesis and derivation of MLCs.

The first step is to determine the structure of MLC topology, i.e. voltage-source type, current-source type. As for voltage-source MLC, one needs to choose the structure and the number of output levels which is N_V for the required topology to be generated. The following two situations are considered: (i) single-stage structure, (ii) multiple-stage structure. For the desired single-stage voltage-source MLC, the number of output levels of the desired stage is N_V, which means a 1-to-N_V LG and an N_V-to-1 LS are needed.

Once the structure is determined, each stage can be considered based on the concept of LG and LS. If the multiple-stage topology is desired, one can determine how a variety of single-stage structures reasonably form a complete voltage-source MLC in accordance with the proposed principles (details will be presented in the next sections). At last, through the proposed circuit simplification principles, one can get various modified topologies. The details will be presented in from **section 3.2.1** to **3.2.3**.

The proposed methodology is also valid for current-source MLC. The structure determination is slightly different from voltage-source MLC due to the indirect relationship between desired current levels and current loops:

$$N_C = f\left(N_C'\right), \tag{3-23}$$

in which, N_C is the desired count of current levels, N_C' is the corresponding count of current loops.

Normally, the function is expected as follow:

$$N_C = 2 \times N_C' + 1. \tag{3-24}$$

Both single-stage structure and multiple-stage structure of current-source MLCs are considered. For the desired single-stage current-source MLC, the number of output levels of the layer is N_C, which means a 1-to-N'_C LG and an N'_C-to-1 LS are needed. For arbitrary current-source MLC structures with more than one stage, it is more straightforward to determine the levels of each stage than voltage-source MLC. When increasing the stage number, the parallel structure can be used [181]. The superposition principle of the paralleled current outputs of each stage ensures that the output current levels meet the requirements. For the simplest case, one can connect identical N'_C stages in parallel (only a single loop is generated in each one) to form a current-source MLC with N_C output current levels as shown in **Figure 3-7** (N'_C=3). More details will be presented in following sections.

As for matrix type MLC, the derived current-source stage and voltage-source stage will be merged into indirect matrix converters (IMC) through the concept of virtual DC link. And then the logic mapping will be carried out to convert IMC into associated direct matrix converters (DMC). The details will be presented in **section 3.3**.

In general, the unified method can facilitate the design process. For example, if we want to find out an optimal topology for application requirement set {*R*}, the conventional method will easily result in repetitive derivation loops. The existing topologies forms a "topology database" set {*T*}={$T_1 \cup T_2$} where subset {T_1} satisfies {R}, while subset {T_2} does not. If the new topology set {*N*} can be derived and added into the set {*T*} to form a new database set {*NT*}={$N \cup T$}, then, we can verify if optimal topology $o \in \{N\} \subset \{NT\}$. In a conventional way, we can only add a set {*NT*} with a small number of topologies due to the lack of systematic derivation approach. Once $o \in \{N\} \subset \{NT\}$ is not satisfied, the whole process will have to go through again. Alternatively, if the derivation approach covers as many topologies as possible, we will have a set {*NT*} as large as possible. Such that, the possibility of finding $o \in \{N\} \subset \{NT\}$ is increased and the unnecessary iterative process is avoided.

3.2.1 Single-stage synthesis

A. Basic principles of general synthesis process

Principle 1.1: ***Nodes*** can be inserted into the same voltage level/current loop.

The inserted nodes do not change the structure and operation of the stage as shown in **Figure 3-20(a)** and **Figure 3-21(a)**. The corresponding synthesis processes are shown in **Figure 3-20(b)** and **Figure 3-21(b)** respectively. The branches with the inserted node are equivalent to wires in series if it is the lumped parameter circuit.

Principle 1.2: Branches of the same voltage level/current loop can be split into multiple ones.

The split branches can change both the structure and operation of the stage, but the output is equivalent as shown in **Figure 3-22** and **Figure 3-24**. Based on principle 2, there are seven possible synthesis results in total which are associated with seven possible topologies (see **Figure 3-23**). While **Figure 3-22(a)** shows one possible synthesis process from 3L T-type to NPC topology. **Figure 3-22(b)** is the corresponding node-branch form of **Figure 3-22(a)**.

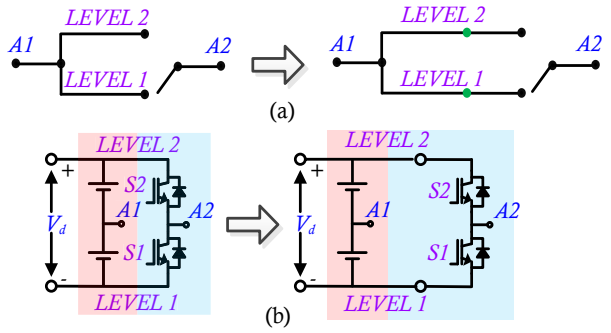


Figure 3-20 The process of node insertion for the voltage-source circuit. (a) Node-branch form. (b) Circuit form.

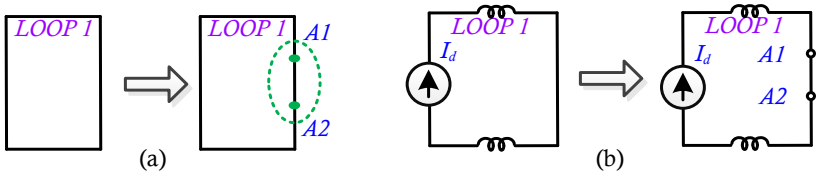


Figure 3-21 The process of node insertion for the current-source circuit. (a) Node-branch form. (b) Circuit form.

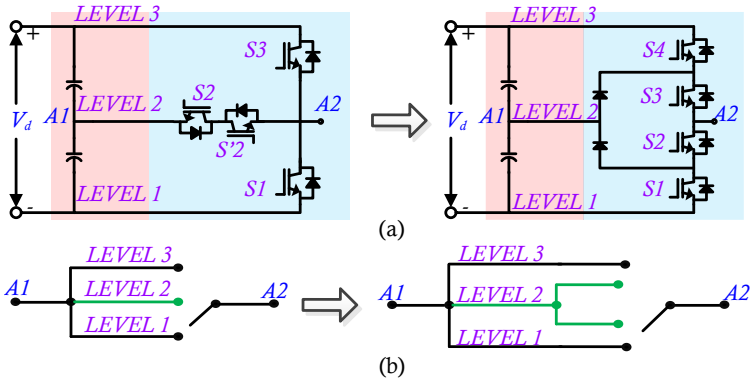


Figure 3-22 The process of branch split for the voltage-source circuit. (a) Node-branch form. (b) Circuit form.

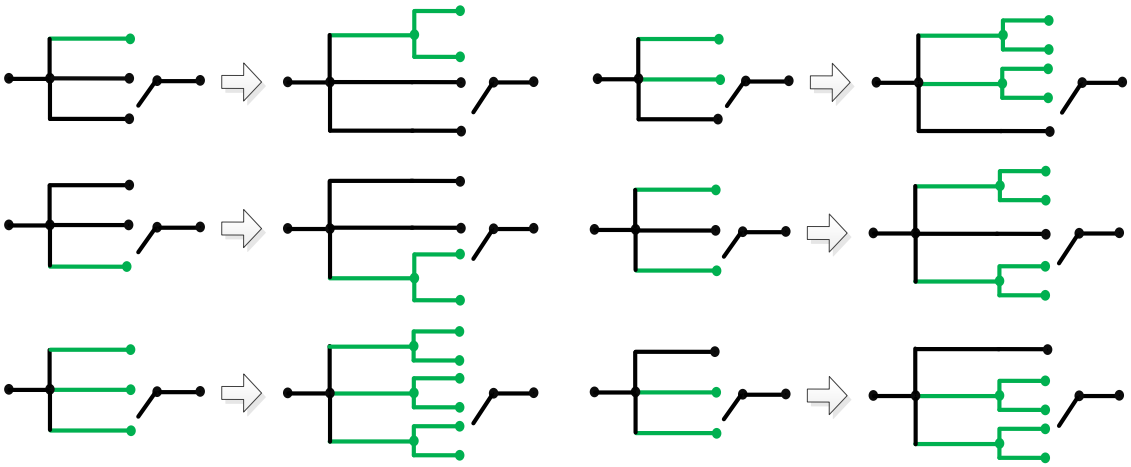


Figure 3-23 Other possible synthesis results.

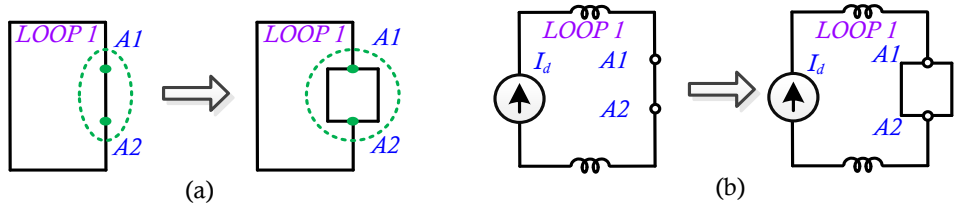


Figure 3-24 The process of branch split for the current-source circuit. (a) Node-branch form. (b) Circuit form.

Principle 1.3: Circuit composed of insert nodes and split branches based on Principle 1 and 2 can be expanded into level generators and/or level selectors with consistent terminals and compatible polarity.

After the process of node insertion and branch split, the expanded circuit changes both the structure and operation of the original stage and forms a new one as shown in **Figure 3-25** and **Figure 23-26**. Theoretically, circuits with any count of terminals can be synthesized based on Principle 1.1 and 1.2, which will lead to the synthesis of any single stage topologies.

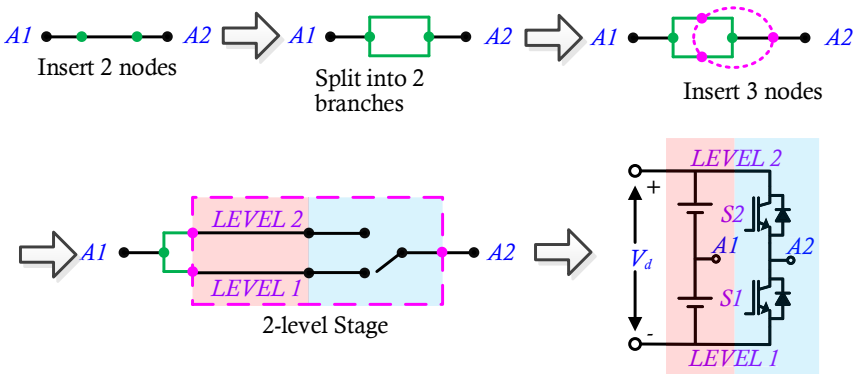


Figure 3-25 The process of circuit expansion for the voltage-source converter.

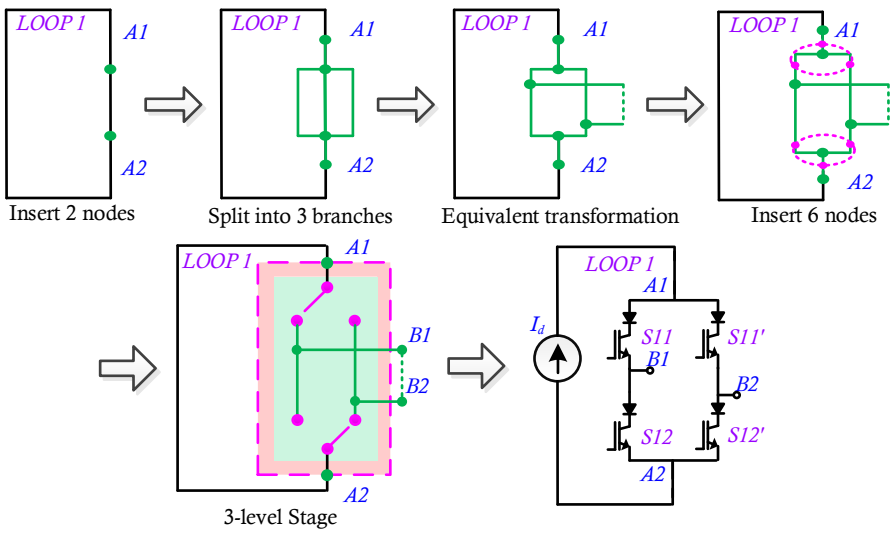


Figure 3-26 The process of circuit expansion for the current-source converter.

B. Synthesis flow chart

The synthesis procedure of a single-stage circuit is summarized in **Figure 27**. One can arbitrarily select the desired level number and input/output terminal number, and utilize the commonly used level generators, level selectors of MLCs to develop a large number of stage topologies.

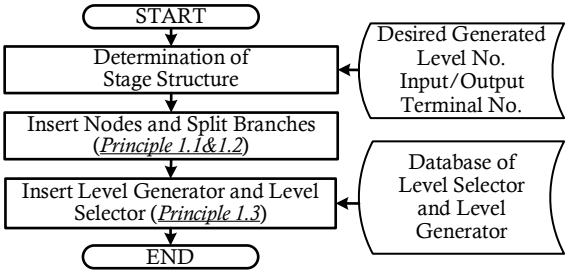


Figure 3-27 The synthesis procedure of a single-stage circuit.

C. Demonstration examples

To provide a clear understanding of the proposed principles of synthesis of single stage, a few examples using existing multilevel topologies are presented here.

Stage synthesis Example 1: The circuit form of 3L T-NPC stage is shown in **Figure 3-28(a)**. Firstly, to synthesize it, two nodes are inserted into a branch with terminals named A1, A2. Then, the branch joining two inserted nodes is split into three. Thirdly, four nodes (highlight in pink color) are inserted to form a circuit with four terminals as shown in **Figure 3-28(b)**. Last, the circuit is expanded into a combination of 3-to-3 LG and 3-to-1 LS, which is the node-branch form of 3L T-type stage. The matrix representation is:

$$V_{A2A1} = \begin{bmatrix} s_3 & s_2 s_2' & s_1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_3 & L_2 & L_1 \end{bmatrix}^T . \tag{3-25}$$

Stage synthesis Example 2: The circuit form of 4-level (4L) ANPC stage with six switches is shown in **Figure 3-29(a)** [182]. The synthesis process is shown in **Figure 3-29(b)**.

Once two nodes are inserted into each branch of the 2-to-1 LS, the following process of each branch is just the repeat of **Figure 3-25**. The matrix representation is:

$$V_{A2A1} = \begin{bmatrix} s_2 & s_1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_{12} & s_{11} & & \\ & & s_{22} & s_{21} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_4 & L_3 & L_2 & L_1 \end{bmatrix}^T \tag{3-26}$$

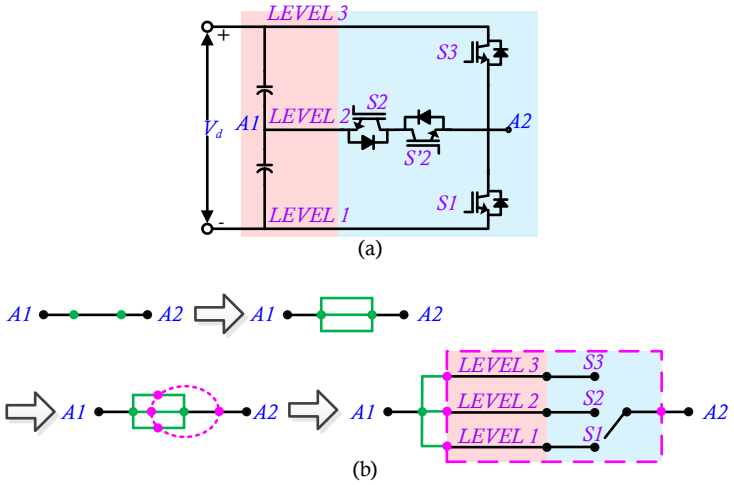


Figure 3-28 3L T-type stage. (a) Circuit form. (b) Synthesis process in node-branch form.

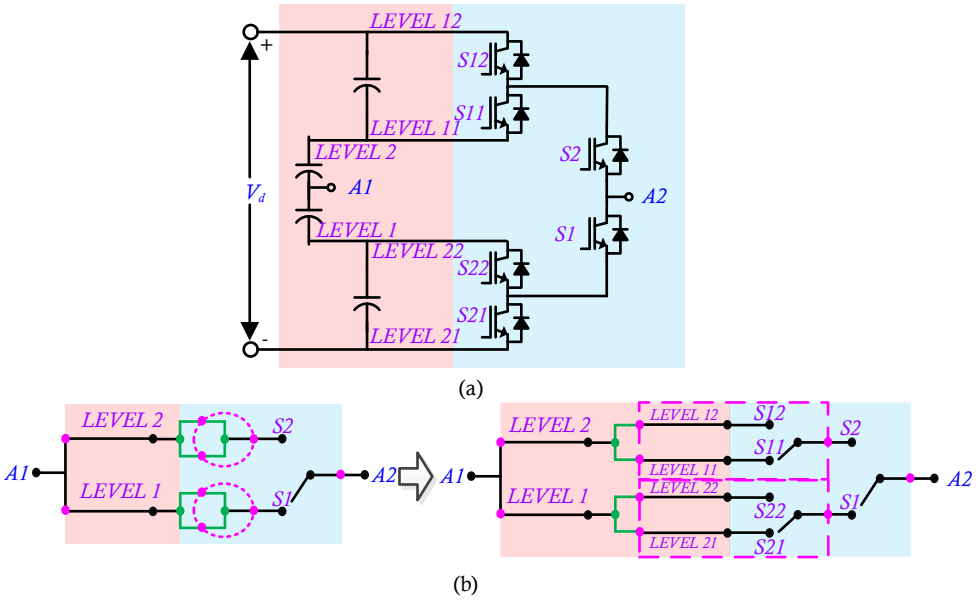


Figure 3-29 4L ANPC stage with six switches. (a) Circuit form. (b) Synthesis process in node-branch form.

Stage synthesis Example 3: The circuit form of 5L single-rating inductor current-source MLC stage with eight switches is shown in **Figure 3-30(a)** [169]. The synthesis process is shown in **Figure 3-30(b)**. The inserted four nodes are firstly split into four branches, then, 2-to-1 LS for current-source MLC is used to form the final topology. The same process can also be carried out for 5L multi-rating inductor current-source MLC stage in **Figure 3-31** as they share the same node-branch figures and matrix representation. The matrix representation is:

$$I_o = \begin{bmatrix} s_{11} & s_{12} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_1 \\ -L_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} s_{21} & s_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_2 \\ -L_2 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-27}$$

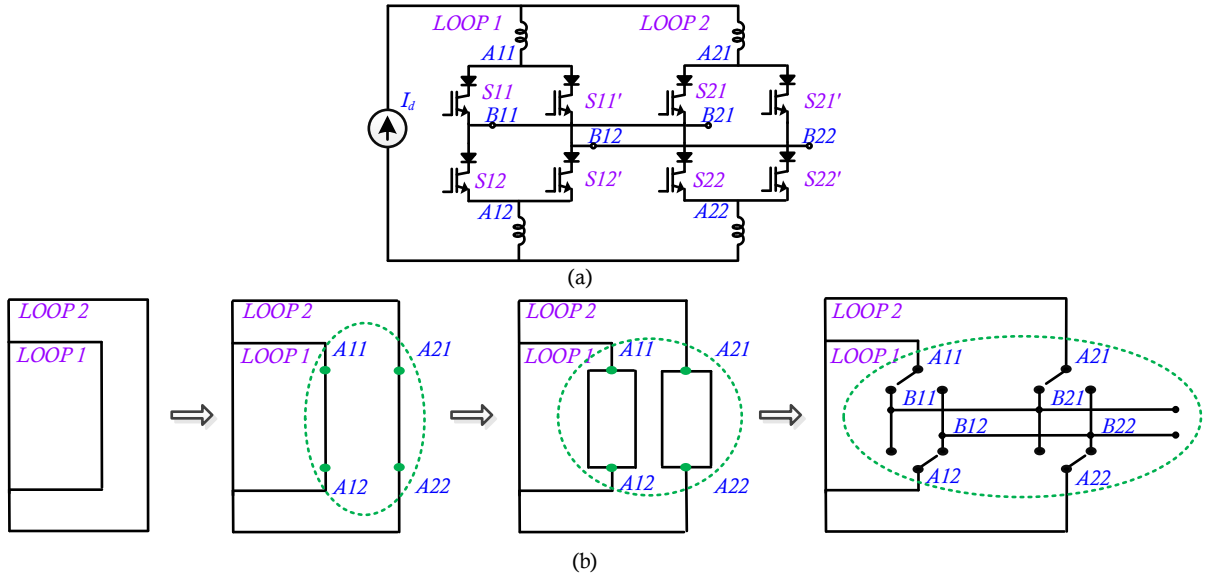


Figure 3-30 5L single-rating inductor current-source MLC stage. (a) Circuit form. (b) Synthesis process in node-branch form.

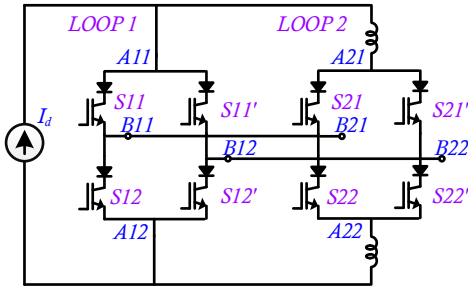


Figure 3-31 5L multi-rating inductor current-source MLC stage.

3.2.2 Multiple-stage synthesis

A. Concepts of base stage and extended stage

Two concepts are introduced here for the general derivation process: (a) Base stage is chosen as the stage that is directly linked with power sources in a topology. (b) The extended stage is the stage that is used to extend the number of voltage/current levels in a topology.

For example, a shared dc-link MLC has normally only one isolated source (or potentially several non-isolated sources) and can have several extended stages but only one base stage.

B. Basic principles of the general derivation process

Principle 2.1: Stages for voltage-source MLC with a consistent number of terminals can be docked with each other.

Figure 3-32 shows three stages with different terminals waiting to be derived into a voltage-source MLC. The matrix representations are:

$$\begin{bmatrix} V_{L12} \\ V_{L11} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{14} & s_{12} \\ & s_{13} & s_{11} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} V_{o13} \\ V_{o12} \\ V_{o11} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} V_{o22} \\ V_{o21} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{24} & s_{22} \\ & s_{23} & s_{21} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} V_{L23} \\ V_{L22} \\ V_{L21} \end{bmatrix}, \quad V_{A2} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{32} & s_{31} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} V_{L32} \\ V_{L31} \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3-28}$$

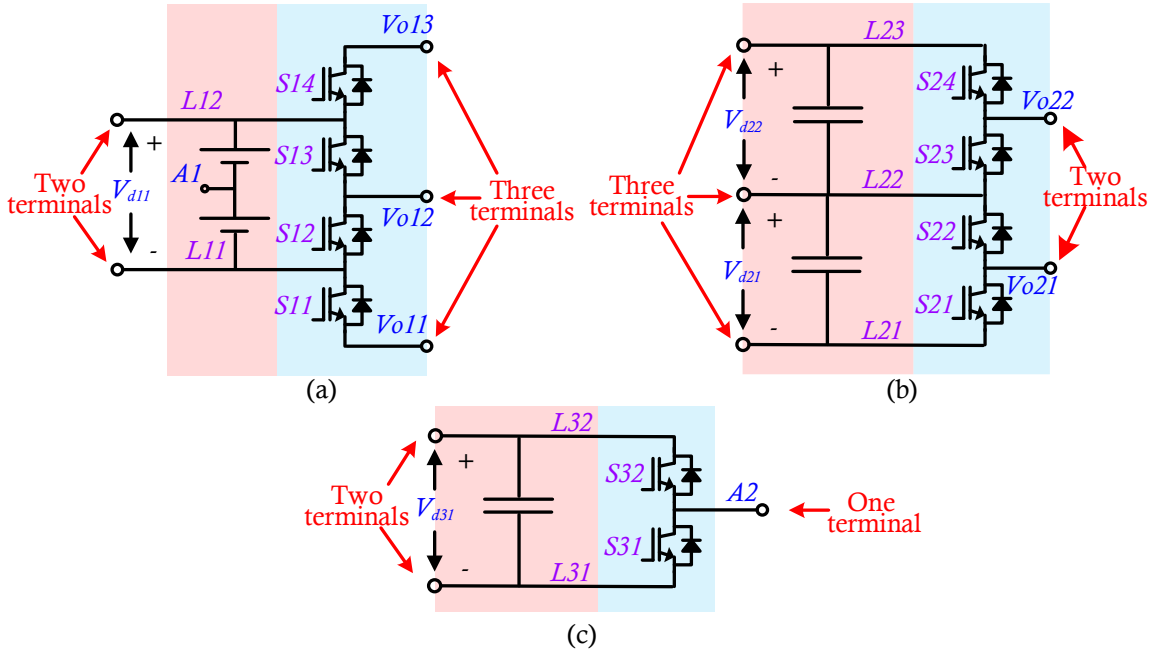


Figure 3-32 Stand-alone stages. (a) 2-to-3 stage. (b) 3-to-2 stage. (c) 2-to-1 stage.

It is obvious that **(a)~(c)** can be easily docked with each other to form a 3L bridge as shown in **Figure 3-33**. One can choose a 2-to-3 stage in **Figure 3-32(a)** as the base stage. Therefore, the voltage of the dc power supply can be doubled, which means that it has voltage step-up capability. The matrix representation of output voltage is shown as follow:

$$V_{A2} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{32} & s_{31} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_{14} & s_{12} & \\ & s_{13} & s_{11} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} V_{o13} & V_{o12} & V_{o11} \end{bmatrix}^T . \tag{3-29}$$

while $\begin{bmatrix} V_{o13} & V_{o12} & V_{o11} \end{bmatrix}^T$ can be solved by the following equation:

$$\begin{bmatrix} V_{o13} & V_{o12} & V_{o11} \end{bmatrix}^T = \mathbf{A}^{(1)} \begin{bmatrix} V_{L12} \\ V_{L11} \end{bmatrix} + \left(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}^{(1)} \mathbf{A} \right) \mathbf{Y} , \tag{3-30}$$

where $\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{14} & s_{12} & \\ & s_{13} & s_{11} \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{Y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \end{bmatrix}^T$ $\mathbf{Y}$ is arbitrarily selected, $\mathbf{A}^{(1)}$ is the {1}-inverse of $\mathbf{A}$ [63].

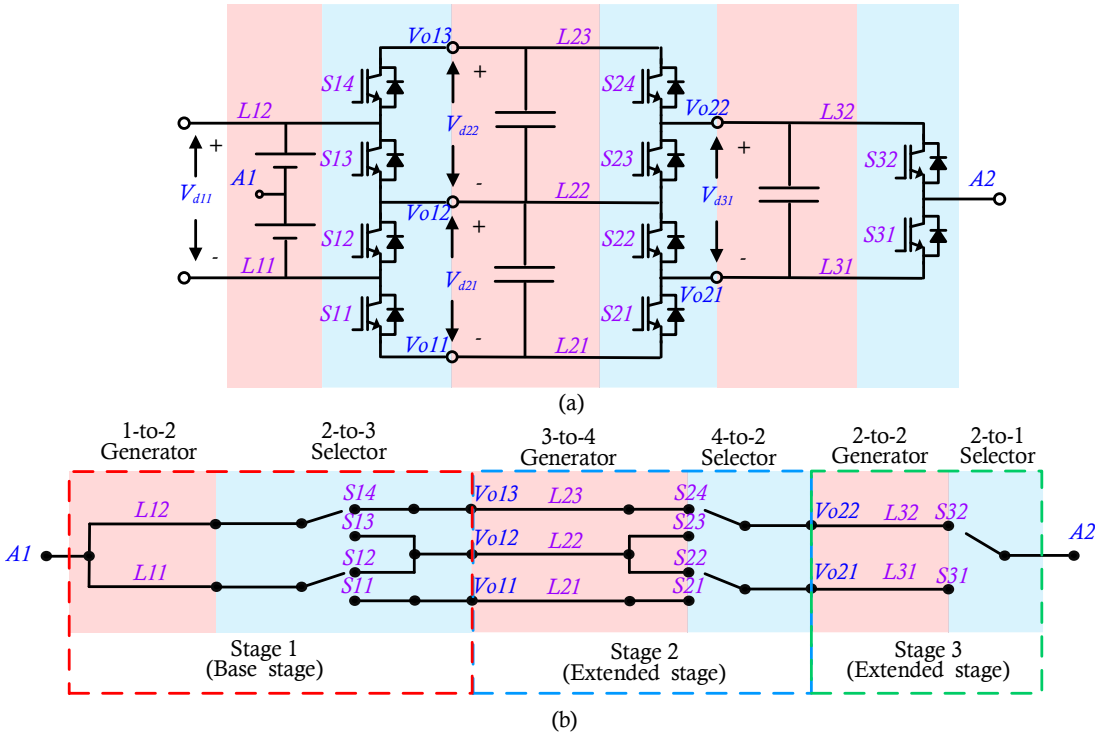


Figure 3-33 3L bridge. (a) Circuit form. (b) Node-branch form.

Principle 2.2: Stages for current-source MLC with a consistent number of terminals can be connected in parallel.

Figure 3-34 shows two stand-alone stages with 3L current outputs. One can easily connect these two stages to form a 5L current-source MLC as shown in **Figure 3-35**, which can be considered as the counterpart of voltage-source MLC with cascaded H-bridge building blocks (HBBBs) [64-65]. The matrix representation is the same as single-rating inductor current-source MLC shown in **Figure 3-31**.

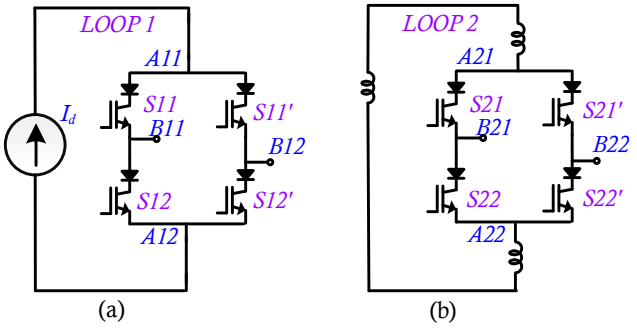


Figure 3-34 Stand-alone stages. (a) 1-to-2 stage. (b) 1-to-2 stage.

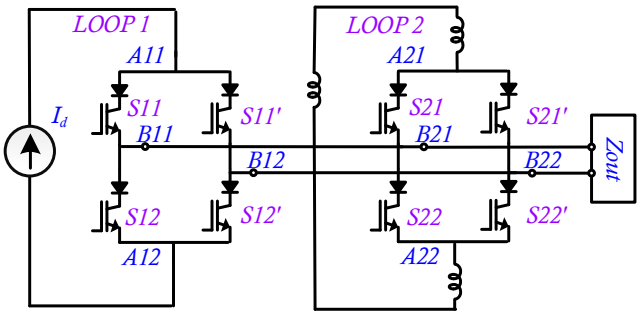


Figure 3-35 5L current-source MLC.

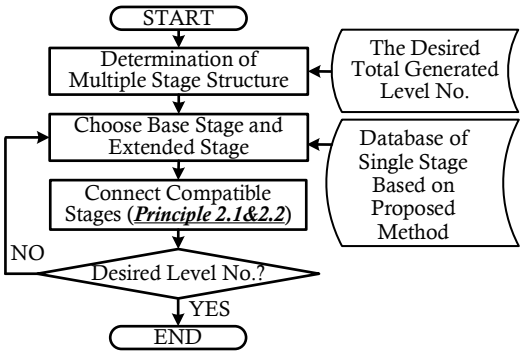


Figure 3-36 The derivation procedure of a multiple stage circuit.

C. Derivation flow chart

The derivation process of the circuit with multiple stages is summarized in **Figure 3-36**. One can arbitrarily select the desired number of total generated levels and choose a base stage and extended stage from the database of a single stage generated as presented in **section 3.2.1** to form the multi-stage circuits. The deduction principles can be considered as the extension of topology conformation principles proposed in [29], while the similar modularization is also addressed in the derivation process.

D. Demonstration examples

To provide a clear understanding of the principles of multiple stage deduction, an example is presented here.

Multiple Stage Derivation Example: The topology of the hybrid clamped 3L converter is shown in **Figure 3-37 (a)** with its derivation shown in **Figure 3-37 (b)**. To form a 3L circuit with multiple stages, one can choose different combinations of single stages. For instance, if three stages shown in **Figure3-32** are the only available stages, then one can select a 3-to-2 3L stage (**Figure 3-32(b)**) and a 2L stage (**Figure 3-32(c)**). Note that two terminals of the 3L stage are omitted and the 2L stage is chosen as the base stage (parallel capacitor is omitted). The equivalent voltage of the formed circuit is doubled, so this topology can overcome the inherent step-down feature of voltage converters, which could be suitable for the low-voltage application. The switching states, various PWM strategies, operation principles, and output waveforms for hybrid clamped 3L converter can be found in [183] thus will not be repeated in this paper.

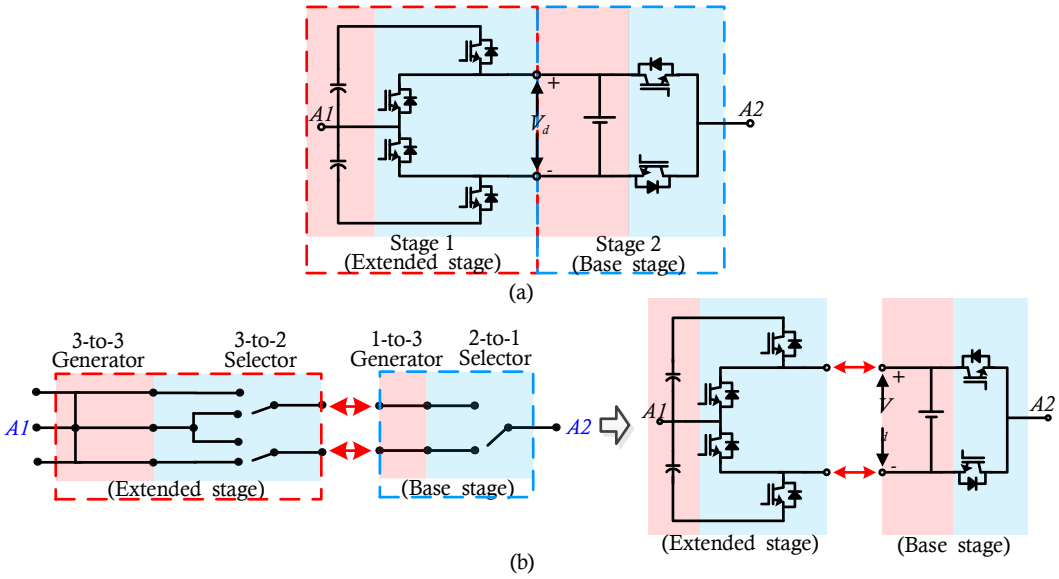


Figure 3-37 (a) Single phase leg topology of hybrid clamped 3-level converter, (b) derivation of the hybrid clamped 3-level converter.

3.2.3 Simplifications

After the initial topology obtained by previous steps, its internal redundant parts need to be identified before the process of simplification. The redundant circuit is normally symmetrical and functionally repetitive and can be identified from two perspectives: (1) structure, (2) function. One of the most straightforward approaches is to focus on whether the operation of a symmetric circuit with certain modulation schemes has redundant states in its switching table. This task can

easily become cumbersome and unorderly when the level increases. However, with the proposed method, the matrix representations are established to facilitate the simplification process in this section. The equivalence between the original and simplified topologies can also be demonstrated through mathematical operations.

Principle 3.1: Redundant circuits located between several interconnected stages can be simplified without changing the output level range.

Figure 3-38 shows the simplification process of a 9-level (9L) converter proposed in [184]. Two circuits are identified as redundant circuits by red dotted lines and then simplified into the bottom topology of **Figure 3-38(b)**.

Assume intermediate variables V_{oX1}, V_{oX2}, V_{oY1}, V_{oY2} in original topology (see labels in **Figure 3-38**), then, the following two equations can be written:

$$V_{A2} = \mathbf{S}_3 \mathbf{V}_{XY2} \tag{3-31}$$

where $\mathbf{S}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} s_{36} & s_{35} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{V}_{XY2} = \begin{bmatrix} V_{oX2} & V_{oY2} \end{bmatrix}^T$,

and

$$\mathbf{V}_{XY2} = \mathbf{S}_2 \mathbf{V}_{XY1} \tag{3-32}$$

where $\mathbf{V}_{XY2}$, $\mathbf{S}_2$, and $\mathbf{V}_{XY1}$ can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{S}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{21} & \mathbf{O} \\ \mathbf{O} & \mathbf{S}_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{21} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{28}s_{34} & s_{28}s_{33} & s_{27}s_{34} & s_{27}s_{33} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{22} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{26}s_{32} & s_{26}s_{31} & s_{25}s_{32} & s_{25}s_{31} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{XY1} = \begin{bmatrix} V_{oX1} & V_{oX1} & V_{oX1} & V_{oX1} & V_{oY1} & V_{oY1} & V_{oY1} & V_{oY1} \end{bmatrix}^T$$

$$+ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -V_{d32} & V_{d32} & 0 & 0 & -V_{d31} & V_{d31} & 0 \end{bmatrix}^T.$$

(3-31) shows that the terminal output voltage of the 9L converter before simplification is determined by both the output voltage of redundant circuits and the associated LS. While the (3-32) means the voltage of redundant circuits are determined by their input voltages and the associated LS.

Assume the switching states of each pair of (S_{28}, S_{26}), (S_{27}, S_{25}), (S_{34}, S_{32}), (S_{33}, S_{31}) are identical, and V_{d32}=0, (3-31) and (3-32) can be simplified into:

$$V_{A2} = \mathbf{S}_{22} \mathbf{V}'_{XY1} \tag{3-33}$$

where

$$\mathbf{V}'_{XY1} = \left[\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{V}''_{XY1} & \mathbf{V}''_{XY1} & \mathbf{V}''_{XY1} & \mathbf{V}''_{XY1} \end{bmatrix}^T \begin{bmatrix} s_{36} & s_{35} \end{bmatrix}^T + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -V_{d31} & V_{d31} & 0 \end{bmatrix}^T \right],$$

$$\mathbf{V}''_{XY1} = \begin{bmatrix} V_{oX1} & V_{oY1} \end{bmatrix}.$$

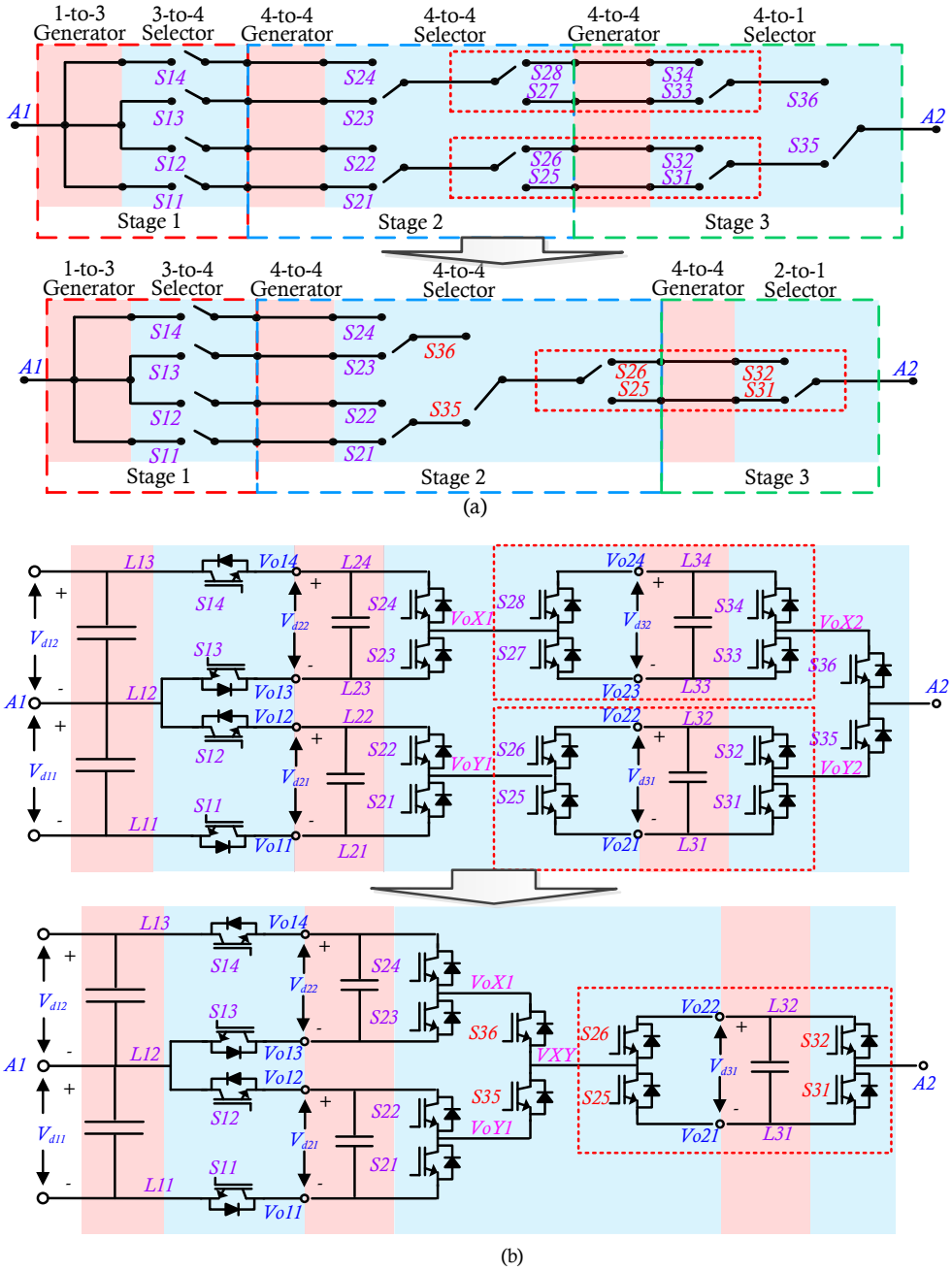


Figure 3-38 Simplification process of a 9L converter. (a) Node-branch form. (b) Circuit form.

As (3-33) indicates, the position of the level selector (S_{36}, S_{35}) and redundant circuits can be exchanged when the above assumption is satisfied. The resulting structure of matrix representation will not affect the terminal output voltages V_{A2}. Since the intermediate variable $\mathbf{V}''_{XY1}$ can be expressed based on the virtual input voltage V_{XY}, (30) can be further simplified using $V_{XY} = \mathbf{S}_3 \mathbf{V}''_{XY1}$, then, the simplified structure can be expressed as:

$$V_{A2} = \mathbf{S}_{22}\mathbf{V}_{XY} \tag{3-34}$$

where

$$\mathbf{V}_{XY} = \left[\begin{bmatrix} V_{XY} & V_{XY} & V_{XY} & V_{XY} \end{bmatrix}^T + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -V_{d31} & V_{d31} & 0 \end{bmatrix}^T\right].$$

As such, according to the simplified matrix representation, only one H-bridge is necessary for this topology and the whole circuit can be simplified into bottom topology form as shown in **Figure 38**. Since the matrix representation demonstrates the fundamental operating principles of the circuit, one can utilize the (3-33) to control the simplified topology and develop associated modulation schemes.

Figure 3-39 shows the simplification process of a 5L converter analyzed in [80]. Three circuits are identified as redundant circuits by red dotted lines and then simplified into the bottom topology of **Figure 3-39(b)**.

The matrix representation of the 1st stage is:

$$\mathbf{V}_1 = \mathbf{S}_1\mathbf{L} \tag{3-35}$$

where

$$\mathbf{V}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} V_{o14} & V_{o13} & V_{o12} & V_{o11} \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$\mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} L_{13} & L_{12} & L_{12} & L_{11} \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$\mathbf{S}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{11} & \mathbf{O} \\ \mathbf{O} & \mathbf{S}_{12} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{11} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{14} & \\ & s_{13} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{12} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{12} & \\ & s_{11} \end{bmatrix}.$$

The matrix representation of the 2nd stage is:

$$\mathbf{V}_2 = \mathbf{S}_2\mathbf{V}_1' \tag{3-36}$$

where

$$\mathbf{V}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} V_{o22} & V_{o21} \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$\mathbf{S}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} s_{26} & \\ & s_{25} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{21} & \mathbf{O} \\ \mathbf{O} & \mathbf{S}_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{21} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{14}s_{24} & s_{14}s_{23} & s_{13}s_{24} & s_{13}s_{23} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{22} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{12}s_{22} & s_{12}s_{21} & s_{11}s_{22} & s_{11}s_{21} \end{bmatrix}.$$

$\mathbf{V}_1' = \left[\mathbf{P}_1\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{V}_1^T & \mathbf{V}_1^T \end{bmatrix}^T + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -V_{d22} & V_{d22} & 0 & -V_{d21} & 0 & V_{d21} & 0 \end{bmatrix}^T\right]$, $\mathbf{P}_1$ is an 8*8 reversible matrix.

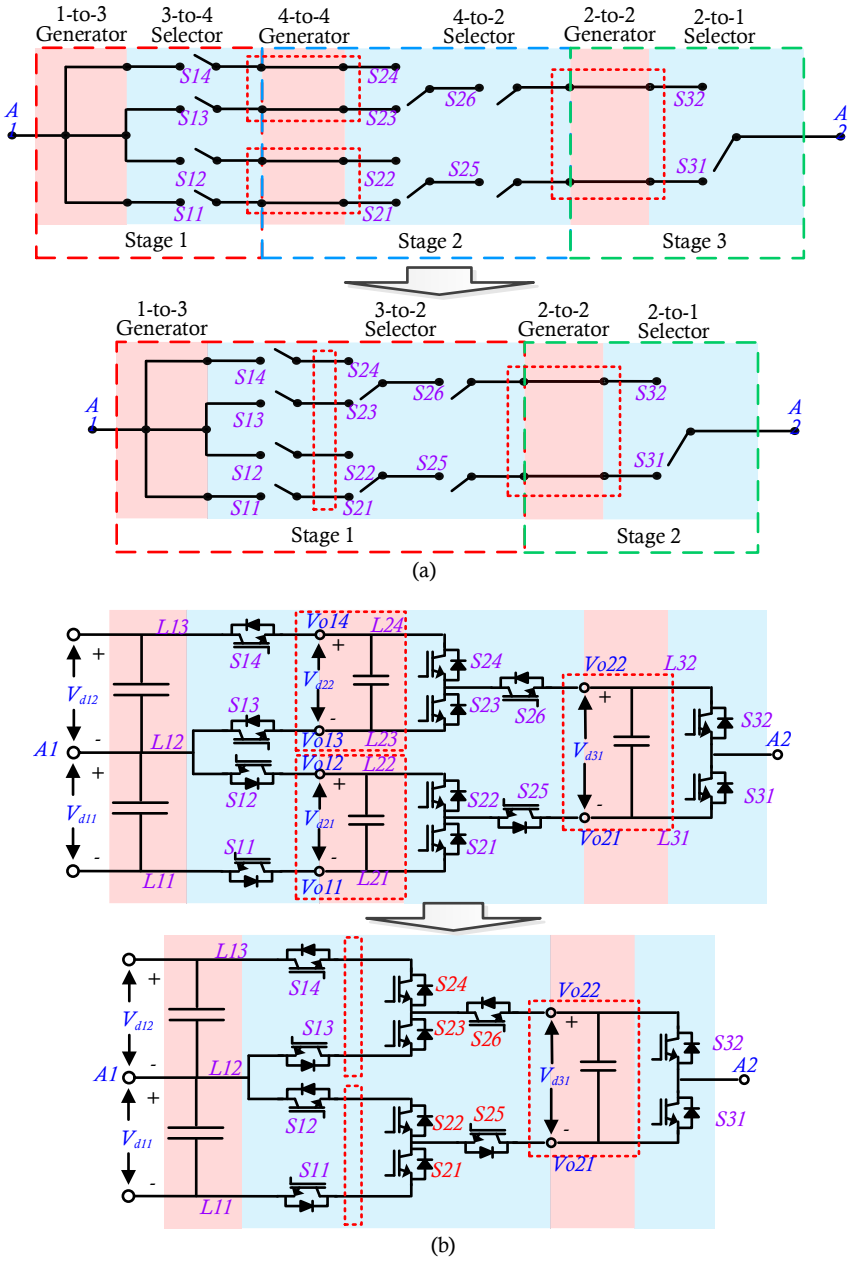


Figure 3-39 Simplification process of a 5L converter. (a) Node-branch form. (b) Circuit form.

If $V_{d21}=V_{d22}=V_{d31}=0.5V_{d11}=0.5V_{d12}$, then, the simplified structure can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{V}_2 = \mathbf{S}'_2\mathbf{V}_1 \tag{3-37}$$

where

$$\mathbf{S}'_2 = \begin{bmatrix} s_{26} & \\ & s_{25} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}'_{21} & \mathbf{O}' \\ \mathbf{O}' & \mathbf{S}'_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}'_{21} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{14}s_{24} & s_{13}s_{23} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}'_{22} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{12}s_{22} & s_{11}s_{21} \end{bmatrix}.$$

While the 3rd stage is maintained the same:

$$V_{A2} = \mathbf{S}_3 \mathbf{V}_2' \tag{3-38}$$

where $\mathbf{S}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} s_{26}s_{32} & s_{26}s_{31} & s_{25}s_{32} & s_{25}s_{31} \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{V}_2' = \left[\mathbf{P}_2 \left[\mathbf{V}_2^T \quad \mathbf{V}_2^T \right]^T + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -V_{d31} & V_{d31} & 0 \end{bmatrix}^T \right]$, $\mathbf{P}_2$ is a 4*4 reversible matrix.

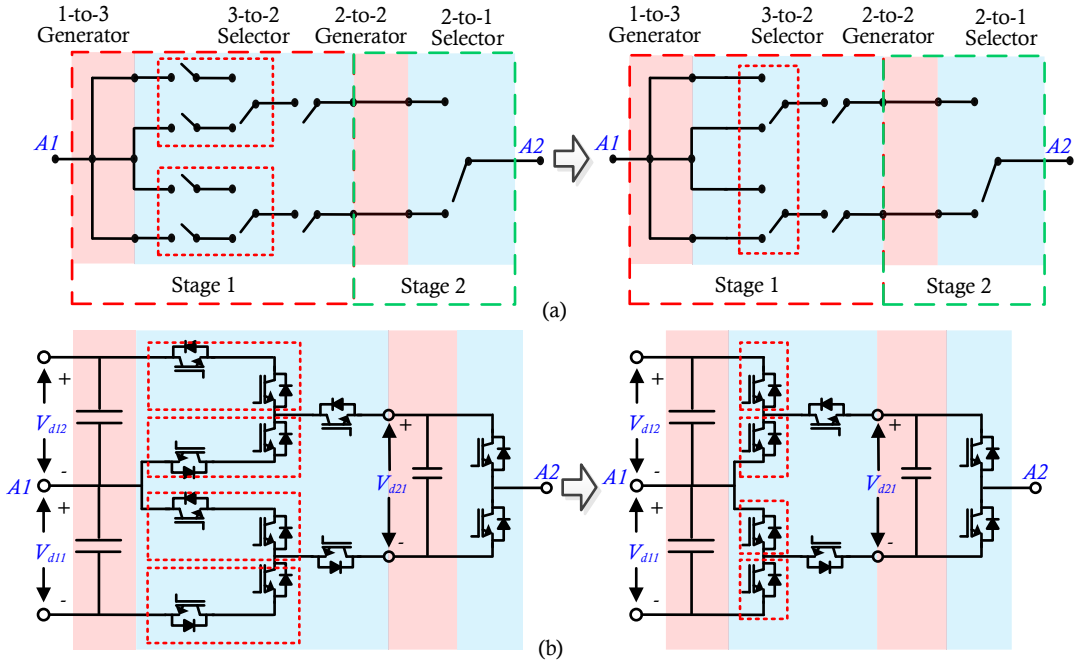


Figure 3-40 Simplification process of a 5L converter. (a) Node-branch form. (b) Circuit form.

Principle 3.2: Redundant circuits within one stage can be simplified without changing the inter-stage properties.

Figure 3-40 shows the simplification process of a 5L converter proposed in [185]. Redundant circuits are identified by red dotted lines and then simplified into right-hand topology.

Inference 1: A pair of neighboring LG and LS (or we call it a stage in a general way) that does not increase the output voltage/current levels can be simplified into neighboring stages.

Inference 2: Circuits with the same function can be exchanged with each other without changing the input-output relationship of the substituted area.

Figure 3-41 shows that two circuits have the same three-pole switching function [186]. While **Figure 3-42** shows that existing eight-switch 5L ANPC converter is functionally equivalent to seven-switch 5L ANPC converter if the three-pole switch is substituted [187]. The matrix representations remain the same.

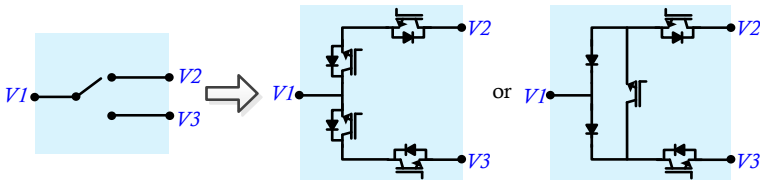


Figure 3-41 Circuits with same three-pole switching function.

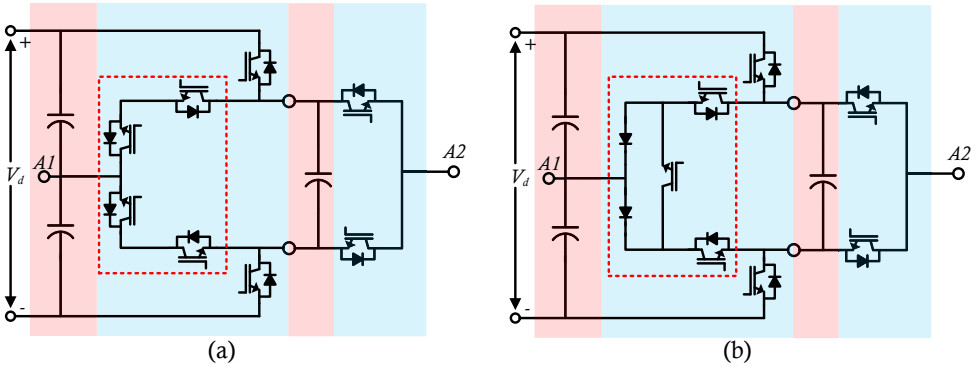


Figure 3-42 (a) Eight-switch 5L ANPC converter. (b) Seven-switch 5L ANPC converter.

3.3. Generalization

3.3.1 Matrix-type multilevel converters

In addition to voltage-source and current-source converters, both direct matrix converter (DMC) and indirect matrix converter (IMC) (shown in **Figure 3-43)** have been studied for decades due to the attractive features such as: minimization of dc energy storage components, improved compactness, direct ac-to-ac conversion with controllable input power factor and output frequency [188]. To improve the output waveform quality, the multilevel converter concept has been applied to DMCs and IMCs [189]. However, one can hardly derive multilevel matrix converters based on the conventional methods due to the topological difference from voltage-source and current-source MLCs.

A. Topological relationship between matrix converter and voltage/current-source converter

The logic mapping relationship between DMCs and IMCs is briefly reviewed based on Matrix Converter Theory [190], [191]. For a 2L DMC and IMC, the switching logic is straightforward as shown in (3-39) and (3-40), where **S** is the switching function matrix of DMC (see **Figure 3-43(a)**), while the $\mathbf{S}_{inv}$ and $\mathbf{S}_{rect}$ are switching function matrix of inverter part (S1-S3, S1'-S3') and rectifier part (S4-S6, S4'-S6') in IMC (see **Figure 3-43(b)**) respectively.

$$\mathbf{V}_{inv} = \mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}_{rect},\ \mathbf{I}_{rect} = \mathbf{S}^T\mathbf{I}_{inv}, \tag{3-39}$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}_{inv}\mathbf{S}_{rect}, \tag{3-40}$$

where

$$\mathbf{S} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{11} & s_{12} & s_{13} \\ s_{21} & s_{22} & s_{23} \\ s_{31} & s_{32} & s_{33} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{inv} = \begin{bmatrix} s_4 & s_4' \\ s_5 & s_5' \\ s_6 & s_6' \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{rect} = \begin{bmatrix} s_1 & s_2 & s_3 \\ s_1' & s_2' & s_3' \end{bmatrix},$$

The gating signal of every single switch in DMC can be generated by combining signals of associated switches in IMC. For example, to drive s_{11}, one can use signals of the first leg switches of inverter part and rectifier part in IMC which are denoted as vectors $\mathbf{A}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_1$ as shown in (3-41), respectively. The same generation process can also be carried out for s_{12} as shown in (3-42). In such a way, a DMC can be considered as a virtual IMC with the same PWM logic.

$$s_{11} = \mathbf{A}_1\mathbf{a}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} s_4 & s_4' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_1 \\ s_1' \end{bmatrix} \tag{3-41}$$

$$s_{12} = \mathbf{A}_1\mathbf{a}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} s_4 & s_4' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_2 \\ s_2' \end{bmatrix} \tag{3-42}$$

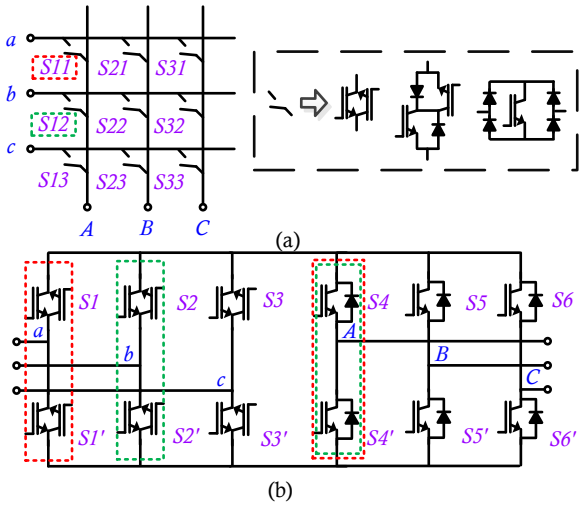


Figure 3-43 Topologies of (a) direct matrix converter, (b) indirect matrix converter.

In a given operating state, the rectifier and inverter parts of the IMC can be treated as a current-source converter and voltage-source converter as shown in **Figure 3-44**. The virtually linked filters can be considered as the virtual DC link with time-varying values. As for rectifier part, its dc side is always linked with the inverter-side filters (i.e. inductors) through the devices (S4-S6, S4'-

S6') under certain switching pattern (same principle for inverter part operation). Through the virtual DC link concept (the virtual level generator can also be implemented), derivation principles of voltage-source and current-source MLCs can be utilized for multilevel indirect matrix converters. Afterward, the associated direct matrix can also be derived based on the logic mapping relationship.

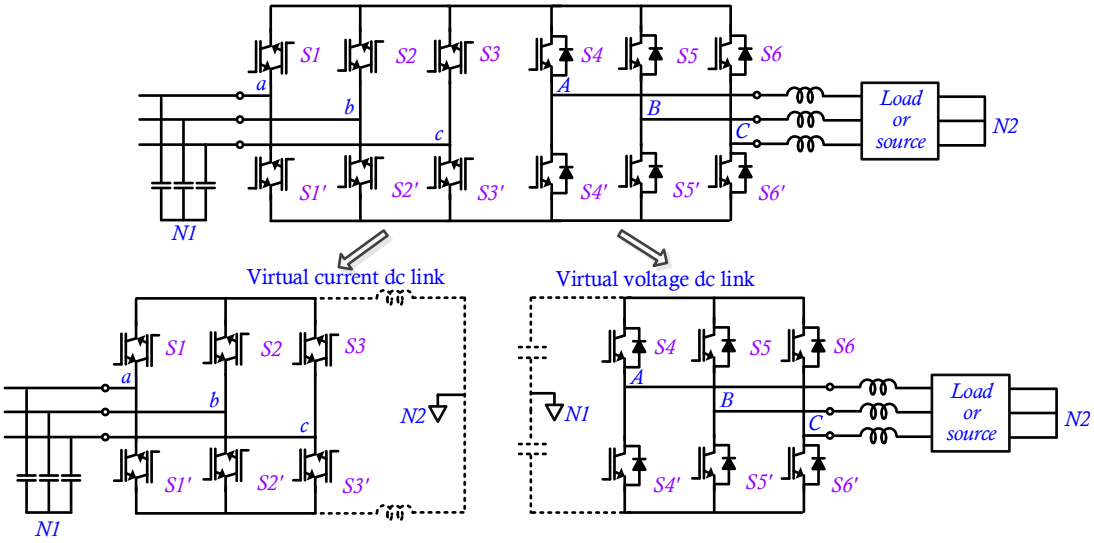


Figure 3-44 Indirect matrix converter decomposed by voltage/current-source converter.

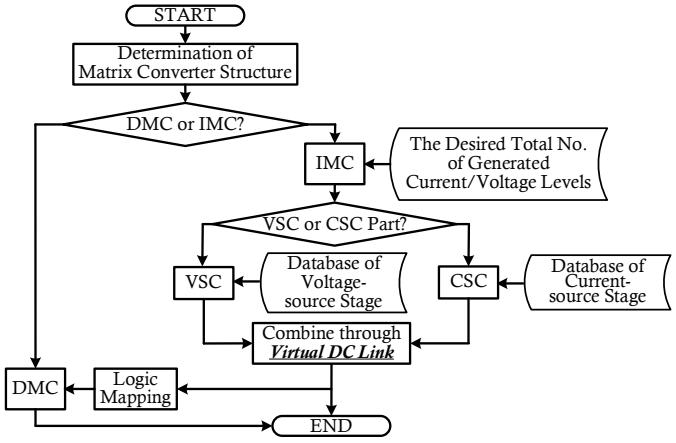


Figure 3-45 The derivation procedure of a matrix type MLC through the proposed method.

B. Derivation based on virtual DC link concept

The derivation process of matrix type MLC based virtual DC link concept is summarized in **Figure 3-45**. Either DMC or IMC can be derived through the proposed method. For IMC topologies, both VSC part and CSC part can be derived respectively through the process introduced in **Section 3.2.1 and 3.2.2**. Then, the chosen VSC and CSC parts can be combined through the virtual

DC link to form the IMC topology. At the same time, the associated DMC topology can be obtained through logic mapping.

C. Demonstration examples

To better understand the derivation process of matrix MLCs, matrix MLCs examples are demonstrated below.

Matrix Converter Example: In **Figure 3-46,** the derivation process of another 3-voltage-level matrix MLC based on the 3L voltage-source T-type NPC converter is demonstrated. The virtual 3L DC link is derived through the neutral point of rectifier-side filters. While the corresponding 3L DMC version can be derived based on the same logic mapping process of **Figure 3-44** which can be found in [192].

$$\mathbf{V}_{inv} = \mathbf{S}_{3L}\mathbf{V}_{rect} \tag{3-43}$$

where $\mathbf{V}_{inv} = \begin{bmatrix} v_A & v_B & v_C \end{bmatrix}^T, \mathbf{V}_{rect} = \begin{bmatrix} v_a & v_b & v_c & v_{N1} \end{bmatrix}^T$.

To derive $\mathbf{S}_{3L}$, assume the voltage vector of virtual DC link is $\mathbf{L}=[L_3\ L_2\ L_2\ L_1]^T$, $\mathbf{L'}=[L_3\ L_2\ L_1]^T$, then,

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{S}_{rect}\mathbf{V}_{rect}, \mathbf{V}_{inv} = \mathbf{S}_{inv}\mathbf{L}' \tag{3-44}$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{3L} = \mathbf{S}_{inv}\mathbf{S}_{rect} \tag{3-45}$$

where

$$\mathbf{S}_{3L} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{11} & s_{12} & s_{13} & s_{14} \\ s_{21} & s_{22} & s_{23} & s_{24} \\ s_{31} & s_{32} & s_{33} & s_{34} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{inv} = \begin{bmatrix} s_4 & s_4' & s_4'' \\ s_5 & s_5' & s_5'' \\ s_6 & s_6' & s_6'' \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{S}_{rect} = \begin{bmatrix} s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ s_1' & s_2' & s_3' & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

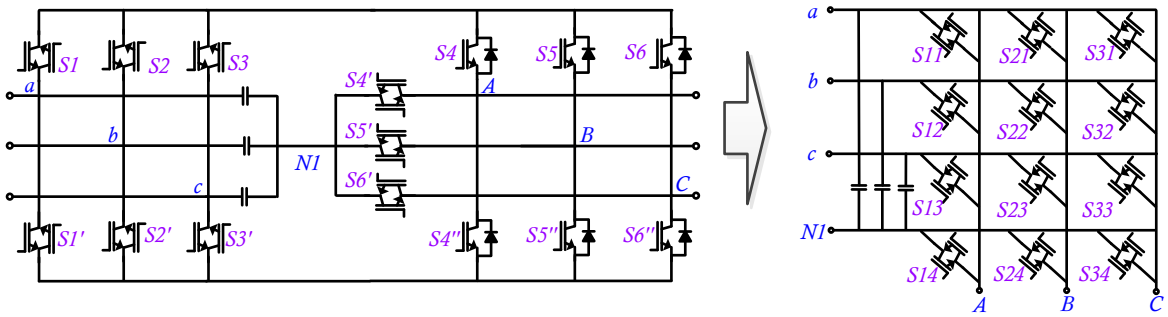


Figure 3-46 3-level T-type NPC indirect matrix converter and its direct matrix counterpart.

3.3.2 Cycling transformations for derivatives

The cycling phenomenon of the power converter indicates an arbitrary converter has the associated converters within the topology transformation loop. Therefore, utilizing the cycling phenomenon can facilitate the derivation of undiscovered topologies.

For a given drawing of the existing Topology X_1, according to the cycling phenomenon, there should be two possible cycling loops (see **Figure 3-47**): one is the two-step, another is the four-step. For a two-step loop, there is one topology Y associated with X_1, which will complete the topology loop: $X_1 \rightarrow Y \rightarrow X_1$. For a four-step loop, three related topologies associated with X_1, which will complete the topological transformation loop: $X_1 \rightarrow X_2 \rightarrow X_3 \rightarrow X_4 \rightarrow X_1$. To derive the intermediate topologies (Y) or (X_2, X_3, X_4), the dual/isomorphic principles can be utilized, as demonstrated previously.

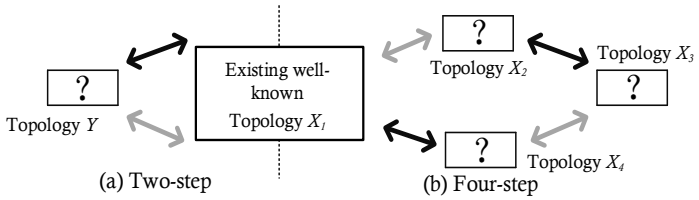


Figure 3-47 The topological transformation loop for a known Topology X_1 with unknown topologies to be discovered. (a) Two-step loop, (b) four-step loop.

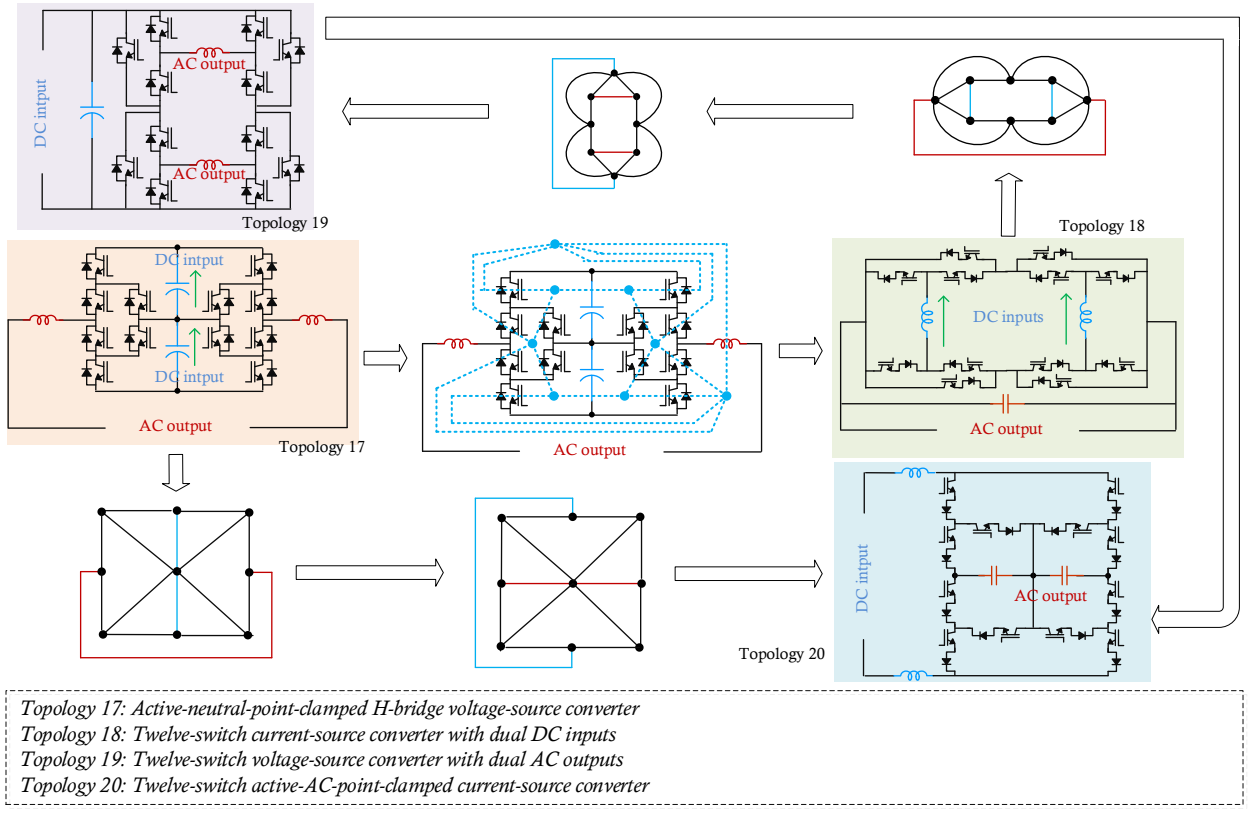


Figure 3-48 Topology derivation examples with planar circuits (the labels of topologies are named after the ones in **chapter 2**).

In **Figure 3-48**, a single-phase active-neutral-point-clamped VSC in [193] is taken to derive new topologies. The input/output ports are not identical; thus, this topology should be related to the other three topologies to complete the cycling loop. To derive the other three converters, both dual and isomorphic transformations are carried out. Since it is a planar circuit, strict dual transformation can be utilized to derive a dual-input 12-switch single-phase CSC (Topology 18). Through isomorphic transformation, this CSC can be transformed into another VSC (Topology 19) with dual outputs, 12 switches. The original converter (Topology 17) can be transformed into its isomorphic CSC (Topology 20). To complete the cycling loop, Topology 19 and Topology 20 can be transformed through the dual method. Due to their planar circuit properties, all electrical features among these topologies are linked with each other strictly, e.g. switching states, operations, models, etc.

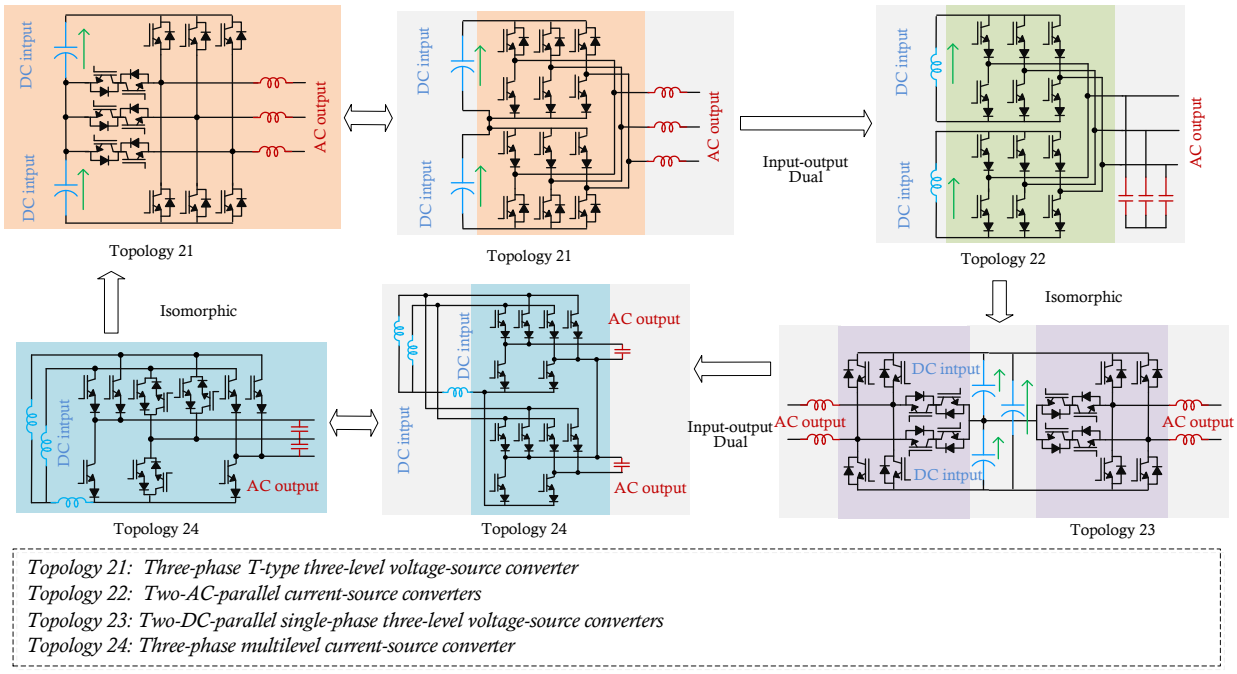


Figure 3-49 Topology derivation examples with nonplanar circuits.

In **Figure 3-49**, a three-phase T-type three-level VSC (Topology 21) is taken to demonstrate the derivation of converters with nonplanar circuits using the discovered cycling rule. To complete the cycle, firstly, the input-output dual method can be implemented to derive the CSC version based on [194]. Topology 21 is redrawn based on the input-output relationships. The derived topology consists of two CSCs with common AC buses (Topology 22). The input-output properties

of these two systems (two-mode operations: i.e. normal mode, unfolder mode) satisfy the dual relationship, as verified in [194]. Then, the isomorphic topology is derived as two T-type three-level VSC with common DC buses (Topology 23). As discussed in [195], the added DC capacitor (in addition to the series-connected capacitors) in Topology 23 is to guarantee the KVL law for the nonplanar circuit and facilitate the process of topological transformation. Thirdly, the input-output dual method is implemented again to transform Topology 23. The derived topology consists of two single-phase multilevel CSC with common DC buses (Topology 24). Reorganizing the topology will result in the isomorphic circuit of Topology 21. A similar topology can be found in [196], where the five-level AC current output can be produced. As indicated in the transformation among all four topologies, the input-output relationships are preserved through the cycling in such non-planar scenarios. For instance, the series connection of the AC outputs of Topology 24 can be predicted by the Topology 21 where the DC inputs are series-connected.

3.4. Implementations and verifications

3.4.1 Implementations of unified models

A. The generalized MLC topology synthesis and derivation flow chart

The general derivation process of MLC is summarized in **Figure 3-50**. For VSC or CSC, the derivation process is the same, while the utilized LSs and LGs are different. The simplification process is normally desired for the derived topology to achieve a more cost efficiency result, but it is not mandatory here. The derived VSC and CSC can be directly utilized for matrix type MLC. The process is relatively independent and has been shown in **Figure 3-45**.

B. The generated level number estimation through matrix model of MLC

One of the challenges during derivation is the estimation of generated level numbers of derived topologies. As discussed previously, MLCs can be represented as an ordered combination of matrix models through the concepts of the level generator and level selector. With the help of matrix representation, one can potentially investigate the mathematic properties of both existing and future topologies.

As presented in **section 3.1**, a level generator can be considered as a vector, called level vector, noted as **L**. While a level selector can be considered as a matrix, noted as **S**. Thus, the outputs of stages in a voltage-source MLC are:

$$\mathbf{V}_{o1}=\mathbf{S}_1\mathbf{L}_1,\cdots,\mathbf{V}_{oi}=\mathbf{S}_i\mathbf{L}_i,\cdots,\mathbf{V}_{on}=\mathbf{S}_n\mathbf{L}_n \tag{3-46}$$

The ith *level vector* (i>1) is a function of neighboring stages:

$$\mathbf{L}_i = \mathbf{F}\left(\mathbf{V}_{o(i-1)}, \mathbf{S}_i, \mathbf{S}_{(i-1)}, \mathbf{V}_{fi}\right) \tag{3-47}$$

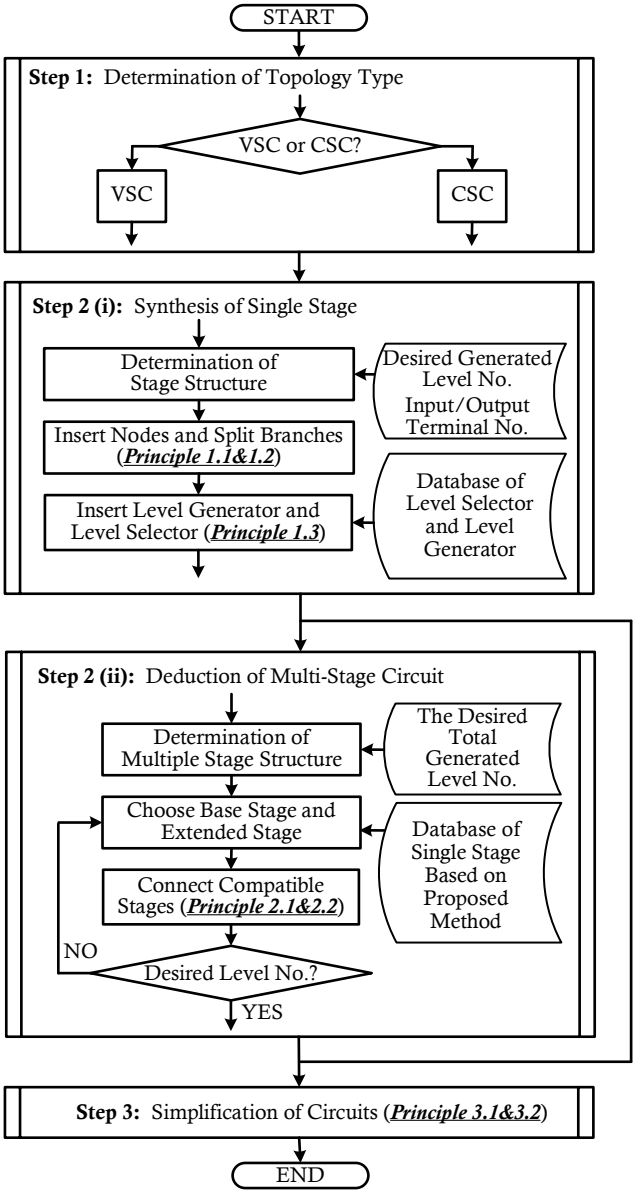


Figure 3-50 The generalized MLC topology synthesis and derivation flow chart.

where $\mathbf{V}_{fi}$ is the voltages of flying capacitors in stages.

To represent the MLC topology, the full-stage matrix model can be established in accordance with the natural stage division of a given MLC.

Here the famous 5L-ANPC topology is taken as an example. The main circuit is shown in **Figure 3-40**, while its node-branch diagram is shown in **Figure 3-51**.

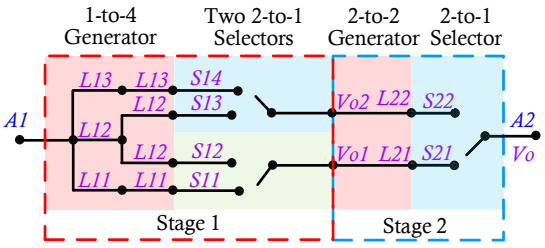


Figure 3-51 Node-branch diagram of 5L-ANPC topology.

The outputs of the 1st stage can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{V}_{o1} = \mathbf{S}_1 \mathbf{L}_1 \tag{3-48}$$

where

$$\mathbf{V}_{o1} = \begin{bmatrix} V_{o2} & V_{o1} \end{bmatrix}^T, \quad \mathbf{S}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{12} & \mathbf{S}_{11} \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{12} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{14} & S_{13} & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^T, \quad \mathbf{S}_{11} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & S_{12} & S_{11} \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$\mathbf{L}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} L_{13} & L_{12} & L_{12} & L_{11} \end{bmatrix}^T.$$

The outputs of the 2nd stage can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{V}_{o2} = \mathbf{S}_2 \mathbf{L}_2 \tag{3-49}$$

where

$$\mathbf{V}_{o2} = V_o, \quad \mathbf{S}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{22} & \mathbf{S}_{21} \end{bmatrix}^T, \quad \mathbf{L}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} L_{22} & L_{21} \end{bmatrix}^T.$$

Based on (3-47), the level vector $\mathbf{L}_2$ is a function of $\mathbf{S}_1$, $\mathbf{S}_2$, $\mathbf{V}_{o1}$, $\mathbf{V}_f$, which results in an augmented 2nd stage with a virtual level vector $\mathbf{L}_1'=[L_{14}'\ L_{13}'\ L_{12}'\ L_{11}']^T$ as shown in **Figure 3-52**.

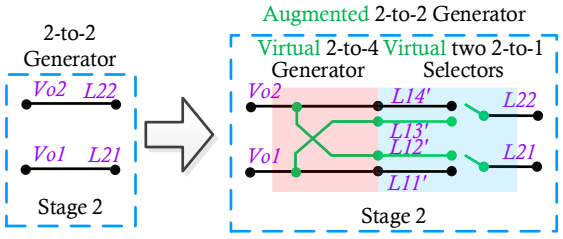


Figure 3-52 The augmented level generator of the 2nd stage of 5L-ANPC topology.

The outputs of the augmented 2nd stage can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{L}_2 = \mathbf{S}_1' \mathbf{L}_1' \tag{3-50}$$

where

$$\mathbf{S}_1' = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{12}' & \mathbf{S}_{11}' \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{12}' = \begin{bmatrix} S_{14}' & S_{13}' & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^T,\ \mathbf{S}_{11}' = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & S_{12}' & S_{11}' \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$S_{14}' = \left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{22},\ S_{13}' = \left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{22},$$

$$S_{12}' = \left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{21},\ S_{11}' = \left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{21},$$

$$\mathbf{L}_1' = \begin{bmatrix} L_{14}' & L_{13}' & L_{12}' & L_{11}' \end{bmatrix}^T,$$

$$L_{14}' = V_{o2},\ L_{13}' = V_{o1} + V_f,\ L_{12}' = V_{o2} - V_f,\ L_{11}' = V_{o1}.$$

Therefore, the output of the 5L-ANPC converter is:

$$\begin{aligned} V_o = &\left[\left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{14}\right] L_{13} + \left[\left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{13} + \left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{12}\right] L_{12} \\ &+ \left[\left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{11}\right] L_{11} + \left[\left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{22}\right] V_f + \left[\left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{21}\right] \left(-V_f\right) \end{aligned} \tag{3-51}$$

And (3-50) can be equivalently transformed into:

$$V_o = \mathbf{SL} \tag{3-52}$$

where

$$\mathbf{S} = \begin{bmatrix} S_5 & S_4 & S_3 & S_2 & S_1 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$S_5 = \left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{14},$$
$$S_4 = \left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{13} + \left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{12},$$
$$S_3 = \left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{11},$$
$$S_2 = \left(S_{12} or S_{11}\right) S_{22},$$
$$S_1 = \left(S_{14} or S_{13}\right) S_{21},$$

$$\mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} L_{13} & L_{12} & L_{11} & V_f & -V_f \end{bmatrix}^T.$$

The equation (3-52) can be called as the single stage matrix model. And the single stage node-branch diagram can be developed for 5L-ANPC converter as shown in **Figure 3-53**. It indicates all potential output levels this topology can generate: L_{13}, $L_{13}-V_f$, $L_{12}-V_f$, L_{12}, $L_{12}+V_f$, $L_{11}+V_f$, L_{11}. Assume the input terminal potentials are: L_{13}=2E, L_{12}=0, L_{11}=−2E, and the flying capacitor voltages are V_f=E, then, the five-level outputs can be obtained: ±2E, ±E, 0. If V_f=2E, then, only three-level outputs can be generated: ±2E, 0. Such systematic estimation process can be utilized for any derived MLCs through the proposed method. Some other examples (e.g. 5-level/7-level hybrid-clamped converters) can be found in **Appendix-A**.

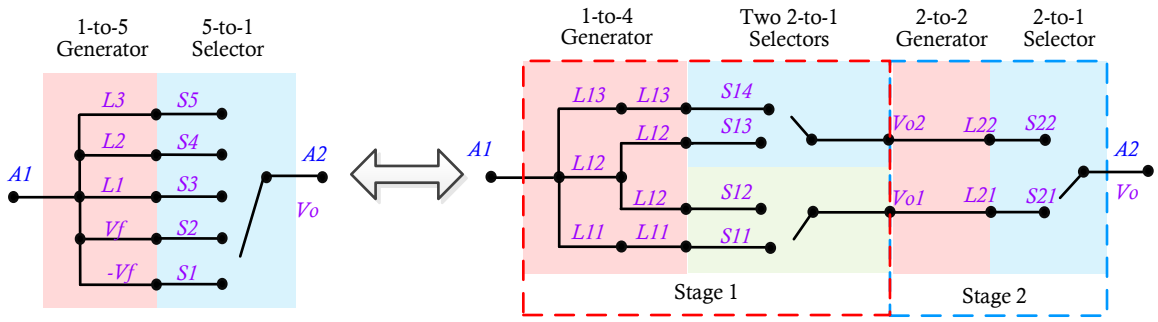


Figure 3-53 The single stage node-branch diagram of 5L-ANPC topology.

C. A systematic way for voltage balance analysis

Another great challenge of MLC derivation is the voltage/current balance of capacitors/inductors. Here the flying capacitor voltage balance analysis of 5L-ANPC topology is discussed as an example through the matrix model. While such analysis can also be done for any MLC derived through the proposed method.

The model (3-53) can be transferred into the following form through elementary row transformation of **L**:

$$\mathbf{EL} = \mathbf{PL}' \tag{3-53}$$

where

E is the five-dimension unit matrix,

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{L}' = \begin{bmatrix} L_{13} \\ L_{13} - V_f \\ L_{12} \\ L_{11} + V_f \\ L_{11} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let $\mathbf{S}' = \mathbf{SP}$, then,

$$V_o = \mathbf{SL} = \mathbf{SPP}^{-1}\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{S}'\mathbf{L}' \tag{3-54}$$

where $\mathbf{S}' = \begin{bmatrix} (S_5 + S_4) & S_3 & (S_2 + S_1) & S_2 & S_4 \end{bmatrix}$.

The general transformation can be expressed as:

$$V_o = \mathbf{SL} = \mathbf{SP}_{(i)} \left[\mathbf{P}_{(i)} \right]^{-1} \mathbf{L} = \mathbf{S}_{(i)} \mathbf{L}_{(i)} \tag{3-55}$$

where i is an integer, $rank(\mathbf{P}_{(i)})=5$. Note that, the calculation of the matrix $\mathbf{P}_{(i)}$ is off-line.

The following equivalent single stage matrix models can be developed based on (3-54):

$$\mathbf{M}_{(1)}=\mathbf{S}_{(1)}\mathbf{L}_{(1)},\mathbf{L}_{(1)}=\begin{bmatrix}L_{13} & L_{13}-V_f & L_{12} & L_{11}+V_f & L_{11}\end{bmatrix}^T$$
$$\mathbf{M}_{(2)}=\mathbf{S}_{(2)}\mathbf{L}_{(2)},\mathbf{L}_{(2)}=\begin{bmatrix}L_{13} & L_{12}+V_f & L_{12} & L_{11}+V_f & L_{11}\end{bmatrix}^T$$
$$\mathbf{M}_{(3)}=\mathbf{S}_{(3)}\mathbf{L}_{(3)},\mathbf{L}_{(3)}=\begin{bmatrix}L_{13} & L_{13}-V_f & L_{12} & L_{12}-V_f & L_{11}\end{bmatrix}^T$$
$$\mathbf{M}_{(4)}=\mathbf{S}_{(4)}\mathbf{L}_{(4)},\mathbf{L}_{(4)}=\begin{bmatrix}L_{13} & L_{12}+V_f & L_{12} & L_{12}-V_f & L_{11}\end{bmatrix}^T \quad (3\text{-}56)$$

To balance the flying capacitors of the 5L-ANPC converter, these models can be utilized as different operation/modulation modes of the converter and be rotated based on the desired switching frequency. Such that, the output levels can maintain the same, while the voltage of the flying capacitor can be controlled.

3.4.2 Inspirations of new topologies

Based on the proposed synthesis methodology, derivation of a new topology can be considered in the following directions: (i) new simplification of stages in generalized topology, (ii) new inter-stage combinations, (iii) new different stage combinations. Besides, multilevel matrix converter can be derived through the logical mapping relationship between indirect-type and direct-type converter.

A. (i) New simplification of stages in existing topology

Derived Topology Example 1: Figure 3-54 shows the simplification process of a 4L converter proposed in [197]. The second stage of the NNPC topology is replaced by T-type NPC to replace the diodes. The gating signal of PWM introduced in [197] can be implemented without modification, therefore, will not be covered in this section. Note that the voltage of flying capacitors can be controlled as $1/3V_d$ or $1/2V_d$, resulting in 4L or 5L output in theory [198].

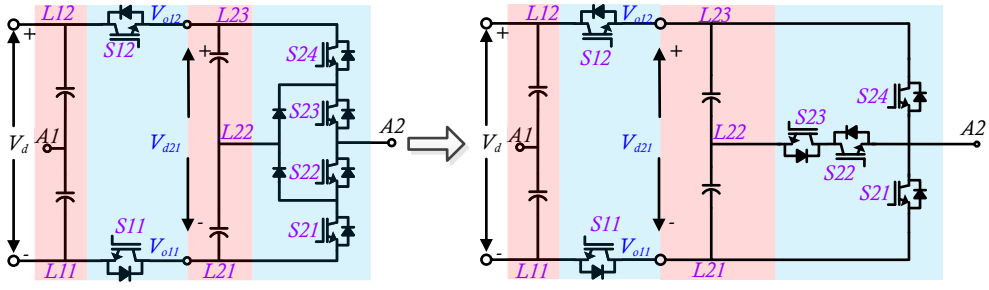


Figure 3-54 Derivation process of a 4L T-type NNPC.

B. (ii) New internal stage combinations

Derived Topology Example 2: Internal paralleled configuration is recently proposed in [59] based on the 5L ANPC introduced in [185]. **Figure 3-55** shows the derivation process of the internal paralleled 3L ANPC topology. First, the 2-stage 3L ANPC is decomposed into two parts: high switching frequency part and low switching frequency part which is essentially the same with [59]. In steady state, the V_{o1} is maintained constant, and the basic half bridges (2nd stages) can be modularly connected in parallel without oscillation of input voltage. Based on the simplification principle, one can eliminate the capacitors of the 2nd stage and finally obtain the simplified topology in **Figure 3-55**.

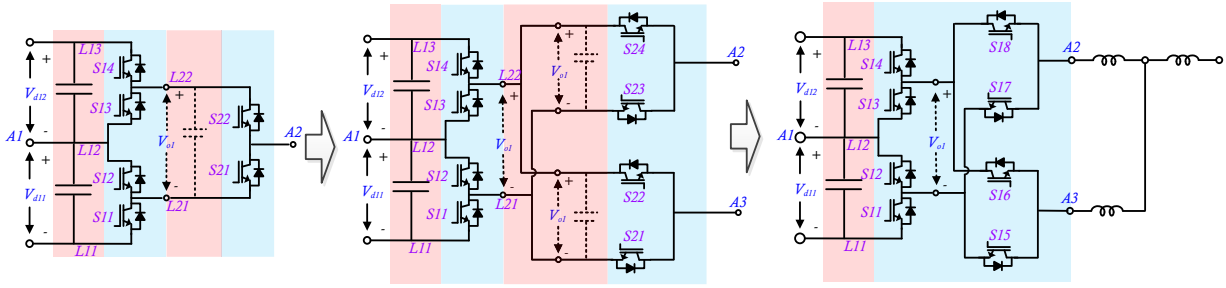


Figure 3-55 Derivation process of the internal parallel 3L ANPC.

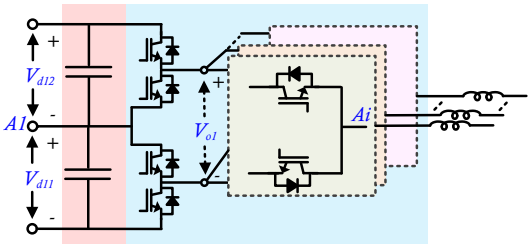


Figure 3-56 The modular structure of the internal parallel 3L ANPC.

During the derivation process, the number of paralleled stages can be greater than two and results in a modular structure shown in **Figure 3-56**. Each module can share the same power rating and operate at a high switching frequency which is preferred for wide-bandgap semiconductor.

C. (iii) New different stage combinations

Derived Topology Example 3: In **Figure 3-57(a)**, two stages are shown: one is a 4L stage with two output terminals, the other one is a 2-to-1 stage. The combination of these two stages forms the hybrid-clamped 7-level (7L) topology 1# through the derivation principle. Same rules can be implemented to derive hybrid-clamped 7L topology 2# and 3#. The operation principles are based on the carrier-based PWM of 4L ANPC designed in [199] with modification for FC balance to generate 7L output.

For all hybrid-clamped 7L topologies, the conventional PS-PWM (see **Figure 3-58**) can be utilized for the FC legs without modification. The FC voltage self-balancing can also be achieved [200]. A carrier-based PWM scheme of hybrid-clamped 7L topology 1# is given as demonstration to show the basic operation principle.

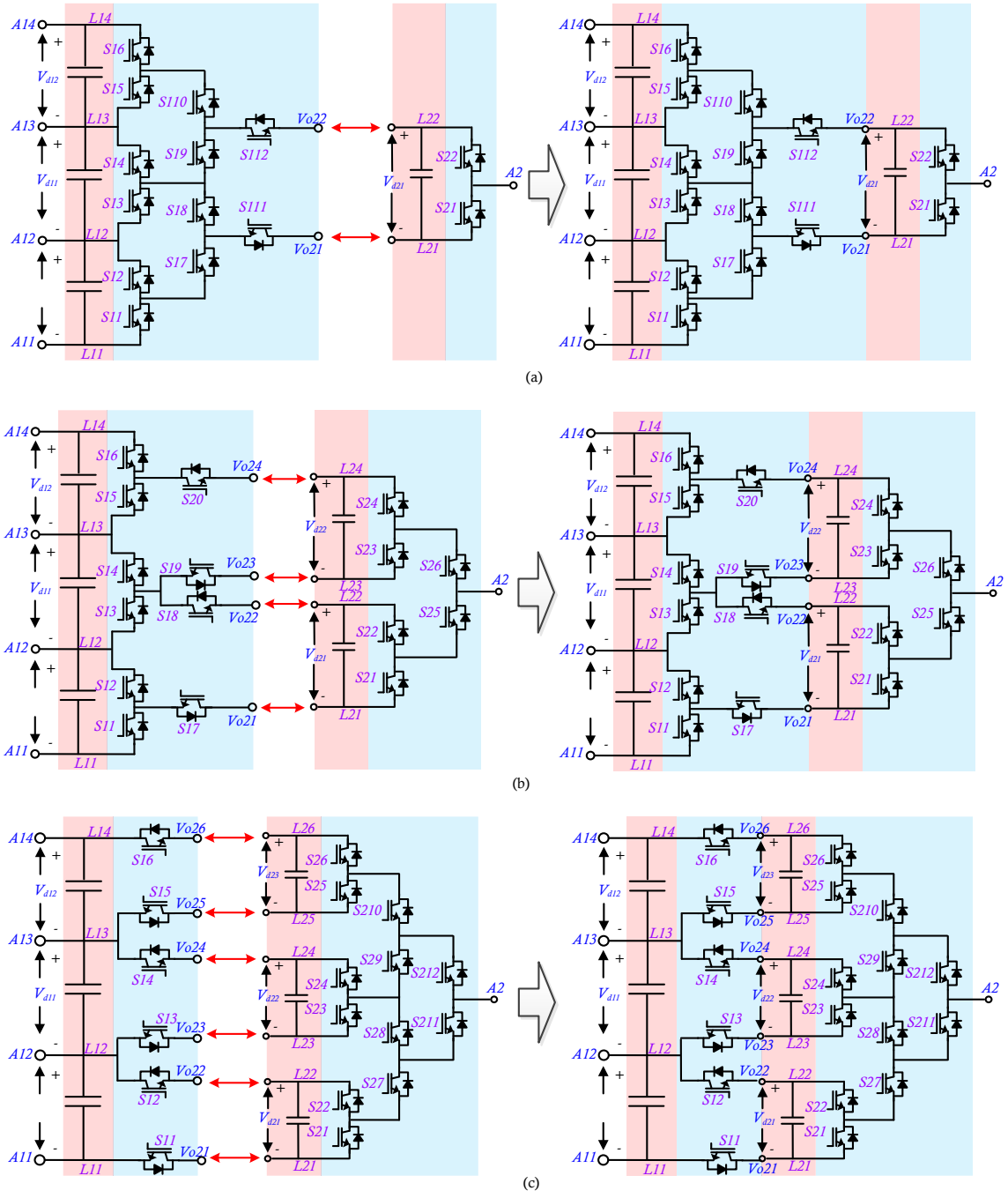


Figure 3-57 Derivation process of hybrid-clamped 7L topology (a) 7L 1# topology, (b) 7L 2# topology, (c) 7L 3# topology.

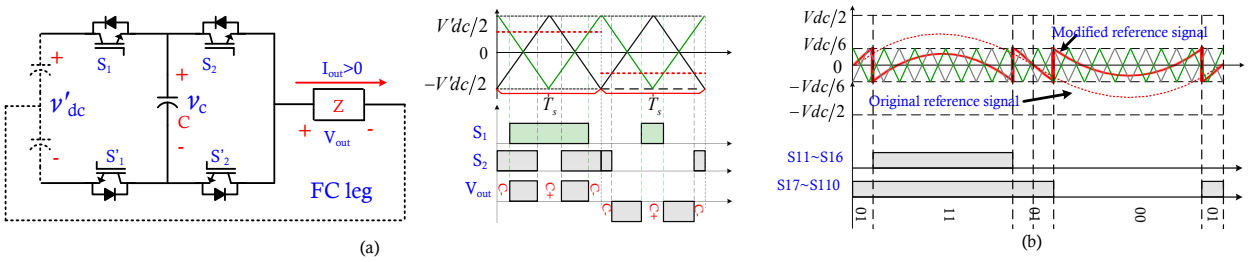


Figure 3-58 (a) PS-PWM for 3L flying capacitor converter, (b) PWM for hybrid-clamped 7L topology 1#.

Derived Topology Example 4: In **Figure 3-59**, two hybrid-clamped 9L topologies can be derived through the substitution of the 2nd stage of hybrid-clamped 5-level topology: the original 2-to-1 stage can be replaced by a T-type 3-level stage or an NPC-based 3-level stage. Since the 3-level stages are not self-balancing, auxiliary circuits are mandatory for their FCs. Both 2-level and 3-level balancing circuits can be implemented as shown in **Figure 3-60**. Note that the auxiliary circuits only need to deal with differential power of FCs, the working principles are basically the same as a DPP [39], [201], [202]. Thus, lower power rating devices can be implemented. Compared with 9-level topology proposed in [202], the total power rating of active switches can be similar, while the conduction losses of the main topologies can be less due to the reduction of conducting switches. One can also extend the second stage circuit into a generalized version to obtain higher output levels as shown in **Figure 3-61**. While the auxiliary circuit can be utilized to help balance the flying capacitor voltages. It provides another potential way to increase the output levels of MLCs by utilizing stages combined with auxiliary circuit instead of stages with self-balancing capability as presented in [80]. In fact, a similar way can be found in [203], where the extended commutation cell is used to realize 8-level output. Since each stage of the level generation is not limited to capacitors in proposed method, we can even use DC supplies to provide stable DC voltages in any stages. Typical examples can be found in [204] and [205].

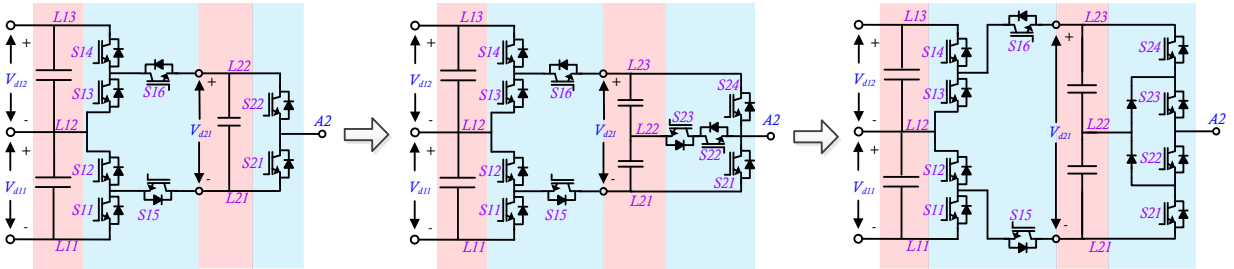


Figure 3-59 Derivation process of two hybrid-clamped 9L topologies.

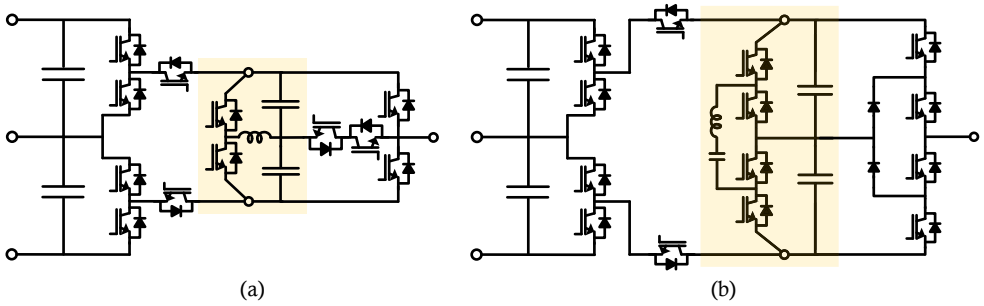


Figure 3-60 Voltage balance of flying capacitors of hybrid-clamped 9L topology through (a) 2L balancing circuit for 9L 1# topology, (b) 3L balancing circuit for 9L 2# topology.

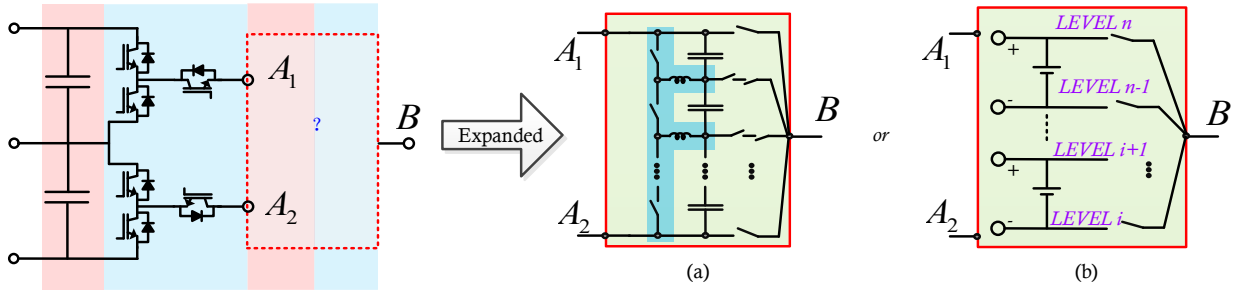


Figure 3-61 Extended the second stage circuit into a generalized version to obtain higher output levels through (a) FCs with auxiliary circuit, (b) DC supplies.

3.4.3 Practical considerations and verifications

A. Practical considerations of derived multilevel topologies

The proposed method is demonstrated through four derived examples. While it is also expected that the derivation results have certain practical values. To address such objective, in this section, the practical considerations of these topology examples are discussed.

The main reasons of utilizing MLCs in practical applications are to acquire: (1) reduced AC-side filter size due to a high number of output levels and reduced dv/dt or di/dt, (2) higher power ratings through the sharing blocking voltages or currents of devices.

This general derivation approach can cover a large number of various MLCs, from low-level ones to high-level ones. With a high number of output levels (voltage or current), the output power quality can be improved. While the complexity of the derivation process can significantly increase since the applicable level generators and selectors increases as well.

For single DC-link topology, a higher-level MLC is possible as shown in **Figure 3-54**. While the naturally unbalanced flying capacitors make the control and modulation schemes more challenging than conventional topologies [204].

With two DC links, a higher-level MLC is also possible as shown in **Figure 3-55** and **3-59**. While the auxiliary balancing circuit is preferable for 9-level examples in **Figure 3-60** due to unbalanced flying capacitor voltages [205]. In practice, different applications require different applicable converters. Compared to MV or HV high-power scenarios, implementation of auxiliary circuits can be more reasonable in low-voltage low-power cases as in some single-phase PV system [206]. While a naturally balanced DC-link/flying/floating capacitor voltages are more attractive in MV/HV applications.

Three DC links can bring us the derived 7-level example as shown in **Figure 3-57**. While the limited stable operation regions for such topology will make such topology less attractive for wide-range heavy-load high-power applications [207]. Recently, another 7-level topology is proposed with the capability of balancing both DC-link and flying capacitors, which can be implemented for MV drive system [208]. Such topology can also be synthesized through this method.

To summarize, the features of derived topologies are listed in **Table 3-I**. While in practice, more compromises should be made to cope with various requirements [209], [210], e.g. total costs, reliability, efficiency, power density, etc.

Table 3-I Summaries of Derived MLC Topologies (Per Phase)

	Example 1 Figure 3-54 (T-NPC)	Example 2 Figure 3-55	Example 3 Figure 3-57	Example 4 Figure 3-60(a) (T-NPC)
Level	4/5	3/5	7	9
No. of DC links	1	2	3	2
Total ratings of active devices	2Vdc/ 2.5Vdc	3Vdc/ 4Vdc	4Vdc	3.5Vdc
Total ratings of passive devices	2Vdc diode +2/3Vdc cap./ 2.5Vdc diode +1/2Vdc cap.	3Vdc diode/ 4Vdc diode	4Vdc diode + 1/3Vdc cap.	4Vdc diode + 1/4Vdc cap.
Naturally balanced dc cap. voltages?	N/A	Yes	Limited balance range	Yes
Naturally balanced flying cap. voltages?	Limited balance range	N/A	Yes	No
Auxiliary circuits preferred?	N/A	N/A	Yes (for low voltage)	Yes
Preferred voltage rating	Low/medium voltage	Low/medium voltage	Low/ medium voltage	Low voltage
Preferred power rating	Low/medium power	Medium/high power	Low/ medium power	Low power

B. Verifications of derived topology

In the previous section, four examples (1~4) are presented as the demonstration of how the proposed method can help inspire new topologies. All examples exhibit certain practical values for practical applications. Some of them are proposed in literature within one year of publication of this work.

The detailed discussions and verifications of Example 1 topology in **Figure 3-54** can be found in [192]. While [205] shows Example 4 topology can operate as a 5-/7-/9-level converter with thorough analysis and experiments. Example 3 topology in **Figure 3-57(c)** is similar to the 5th figure in [184] without H-bridge cells. Example 2 topology in **Figure 3-55** can be considered as the extension of [211] since it can be operated with more than two modules, a different allocation of high switching frequency part and low switching frequency part and utilizes the shared DC links rather than multiple isolated dc supplies for multi-phase applications.

Table 3-II Experimental Parameters

DC voltage	200V	Device frequency	5kHz
AC current	4A/8A	Line frequency	60Hz
LR load	3mH/10Ω	DC capacitor	1.5mF

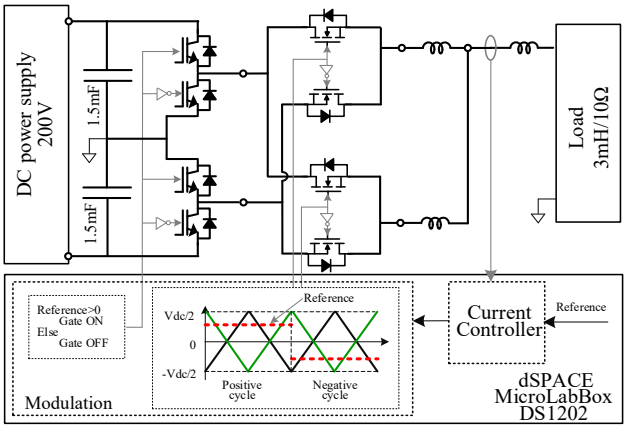


Figure 3-62 Experimental setup.

To verify Example 2 topology, the experiments are carried out with the three-phase platform in the lab based on the circuit in **Figure 3-55**. Each phase leg is composed of four IGBT devices (Infineon IKQ50N120CT2) for S_{11}~S_{14}, four GaN devices (GaN Systems GS66516) for S_{15}~S_{18}, as shown in experimental setup **Figure 3-62.** The digital controller is the dSPACE MicroLabBox DS1202. The conventional current-closed-loop control is implemented to track the reference current, while the carrier-based PWM with two 180° shifted carriers is used for the interleaved

operation of this topology. The generalized operation principles are referred to [60]. The experimental results are shown in **Figure 3-63** with parameters listed in **Table. 3-II.** In [211], four switches (per phase) have to block the whole DC voltage. Compared to [211], one merit of the example 2 topology is the reduced device ratings for 5-level output with all devices withstand half DC-link voltage.

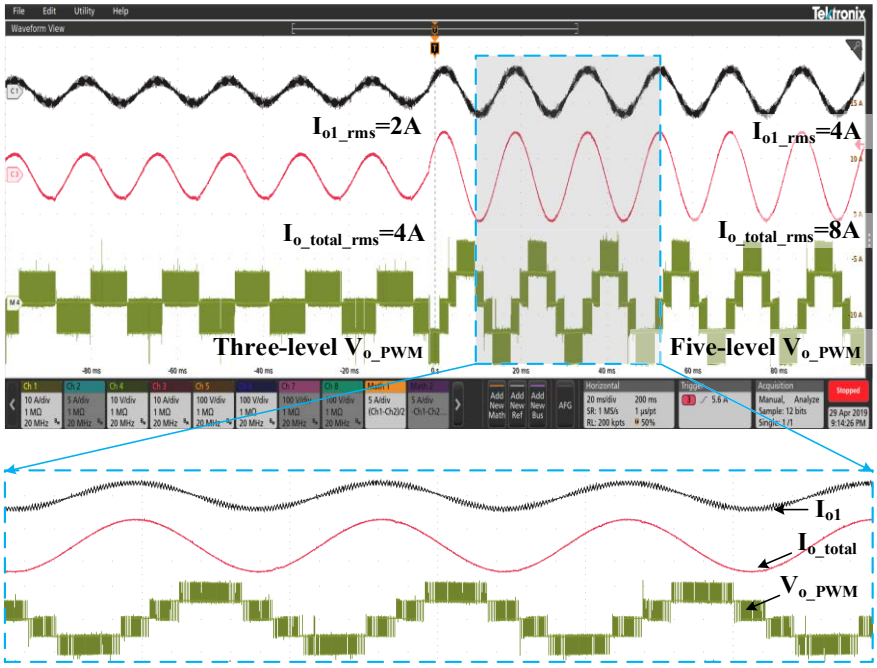


Figure 3-63 Experimental results of 2# topology example. The waveforms from top to bottom: output current of the A2 terminal, the output current of the total current, output PWM voltage pulses. The RMS value of the current reference is changed from 4A to 8A during the operation.

3.5. Summary

In this chapter, to systematically synthesize and derive multilevel voltage-source, current-source, and matrix converters, a general methodology is proposed in this work. Instead of implementing the conventional circuit-level derivations, this work investigates and utilizes the structure-level fundamental relationships of power converters: (i) the dual structures in voltage-source MLCs and current-source MLCs, (ii) the equivalent structures in matrix-type MLCs. Furthermore, the MLCs can be abstractly represented in unified matrix models using the concept of stage.

With the stage-based common structure, the systematic design of MLCs can be realized for all kinds of MLCs in a universal way. In details, the node-branch forms are obtained for most commonly studied topologies, which not only demonstrate the duality between voltage-source and current-source multilevel topologies, but also the logical equivalence of multilevel indirect and

direct matrix converters. The matrix presentations of MLCs are derived from their node-branch forms, which provides an opportunity for systematic analysis of different MLCs. It can help the simplification process of derived various MLC topologies, and can also facilitate the modulation implementation for different MLCs, especially matrix converters, through the logic mapping.

Moreover, compared to the current approach of manual design and analysis, the design rules of the proposed method are more general and straightforward to follow even for researchers without a strong power electronics background. With the proposed method, a unified design platform could be established, which opens the potential for both manual synthesis and derivation and computer-aided design and analysis. Several multilevel topologies are derived as examples, e.g. internal paralleled MLCs, 7L hybrid MLCs and 9L MLCs with auxiliary circuits. The discussions with practical considerations and experiments are given to further demonstrate the feasibility of the proposed method.

As briefly mentioned in **Section 3.4**, the matrix models introduced in this chapter can also be utilized for topology simplification and modulation of MLCs. In the following **Chapter 5**, this concept will be further generalized and implemented for those MLCs with non-modular structures, e.g. ANPC-type converters. Those topologies have been facing some great challenges of modulation implementation when dealing with topology simplification and fault-tolerant operation. With the help of some specialized matrix modeling approaches, both can be solved in systematic ways.

Chapter 4

Systematic PWM design of multilevel converters[1]

As reviewed in **Chapter 1**, the maturity of power electronic techniques drives the converter performance approaching its limitations. To fully explore the potentials of various MLCs and establish the common database, not only the topology synthesis method is highly needed (as investigated in **Chapter 3**), but also the modulation design needs to be systematically addressed. Unfortunately, the systematic PWM design methods are still hardly discussed in literature. Considerable efforts have been dedicated for modulation design of some three-level MLCs, such as loss distribution improvement, thermal management, commutation and fault-tolerant modulations [97], [212]-[216]. For MLCs with modular structures (e.g. CHB, MMC, FC converters), these methods could be systematically generalized for higher output level scenarios. However, due to the complex circuit structures, it is more difficult to design modulations for the non-modular MLCs, e.g. NPC, ANPC, hybrid-clamped converters. In fact, most of the non-modular MLCs can be simplified or extended by ANPC-type converters, which will be considered in this chapter.

In practice, the ANPC converter is one of the most typical non-modular MLCs and has been drawing considerable attention in recent MLC research as mentioned in **Chapter 1**. By providing more redundancies, the ANPC converter has a higher flexibility than NPC converter and can potentially achieve better performance. It can also be generalized into various other MLCs by adding flying capacitors by substituting the certain switching cells or simplifying the circuit (e.g. hybrid-clamped converters). With some clear derivation rules (such as those in **Chapter 3**), the modulation design of its resulting derivatives can benefit from the established approaches for ANPC converter. Therefore, in this chapter, the ANPC converter is chosen for the major research subject to demonstrate the proposed methodology without losing the generality.

[1] Publications out of this Chapter:

Yuzhuo Li, Yunwei Li, Hao Tian, Navid R. Zargari and Zhongyuan Cheng, "A Modular Design Approach to Provide Exhaustive Carrier-Based PWM Patterns for Multilevel ANPC Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 55, no. 5, pp. 5032-5044, Sept.-Oct. 2019

Yuzhuo Li, Hao Tian and Yunwei Li, "Generalized Phase-Shift PWM for Active-Neutral-Point-Clamped Multilevel Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 67, no. 11, pp. 9048-9058, Nov. 2020.

Yuzhuo Li, Yunwei Li and Hao Tian, "Carrier-based PWM design of multilevel ANPC-based converter through hierarchical decomposition," *2018 IEEE Applied Power Electronics Conference and Exposition (APEC)*, San Antonio, TX, 2018, pp. 2542-2549.

In this chapter, the identical circuits in the MLCs will be firstly investigated, and the hierarchical decomposition method will be introduced by iteratively utilizing the identical circuits. Then, the new systematic carrier-based PWM design method will be provided, which is mainly focused on ANPC converters. It can help provide complete list of PWM patterns for further exploration of the converter performance. In addition, a novel generalized phase-shift PWM will be proposed for ANPC converters to better utilize the device with improved loss distributions. Various 5-level experimental cases are carried out to verify the proposed methods.

The logic structure of the **Chapter 4** is shown below:

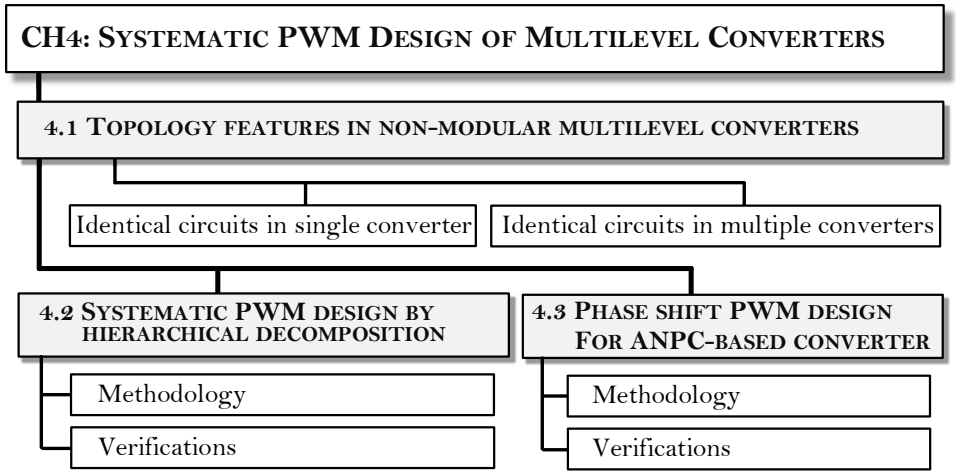


Figure 4-1 Logic structure of Chapter 4.

4.1. Topology features of ANPC-based converters

To fully explore the potentials of MLCs, especially for the internal device utilizations, new modulation design method is highly demanding. In practice, systematic modulation design methods have been introduced in converter parallel/series-connected system, e.g. interleaved carrier-based PWM [85], [158]. They essentially utilize the identical circuits of the system and simplify the implementation process of the algorithms. In this section, such concept is further generalized for various MLCs with non-modular structures (mainly the voltage-source type), and the graphical representations of the internal identical circuits in MLCs will be given.

4.1.1 Identical circuits in MLCs

A. Multilevel converters with modular structures

As briefly reviewed in **Chapter 1** and investigated in **Chapter 3**, there are mainly four types of voltage-source MLCs with modular structures, i.e. MMC, couple-inductor-based converter, CHB converter and FCC converter as shown in **Figure 4-2**. They basically consist of some identical cells and can be easily scaled up by simply adding more cells. For these modular-structure MLCs, the design of modulation methods can normally be realized in a modular way including not only carrier-based schemes, but also some more complex approaches, like SVM, MPC, nearest vector method, etc. This indeed significantly reduces the modulation computation burden and facilitates the overall converter design process, especially when output levels and redundant states are with great numbers.

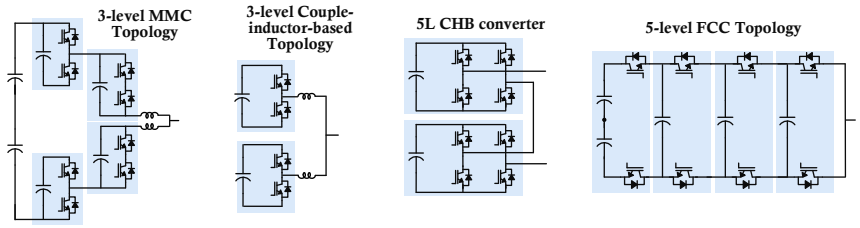


Figure 4-2 Topologies of some modular converters.

B. Multilevel converters with non-modular structures

In practice, there are also some MLCs considered as non-modular structures, such as NPC, TNPC, ANPC and their derivatives as shown in **Figure 4-3**. In general, their modulation schemes are highly dependent on the topologies, and sometimes are not straightforward to generalized, especially regarding the internal operation issues, e.g. loss distribution, device utilization. Moreover,

the modulation complexity of such topologies can tend to dramatically large for high-level scenarios, making them less attractive in terms of both the performance and costs.

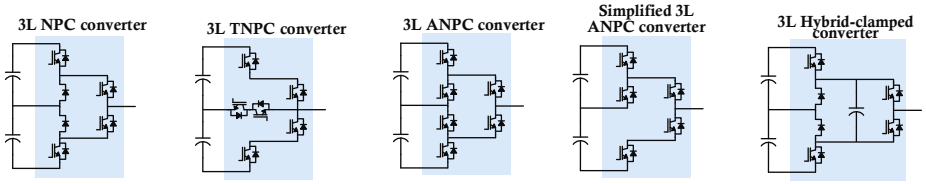


Figure 4-3 Topologies of some non-modular converters.

C. Multilevel converters with hybrid structures

Recently, there are some voltage-source MLCs featuring hybrid structures combining the modular MLCs and basic non-modular MLCs. They normally consist of several different cells and show some resembles with existing MLCs. Some typical examples are shown in **Figure 4-4**. The modulation schemes of these topologies enjoy some scalability from their modular cells. On the other hand, they are also facing some modulation design difficulties when generalized to higher-level topologies, which is mainly limited by its non-modular features.

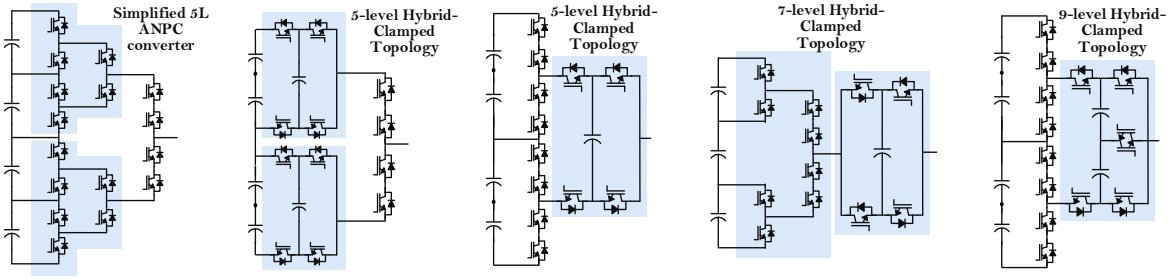


Figure 4-4 Topologies of the hybrid-clamped converters.

D. Classifications of the identical circuits

To better understand the relationships between the topological features and the associated modulations of these MLCs, systematic classification can be made based on different circuit-level similarities and symmetries within. Mainly two types of identical circuits can be found in various voltage-source MLCs: identical circuits within a single converter and identical circuits between two converters.

The identical circuits within a single converter shows that the identical parts within converter can be non-overlapping or overlapping. For instance, CHB converter has a typical internal non-overlapping identical circuit as shown in the left of **Figure 4-5**. The identical parts within this converter are independent with each other and same modulation logic can be implemented. It can also be found in some non-modular MLCs, e.g. the symmetrical non-overlapping circuits in 3L

NPC and 3L ANPC converters in **Figure 4-6** and the asymmetrical non-overlapping circuits in simplified 3L ANPC converters in **Figure 4-7**.

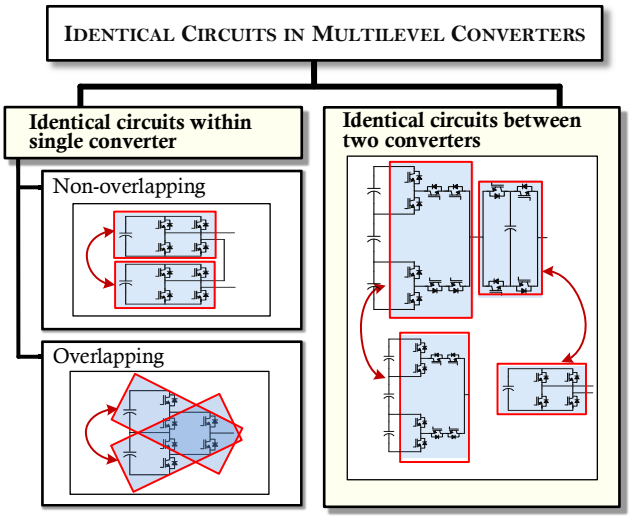


Figure 4-5 The classification of different identical circuits for multilevel converters.

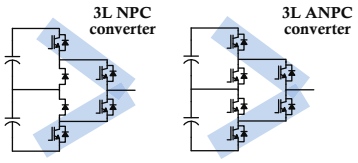


Figure 4-6 The identical circuits within a single converter representing as symmetrical non-overlapping circuits in 3L NPC and 3L ANPC converters.

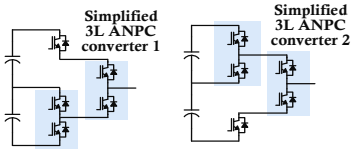


Figure 4-7 The identical circuits within a single converter representing as asymmetrical non-overlapping circuits in simplified 3L ANPC converters.

On the other hand, overlapping identical circuits can be identified in various MLCs, e.g. ANPC converters. As highlighted in the bottom-left of **Figure 4-5**, the upper side of the topology can be used for generating positive cycle of AC waveforms, while the lower side of the topology for negative cycle. These two parts are symmetrical and overlapped with each other and can be modulated by some similar algorithms regarding waveform symmetry.

The identical circuits between two converters can be defined as identical circuits in one converter that can be found in some other converter topologies. This can be interpreted as some circuits are re-used in other topologies. For instance, as shown in the right of **Figure 4-5**, the

hybrid-clamped 7-level converter consists of a four-level circuit and an H-bridge circuit, and its modulation algorithm can be realized by synergistically combining the two.

It is also worth noticing that for same topology there can be several groups of identical circuits, e.g. both overlapping and non-overlapping identical sub-topologies can be found in the 3L ANPC converter. This indeed indicates the different switch grouping and can be utilized for the modulation design in a general way.

4.1.2 Similarities of ANPC-based converters

A. Simplified graphical representations of ANPC-based converters

To simplify the representation of the ANPC converters, a switch group (SG) can be defined as a column of switches in an ANPC topology as labeled by the red dotted box in **Figure 4-8**. A switch cell (SC) is a pair of two series-connected switches (also known as half-bridge normally with complementary states) in an SG (in **Figure 4-8(a)**, SG_1 has two SCs, while SG_2 has one SC). A simplified graphical representation is the figure of ANPC topology with only labels of SGs and SCs and colors indicating operation modes as shown in **Figure 4-8(i)**. Based on the same idea, any *N*-level ANPC topologies can be represented as such simplified forms.

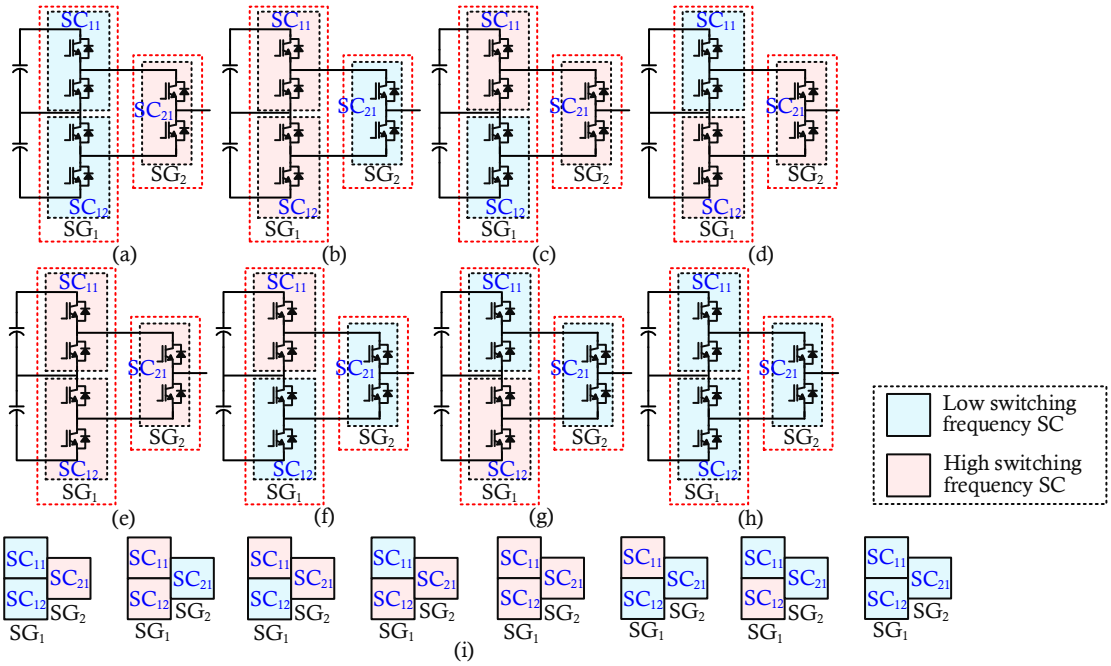


Figure 4-8 All possible PWM patterns of 3L ANPC (a) 3L-PWM-1, (b) 3L-PWM-2, (c) 3L-PWM-3, (d) 3L-PWM-4, (e) 3L-PWM-5, (f) 3L-PWM-6, (g) 3L-PWM-7, (h) 3L-PWM-8. (i) Simplified representations of corresponding 3L PWM patterns.

As for some ANPC-based converters with hybrid structures , similar representations can also be obtained. The concepts of SC and SG are generalized according to the original topologies. For

instance, in **Figure 4-9**, the 5L hybrid-clamped converter and the simplified 5L ANPC converter are demonstrated. The extended switching parts are highlighted by yellow color as the generalized SCs and are substituted for the high-frequency SCs of the original 3L ANPC converter. And the simplified graphical representations show some resemblances with 3L cases. In such a way, the representation of ANPC-based converters can be unified in the same framework with conventional ANPC topologies. In the following sections, special efforts will be given for conventional ones first. Then, it can be generalized for their derivatives, i.e. hybrid-structure ANPC-based converters.

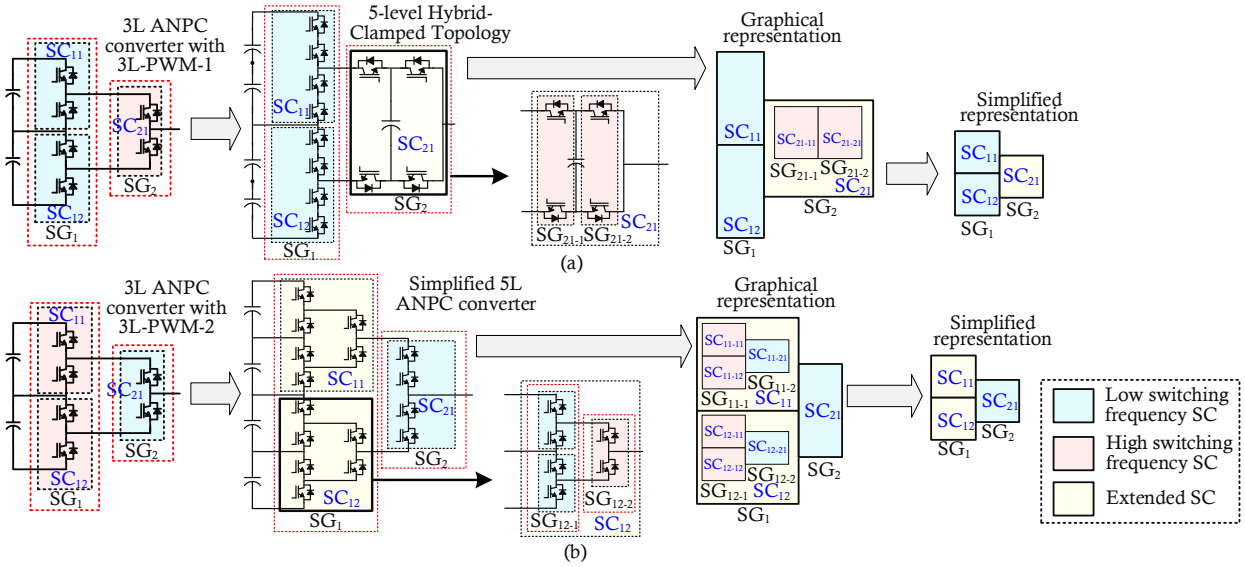


Figure 4-9 The simplified graphical representations of ANPC-based converters with hybrid structures. (a) The 5-level hybrid clamped converter extended from 3L ANPC converter with 3L-PWM-1, (b) the simplified 5L ANPC converter extended from 3L ANPC converter with 3L-PWM-2.

B. Topology similarities in ANPC-based converters

In this section, the identical circuits in conventional ANPC converters are investigated. As demonstrated in **Figure 4-10**, both types of identical circuits can be found in ANPC converters. In **Figure 4-10(a)**, it can be found as a 4L sub-topology within the 5L ANPC case. Meanwhile, another identical circuits between two converters can be found as a 3L sub-topology within in this 4L sub-topology. Such iterative similarities commonly exist in a ANPC topology (e.g. **Figure 4-10(a)** and **(b)**), especially when it has a high number of output levels.

In **Figure 4-10(c)-(g)**, the identical circuits within a single converter are shown with different varieties. For a 5L ANPC converter. The non-overlapping internal identical 3L sub-topologies can be found in vertical (**Figure 4-10(c)**), inclined (**Figure 4-10(d)**), horizontal (**Figure 4-10(e)**)

ways. While the overlapping internal identical 4L sub-topologies is shown in **Figure 4-10(f)** and 3L sub-topologies is shown in **Figure 4-10(g)**.

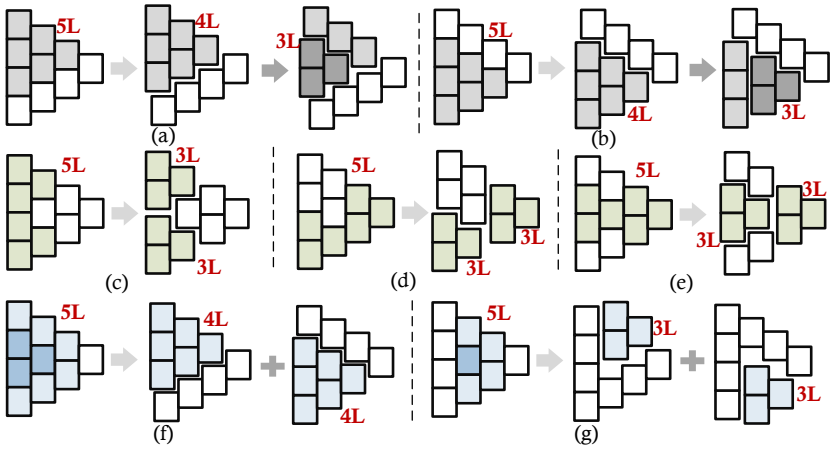


Figure 4-10 Identical circuits in a conventional 5L ANPC converter. (a) Identical circuits between two converters, (b) some other identical circuits between two converters, (c)-(e) some non-overlapping identical 3L sub-topologies in a 5L ANPC converter, (f) overlapping identical 4L sub-topologies in a 5L ANPC converter, (g) overlapping identical 3L sub-topologies in a 5L ANPC converter.

C. Similarities in ANPC PWM design

To date, various PWM methods have been proposed for ANPC converters, such as basic modulation schemes, fault-tolerant controls, loss distribution balancing modulation, etc. However, these existing PWM schemes mainly focus on 3L ANPC topologies. Compared to space vector modulation (SVM) methods with difficulties for high-level ANPC topologies, carrier-based PWM (CB-PWM) schemes are much easier to be implemented for ANPC topology due to the inherent scalability, modularity, and less computational burden. However, even for a 3L ANPC topology, there are several CB-PWM schemes with respect to different switching operation modes [97]. It can be naturally deduced that a lot more CB-PWM patterns exist in an ANPC topology with a higher number of output levels. However, only limited patterns are derived by now. Such an incomplete list of converters PWM patterns might lead to non-optimal PWM design. For ANPC topology with more than three voltage levels (i.e. four-level (4L) or higher), the general PWM design method is still missing.

One of the major challenges in PWM design for ANPC topologies is to identify numerous PWM patterns in a thorough and systematic way. To achieve such goal, the identical circuits between two converters can be utilized. As briefly shown in **Figure 4-10(a)** and **(b)**, a 4L sub-topology can be found in 5L ANPC converter, which indicates the operation patterns of this sub-topology can be included in the 5L system. Therefore, the PWM design process can be significantly simplified by iteratively utilizing the existent PWM patterns of lower-level topologies. In addition, some

established PWM schemes can also be implemented if they are the identical circuits between two converters in the targeted topology. In such a way, the generalized modularity can be obtained in ANPC converters, similar to modular MLCs (mentioned in **Section 4.1.1-A**).

Furthermore, identical circuits within a single converter can also help to simplify the PWM design process. First, by utilizing the half-cycle symmetry in ANPC topologies, only the circuits associated with positive or negative cycle are needed to be considered, while the counterpart can follow the same modulation logic. This feature has been well addressed by numerous papers and become the common sense in power converter. Second, for those asymmetrical but identical sub-topologies, they can still share the same logic, just like the modules in CHB converter or MMC (this will be investigated in **Section 4.3** with generalized phase-shift PWM).

In the next sections, the systematic PWM design method will be elaborated in detail.

4.1.3 Systematic PWM design procedure

In practice, one of the functions of modulation algorithm is to generate the required output waveforms. Therefore, these modulations are normally focused on the external features of the converters, e.g. the output power quality on AC or DC terminals. For conventional two-level converter, all devices could be fully utilized to achieve such purpose since there are very limited redundant switching states. However, for MLCs, the number of redundant switching states could be very high, therefore, only few states might be utilized for output within one switching cycle. On the other hand, the redundancies provide various device utilization patterns, resulting in different performance within a converter. Up to now, the modulations focused on the external performance of MLCs have been thoroughly investigated. However, the modulations of internal performance of MLCs are highly dependent on the topologies, while the associated systematic PWM design methods are still not clear.

A. Operation principles of ANPC converters

To design proper carrier-based PWM for ANPC converters, the general operating principles during whole output ranges are investigated and can be considered an extension of [96].

Principle 1: For an arbitrary N-level ANPC, two adjacent levels (e.g. i-level and (i-1)-level, $i \leq N$) are always expected to be produced to achieve better voltage quality and low dv/dt. To systematically indicate the SCs that participate in two output adjacent levels, device utilization modes are identified accordingly.

For 4L ANPC topology, there are four levels named as L4, L3, L2, L1. To output two adjacent levels, the participated SCs follow three device utilization modes named as 4L-M1 (**Figure 4-11(a)**), 4L-M2 (**Figure 4-11(b)**), 4L-M3 (**Figure 4-11(c)**). To output [L1, L2], at least one of the following cells SC_{13}, SC_{22}, SC_{31} (highlighted by yellow) must be utilized, while SC_{12} and SC_{21} (light grey) could be utilized as shown in **Figure 4-11(a)**. SC_{11} (no color) has nothing to do with the associated output region. To output [L2, L3], at least one of the following cells SC_{12}, SC_{21}, SC_{22}, SC_{31} must be utilized, while SC_{11} and SC_{13} could be utilized as shown in **Figure 4-11(b)**. To output [L3, L4], at least one of SC_{11}, SC_{21}, SC_{31} must be utilized in the current paths. At the same time, SC_{12}, SC_{22} could also be utilized. The SC_{13} cannot affect this output region.

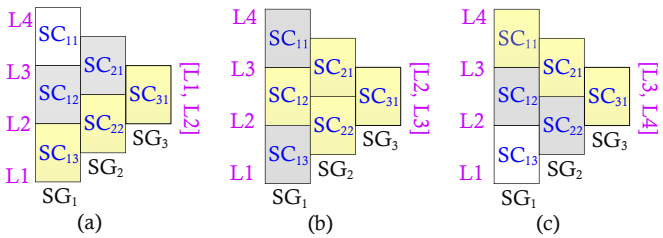


Figure 4-11 Three device utilization modes of 4L ANPC: (a) 4L-M1, (b) 4L-M2, (c) 4L-M3.

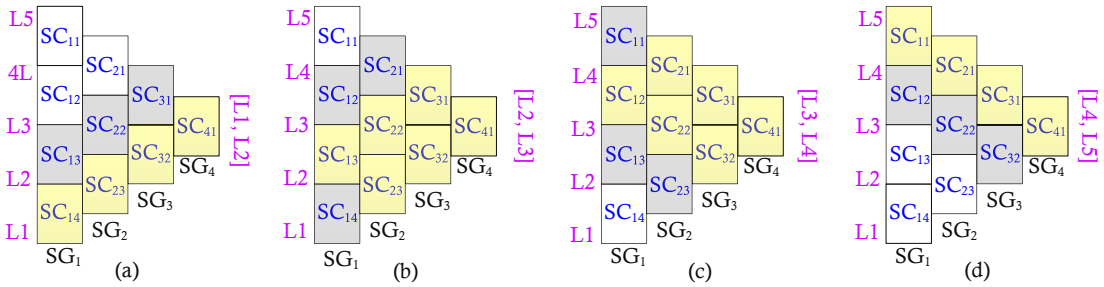


Figure 4-12 Four device utilization modes of 5L ANPC: (a) 5L-M1, (b) 5L-M2, (c) 5L-M3, (d) 5L-M4.

For 5L ANPC topology, there are five levels named as L5, L4, L3, L2, L1. To output two adjacent levels, the participating SCs follow four device utilization modes named as 5L-M1 (**Figure 4-12(a)** for [L1, L2]), 5L-M2 (**Figure 4-12(b)** for [L2, L3]), 5L-M3 (**Figure 4-12(c)** for [L3, L4]), 5L-M4 (**Figure 4-12(d)** for [L4, L5]). Similar to the 4L case, all yellow/light grey SCs can be utilized for associated levels, while the SCs without any color will not be associated with these levels.

Principle 2: To guarantee the expected PWM waveforms, the operation mode of ANPC topology should be *effective*, which means there is at least one SC operating at HSF during every output region. Such a requirement is naturally indicated when designing a carrier-based PWM.

Although different modulation methods were proposed in the literature, only a small number of PWM schemes associated with certain operation modes are considered. In [217], a specific PWM scheme is introduced by applying the virtual-vector concept for a 4L ANPC. In [96], another operation mode is proposed for a general *N*-level converter leg, changing the states of *N* switches between the transition of two adjacent switching states. Many more operation modes are remained to be derived. This non-exhaustive list will likely lead to unfair conclusions and non-optimal overall system operation.

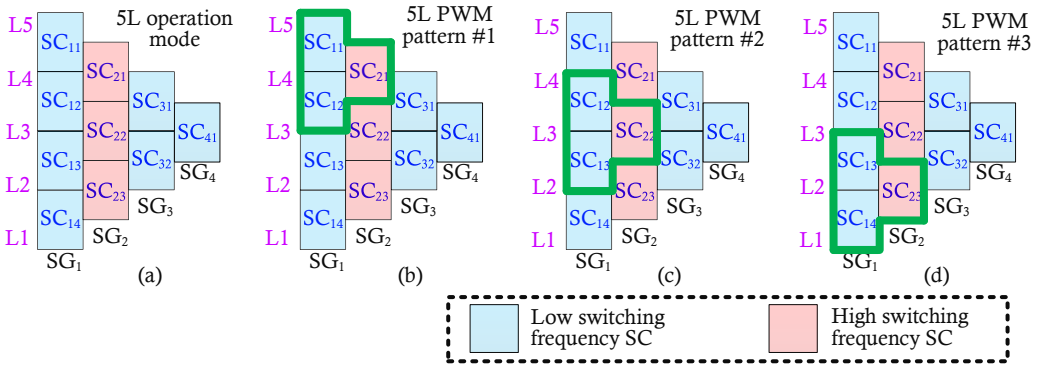


Figure 4-13 (a) 5L operation mode with SG2 operating at HSF, (b) 5L PWM pattern #1, (c) 5L PWM pattern #2, (d) 5L PWM pattern #3.

Moreover, even for the same operation mode, there could be various PWM patterns leading to various PWM schemes. Take a specific operation mode of 5L ANPC topology as an example. Assuming that there are three SCs (SC_{21}, SC_{22}, SC_{23}) operating at HSF (see **Figure 4-13(a)**), the different utilization of SCs during adjacent levels implies three different PWM patterns as shown in **Figure4-13(b)~(d)**. The green boxes indicate three possible different 3L modules in the same operation mode. The 3L modules can be operated with the known 3L PWM pattern shown in **Figure4-8(a)**. Since each 3L module is for different output regions, for each pattern, the duration of HSF SCs is different, which implies different schemes.

B. PWM design procedure

To systematically design a complete list of PWM schemes for ANPC converter, one method is to exhaustively search all the possible operation modes one by one and carry out PWM design process for each of them. This can greatly increase the complexity of the PWM design process, particularly when the number of voltage level is high. To avoid this problem, a systematic PWM design approach with three simple steps is proposed based on hierarchical decomposition as shown in **Figure 4-14**. In step-1, the hierarchical decompositions are derived thoroughly. In step-2, effective PWM patterns can be implemented for sub-topologies in each hierarchical decomposition

result. In step-3, the modularized modulation can be designed for each sub-topology by utilizing the carrier-based PWM with a modular evolution from low-level to high-level ANPC converters. This three-step procedure is introduced as following.

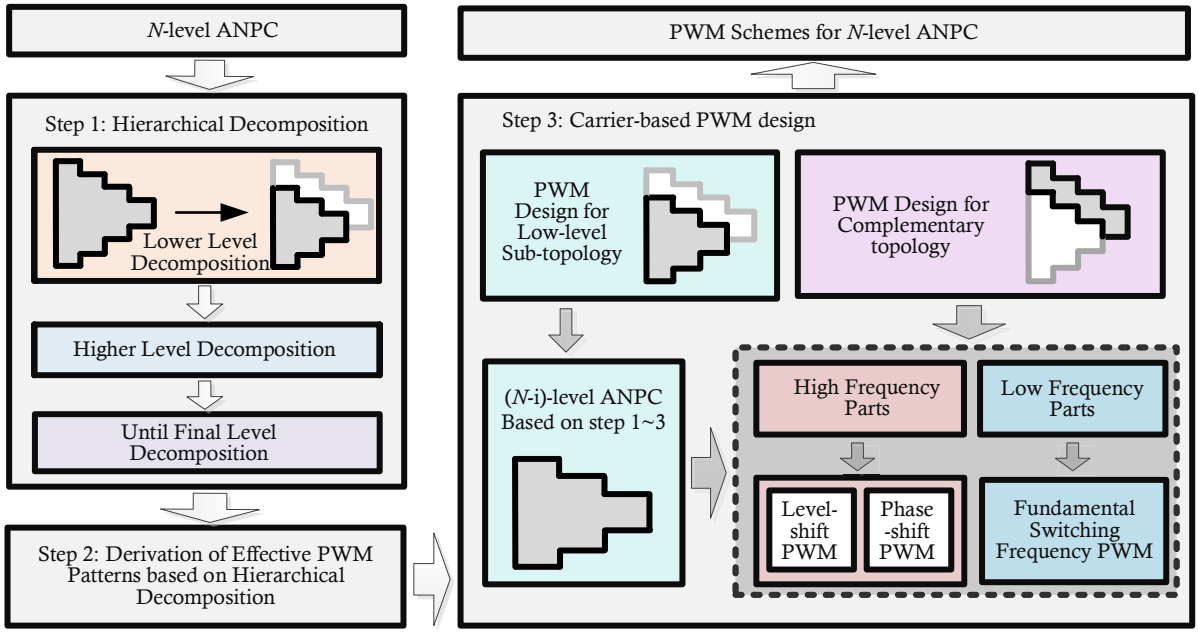


Figure 4-14 The PWM design procedure based on hierarchical decomposition.

HIERARCHICAL DECOMPOSITION

The first step of PWM design is presented here to decompose the *N*-level ANPC topology into sub-topologies. The basic idea of decomposition for ANPC-based converters is to hierarchically decompose the original large complex circuit into several down-scale circuits (see **Figure 4-15**). In this paper, hierarchical decomposition is to split *N*-level ANPC topology into two non-overlapping sub-topologies (which have no common SCs), one is $N-i$ level conventional ANPC (N and i are integers), the other one is complementary topology. The associated results can be called as i^{th} Level Decomposition (i^{th}-D).

Based on this principle, a 4L ANPC topology has in total three decomposition results as shown in **Figure 4-16(a)**. There are two types of different decompositions, one is to separate only the upper and lower one (first two in (a)), another one is to separate the rightmost one (last one in (a)). The first one requires all sub-topologies have at least one HSF SC to guarantee the normal operation, while the second one only requires the rightmost one to have at least one HSF SC. Two examples are shown in **Figure 4-16(b)** covering 5L ANPC topology based on the same approach. The decomposition can be derived in the order: i_1^{st}-D, i_2^{nd}-D, i_3^{rd}-D, ..., i_k^{th}-D ($i_1<i_2<i_3<\ldots<i_k\leq N-3$). For example, when N is equal to 5, the decomposition order could be 1^{st}-D, 2^{nd}-D. Here the First

Level Decomposition (1st-D) is to split the 5-level ANPC topology into two sub-topologies, and one of them is 4-level ANPC topology. While different processes of the same decomposed level may result in the same decomposition as shown in **Figure 4-16(c)**. For an *N*-level ANPC topology, this iterative process can continue until the last sub-topology is a three-level ANPC converter.

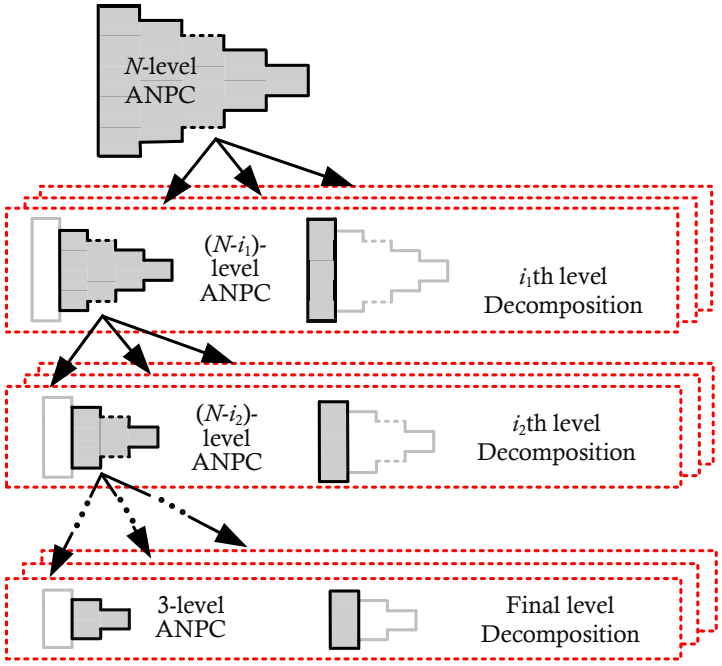


Figure 4-15 Hierarchical decomposition for ANPC-based topology.

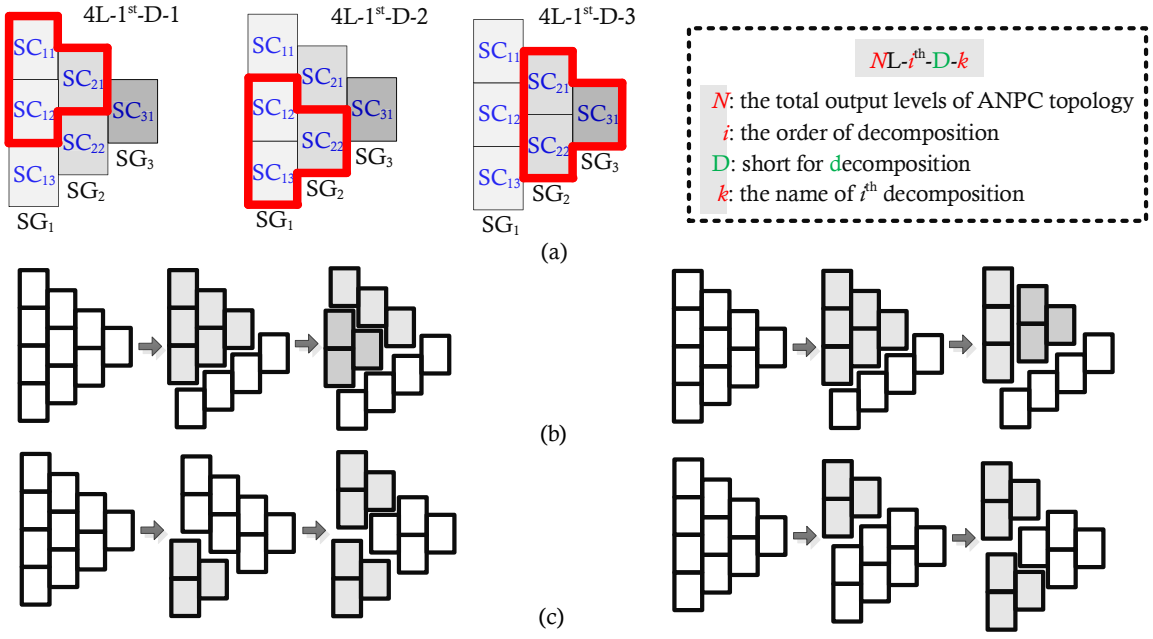


Figure 4-16 (a) Three first level decompositions of 4L ANPC topology, (b) two different topological decomposition examples of 5L topology, (c) two decomposition process results in the same decomposition of 5L topology.

PATTERN DERIVATION

The second step of PWM design is to derive effective PWM patterns of an ANPC topology through combinations of low-level PWM patterns and hierarchical decomposition results.

To easily obtain all the effective PWM patterns, low-level PWM patterns are utilized as much as possible. In order to ensure the effectiveness of derived PWM patterns, the operation modes of sub-topologies should be effective during associated output regions. Take a 4L ANPC as an example, there are three 1st-Ds as shown in **Figure 4-16**. In such a way, a 4-level ANPC topology can be considered as an iterative representation based on 3L ANPC cells regardless of whatever potential operation modes are applied. For a 3L ANPC topology, there are five PWM patterns that can guarantee effective operation of whole voltage output ranges with the pulse-width modulated process as shown in **Figure 4-8(a)~(e)** [97], [218] (detailed discussion will be provided in the design example section).

After utilizing all possible PWM patterns of 3L ANPC, various 4L PWM patterns can be derived. The detailed tables are presented in the **Appendix-B**. The HSF SCs are indicated as "1", while the LSF SCs are noted by "0". Note that there are patterns have their SCs in the same SG operating at the same mode (HSF or LSF). They can be referred to as SG-based PWM patterns as shown in **Figure 4-17**. From the design modularity point of view, each SG can be considered as a power electronic building block and is easy to control. Besides, the operation decoupling feature could facilitate the converter design, enabling proper device selection and optimized thermal management. In the next section, PWM design for 4L SG-based PWM patterns will be demonstrated in detail.

Furthermore, the derivation process of PWM patterns of an arbitrary N-level ANPC can be carried out in a similar way. The i^{th} level decomposition can be derived through one of the possible iterative processes. Both the $N–i$ level conventional ANPC and the complementary topology should operate with effective modes to guarantee there is at least one SC operating at HSF during every output region. Through the proposed process, various PWM patterns can be systematically obtained. The completeness of this pattern derivations can be proved as shown in **Appendix-C**.

IMPLEMENTATIONS

As a third step, the PWM schemes are developed for each PWM patterns. For HSF SCs in various PWM patterns, pulse-width modulation schemes should be designed to produce the modulation reference. Two types of multicarrier-based PWM can be implemented [85], i.e. level-shift (LS) PWM, phase-shift (PS) PWM. In [25], PS PWM named doubled frequency PWM can be applied for 3L ANPC topology to achieve a better loss distribution compared with LS PWM. Based on the proposed PWM design method, this PWM method can be easily implemented for ANPC topology

more than three levels. Since 3L sub-topology can always be derived from a higher-level ANPC topology, the basic PWM logic will remain to be the same as 3L case, while the arrangement of gating signals should be modified according to the decomposition results.

For an *N*-level ANPC, PWM patterns can be derived through the combination of available *i*-level ANPC PWM pattern and complementary PWM for the SCs of the complementary topology in step 3. Assuming in step 2, one possible combination of *i*-level ANPC PWM pattern and complementary PWM pattern is derived through *N*L-*i*th-D-*m* (obtained from step 1). While the PWM scheme of *i*-level sub-topology is assumed have already been designed. For HSF SCs in complementary topology, LS PWM can be easily applied. For LSF SCs in PWM patterns, modulation processes should assist the operation of HSF parts and maintain the appropriate device bearing voltages. Through this iterative design process, an exhaustive list of CB-PWM schemes from *N*-level ANPC till 4L ANPC converters can be designed systematically. In such a way, new opportunities can be obtained to achieve different performance objectives. The detailed discussion will be presented in the next section with several design examples.

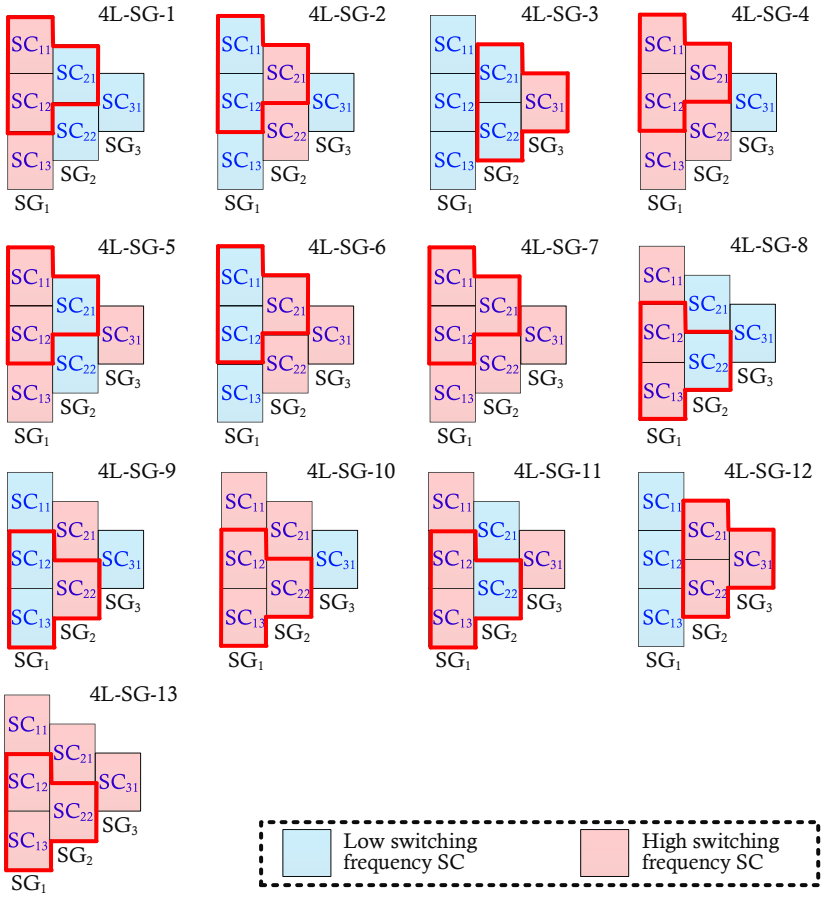


Figure 4-17 Thirteen SG-based 4L PWM patterns.

4.2. Carrier-based PWM design examples

4.2.1 Existing carrier-based PWM for 3L ANPC

For 3L ANPC, there are four PWM patterns of which the LS PWM can be easily applied as shown in **Figure 4-8 (a)~(d)**. In [97], the first two PWM schemes **(Figure 4-8 (a) and (b)**) are referred as modulation 2 (**Figure 4-18(a)**), modulation 1 (**Figure 4-18(b)**), and are analyzed in detail.

For the pattern 3L-PWM-3 in **Figure 4-18(c)**, a modified LS-PWM is introduced. The gating signal generation principles are shown in **Figure 4-18(c)**. There are two carriers and each one should be compared with the voltage reference (red). The upper carrier is for SC_{11} and SC_{21}, while the lower carrier is for SC_{21}. In such a way, SC_{11} and SC_{21} share the same gating signals when the converter outputs [0, $V_{dc}/2$]. Similar scheme (see **Figure 4-18(d)**) can be designed for 3L-PWM-4 in **Figure 4-8(d)**. while SC_{12} and SC_{21} share the same gating signals when the converter outputs [$-V_{dc}/2$, 0].

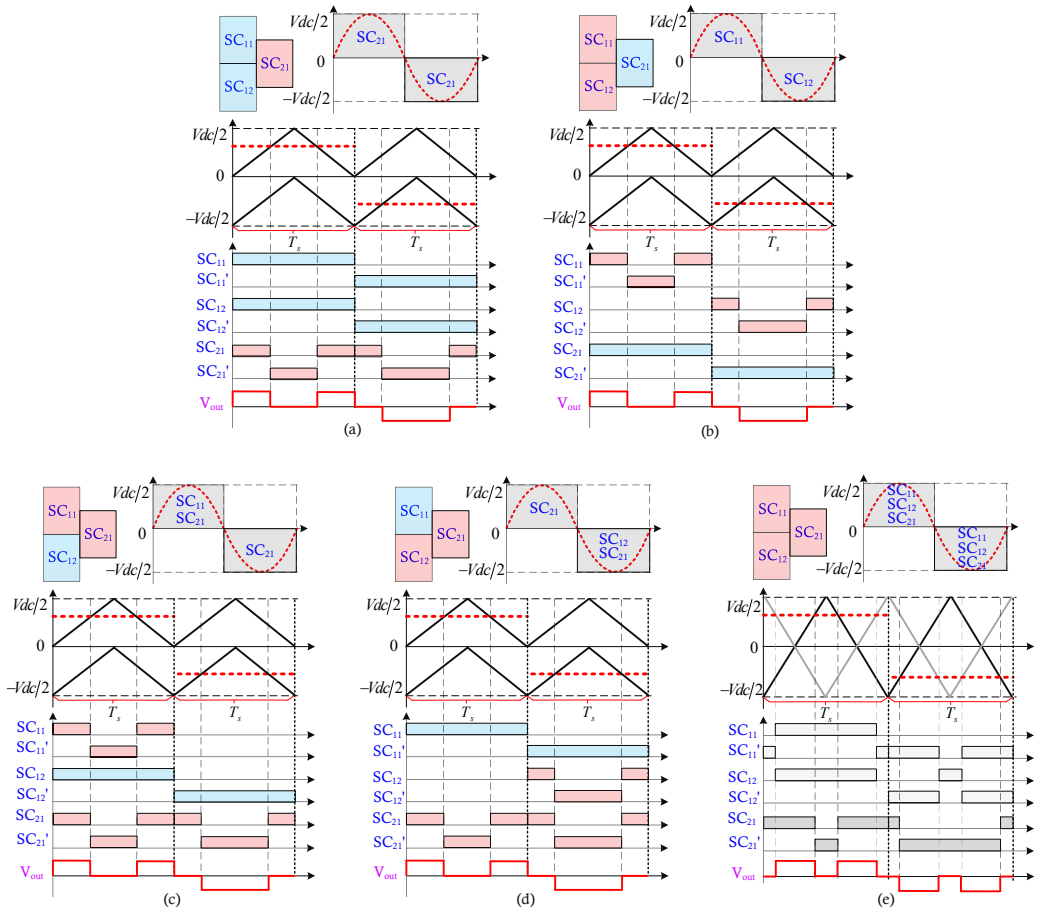


Figure 4-18 Carrier-based PWM for 3L ANPC under: (a) 3L-PWM-1, (b) 3L-PWM-2, (c) 3L-PWM-3, (d) 3L-PWM-4, (e) 3L-PWM-5.

PS PWM with doubled equivalent inverter frequency can be applied for pattern 3L-PWM-5 (see **Figure 4-8(e)**), While it can also be seen as a mixture of the modulation 1 and modulation 2 in one carrier period [219]. The gating signals are shown in **Figure 4-18(e)**. The gate signal for SC_{12}' is "0" when reference is positive, while SC_{11}=SC_{12}=NOT(SC_{11}'). As for negative cycle, the SC_{11} will maintain as "0", while SC_{11}'=SC_{12}'=NOT(SC_{12}).

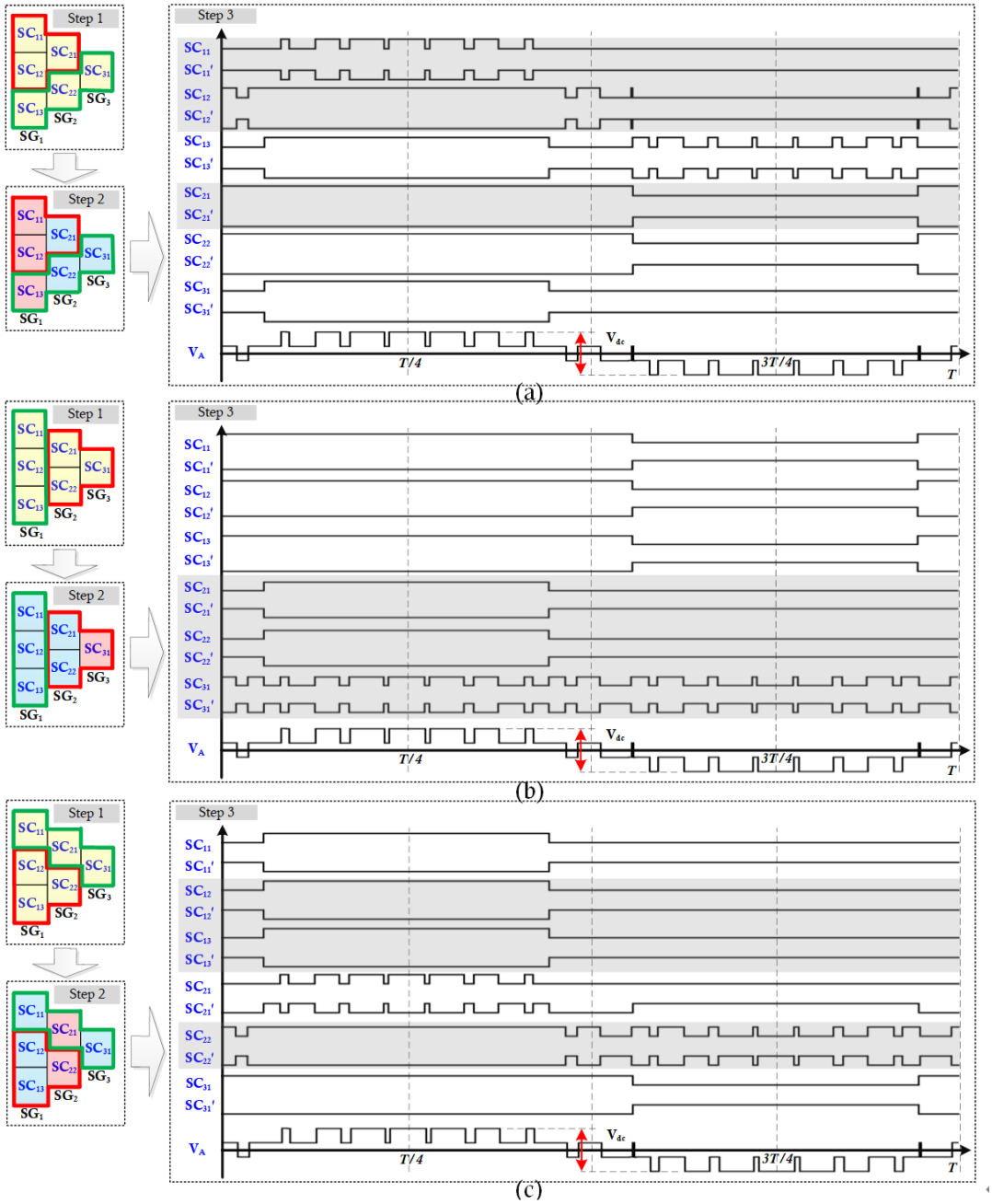


Figure 4-19 Carrier-based PWM under (a) 4L-SG-1, (b) 4L-SG-3, (c) 4L-SG-9.

4.2.2 Carrier-based PWM design for 4-level ANPC

Based on the proposed method, carrier-based PWM can be easily designed for 4L ANPC topology. In **Figure 4-19**, there are three patterns named 4L-SG-1, 4L-SG-3, 4L-SG-9, with associated LS PWM. They are all SG-based PWM patterns as summarized in **Figure 4-17**. In 4L-SG-1, the LS PWM is applied for SG_1. In 4L-SG-3, the LS PWM is applied for SG_3, and the LS PWM is applied for SG_2 in 4L-SG-9. The shadowed areas in **Figure 4-19** are corresponding to 3L ANPC patterns utilized in 4L PWM design.

To verify these three designed PWM schemes, one phase leg of the 4L ANPC is built in the lab (see **Figure 4-20**). The associated experimental parameters are listed in Table 4-I.

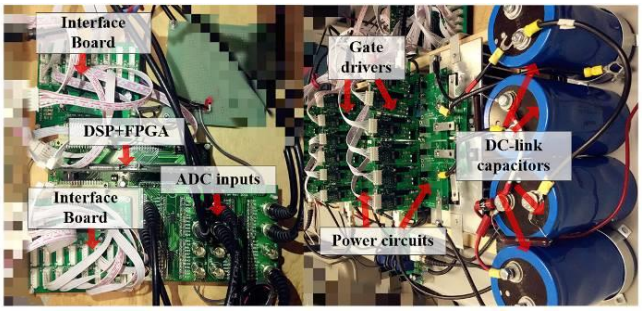


Figure 4-20 Single-phase 4L ANPC prototype.

Table 4-I Experimental Parameters

Parameters	Values
Rated Line voltage 4L	41 V
Rated Line voltage 5L	55 V
Rated Power	500 VA
DC supply for 4L	20V*3=60 V
DC supply for 5L	20V*4=80 V
Equivalent dc capacitor	1000μF
Output impedance	5mH/16Ω
Fundamental frequency	50Hz
Equivalent switching frequency	1560Hz
Carrier frequency for carrier-based PWM of 4L PWM pattern	f_{s1}: 1560Hz f_{s2}: 780Hz
Carrier frequency for carrier-based PWM of 5L PWM pattern	f_{s3}: 1560Hz f_{s4}: 780Hz

Experiments of three cases (4L-SG-1, 4L-SG-3, 4L-SG-9) are carried out respectively. For each case, three modulation indexes (M.I) are applied to demonstrate the PWM can guarantee the

proper output modulated voltages (M.I=1, 0.6, 0.2). As shown in **Figure 4-21**, despite the different assignment of HSF SCs and LSF SCs, the designed PWM schemes for three PWM patterns have the identical output waveforms during the full operation ranges. The equivalent switching frequency is maintained to be 1560Hz during the whole operation range. For each HSF SCs in the same SGs, the same gating signals can be implemented to further simplify the PWM schemes as shown in **Figure 4-19**. The SCs which are not utilized during certain operation regions will switch ON/OFF without bearing load currents, thus, no extra power loss is introduced.

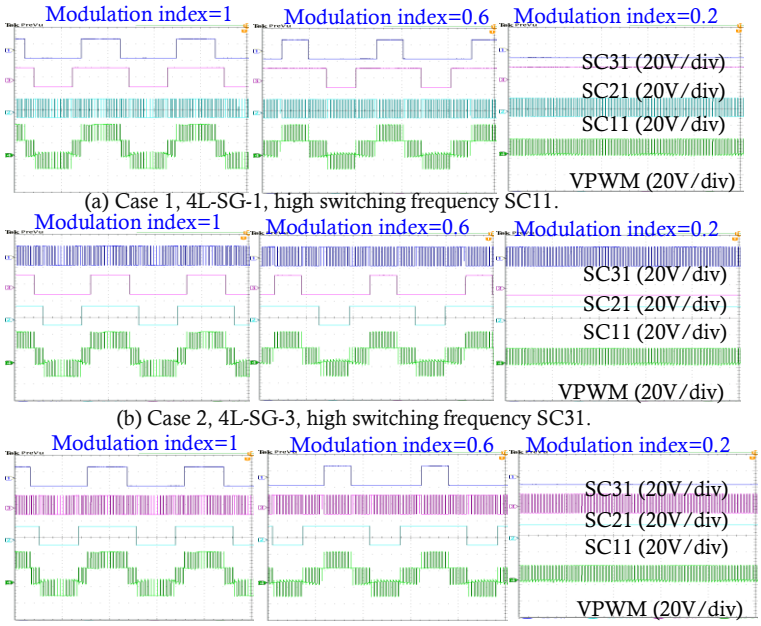


Figure 4-21 Experimental results of case 1~3. From top to bottom: gating signals of SC31, SC21, SC11, the PWM voltage of 4L ANPC converter.

Besides of SG-based PWM patterns, schemes for other patterns can also be designed through the same approach. In **Figure 4-22**, the derivation process of pattern 4L-PWM-1-5-2 is shown based on the decomposition 4-1st-D-1.

The carrier-based PWM is achieved through a combination of PS PWM for 3L ANPC and LS PWM for 4L ANPC. The gating signals of designed carrier-based PWM is shown in **Figure 4-22**. To output [-V_{dc}/6, V_{dc}/2], PS-PWM is designed for HSF SCs (SC_{11}, SC_{12}, SC_{21}) based on 3L-PWM-5. To output [-V_{dc}/2, -V_{dc}/6], LS PWM is designed for HSF SC_{31}. To realize the same equivalent switching frequency during the whole operation ranges, the carrier frequency for PS PWM is designed to be half of the LS PWM.

To verify the designed PWM scheme for 4L-PWM-1-5-2, the experimental verification is also carried out based on the same platform. To maintain the same equivalent switching frequency as

in case 1~3, two carrier frequencies are chosen as f_{s1}=1560Hz (SC_{22}), f_{s2}=780Hz (SC_{11}, SC_{12}, SC_{21}). For the experiment results of 4L-PWM-1-5-2 (see **Figure 4-23**), the doubling of equivalent switching frequency can be observed during output region [$-V_{dc}/6$, $V_{dc}/2$], which is consistent with the scheme of 3L-PWM-5. The designed LS PWM and associated fundamental switching frequency modulation are achieved in the rest region. Since the carrier frequency of SC_{11}, SC_{12}, SC_{21} is only half of SC_{22} for 4L-PWM-1-5-2, the device utilization is different compared to PWM patterns shown in **Figure 4-19**. While all four cases have similar power quality performance as shown in **Figure 4-24** (THD difference is within 0.3%) if the same equivalent switching frequency is implemented.

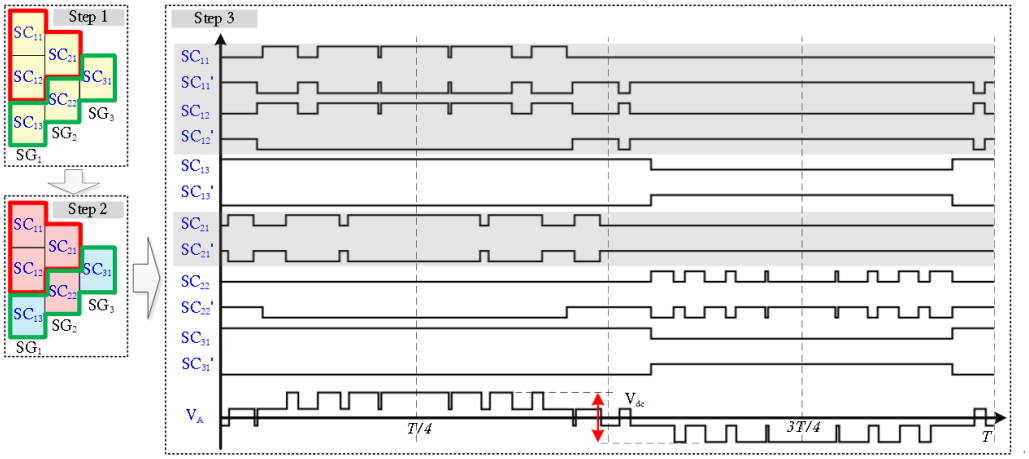


Figure 4-22 Carrier-based PWM for 4L ANPC with pattern 4L-PWM-1-5-2.

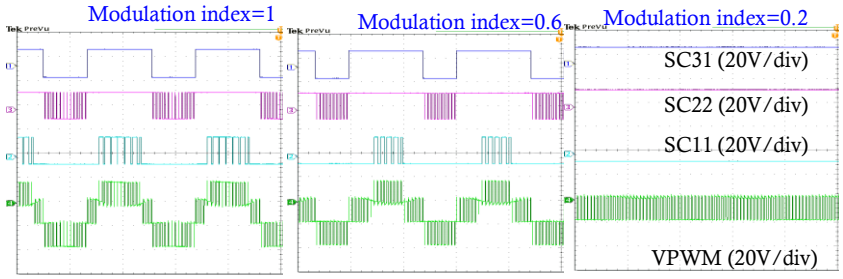


Figure 4-23 Experimental results of case 4 (4L-PWM-1-5-2). From top to bottom: gating signals of SC31, SC22, SC11, the PWM voltage of 4L ANPC converter.

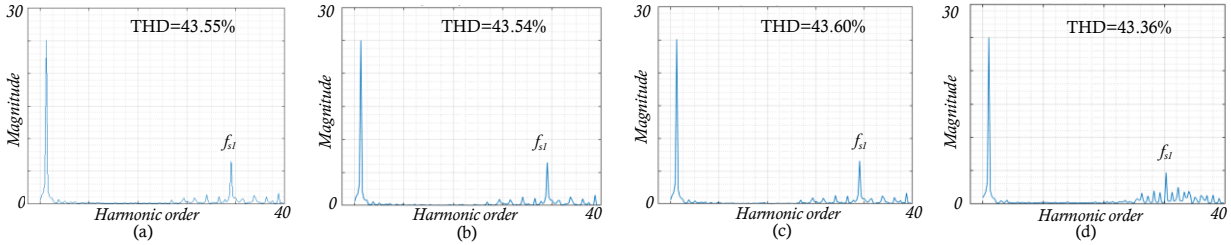


Figure 4-24 FFT results of PWM voltages of (a) case 1, (b) case 2, (3) case 3, (4) case 4 with modulation index equals to 1.

4.2.3 Carrier-based PWM design for 5-level ANPC

As for 5L ANPC converter, three cases (5L-SG-1, 5L-SG-3, 5L-SG-9) are chosen as demonstrated examples as shown in **Figure 4-25**. The associated PWM schemes can be designed based on 4L cases according to our proposed design method (SG_1 is at LSF, while the rest SGs are the same as 4L examples). To verify the designed PWM schemes, one phase leg of the 5L ANPC is built in the lab (see **Figure 4-26**). The associated experimental parameters are listed in Table 4-I.

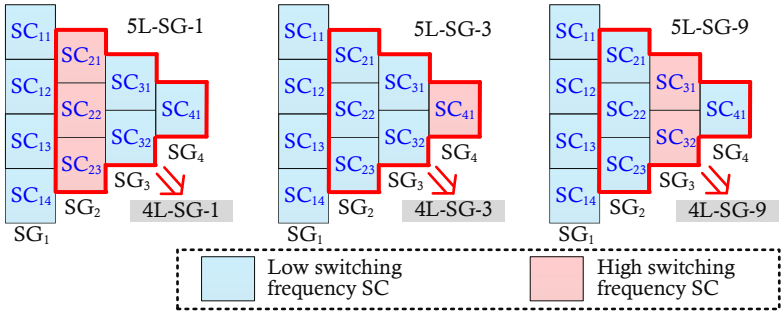


Figure 4-25 Three SG-based 5L PWM patterns.

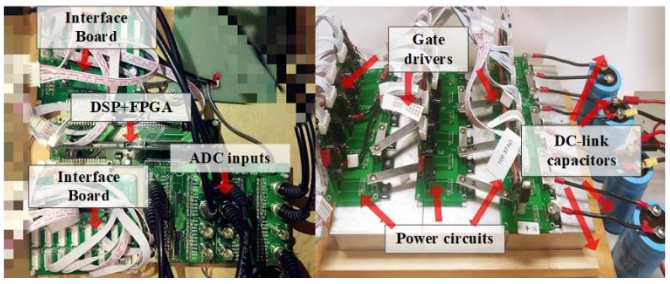


Figure 4-26 Single-phase 5L ANPC prototype.

Besides of SG-based PWM patterns, in **Figure 4-27**, the derivation process of another 5L PWM pattern is shown. The carrier-based PWM can be designed through the combination of a PWM scheme for 4L-PWM-1-5-2 and LS PWM for 5L ANPC as shown in **Figure 4-27**. Note that this 4L PWM pattern has been designed in **Figure 4-22** and can be directly utilized for 5L PWM design with minor modification. Therefore, the PWM design of the 5L example is dramatically simplified. To output [$V_{dc}/4$, $V_{dc}/2$], LS PWM is designed for HSC SC_{31}. To output [$-V_{dc}/2$, $V_{dc}/4$], carrier-based PWM is designed for HSF SCs (SC_{12}, SC_{13}, SC_{22}, SC_{23}) based on 4L-PWM-1-5-2.

To verify these four PWM schemes, the experimental verification is also carried out based on the one phase platform. Three M.I (1, 0.6, 0.2) are applied to demonstrate the PWM can guarantee the proper outputs as shown in **Figure 4-28** and **4-29**. Two carrier frequencies are used to realize the same equivalent switching frequency for case 8: one is 780Hz for SC_{31} and SC_{23}, the other one is 1560Hz for SC_{22}, SC_{23}, SC_{32}. Similar to 4L scenarios, all four 5L design cases have similar power quality performance as shown in **Figure 4-30** if the same equivalent switching frequency

is implemented. While the dominant harmonic of PWM pattern case 8 has a slightly lower magnitude compared to others. Since the equivalent switching frequency is doubled for this PWM scheme, the volume of output filter can be reduced if same switching frequency (e.g. 1560Hz) is implemented, while the switching losses are expected slightly higher since more SCs operates at HSF.

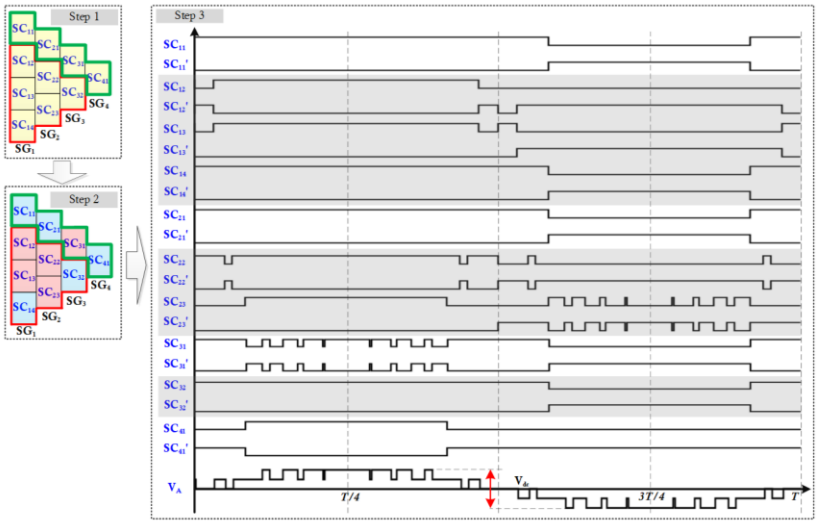
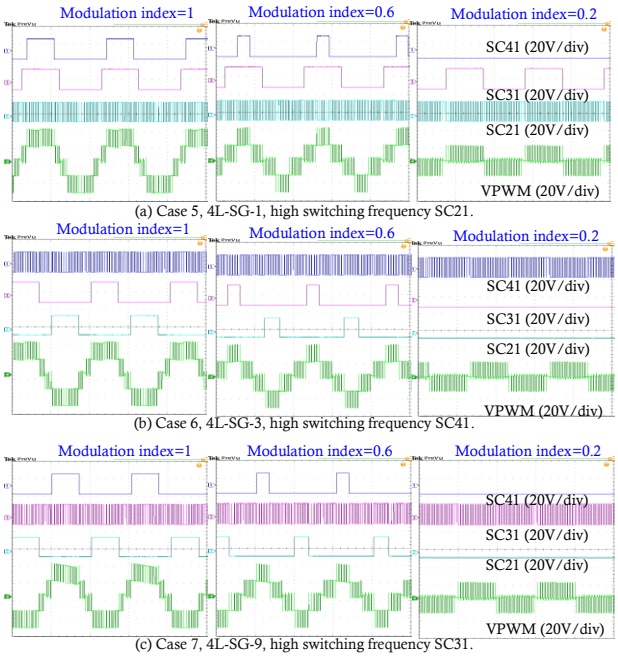


Figure 4-27 Carrier-based PWM for 5L ANPC case 8.



(a) Case 5, 4L-SG-1, high switching frequency SC21.

(b) Case 6, 4L-SG-3, high switching frequency SC41.

(c) Case 7, 4L-SG-9, high switching frequency SC31.

Figure 4-28 Experimental results of case 5~7. From top to bottom: gating signals of SC41, SC31, SC11, the PWM voltage of 5L ANPC converter.

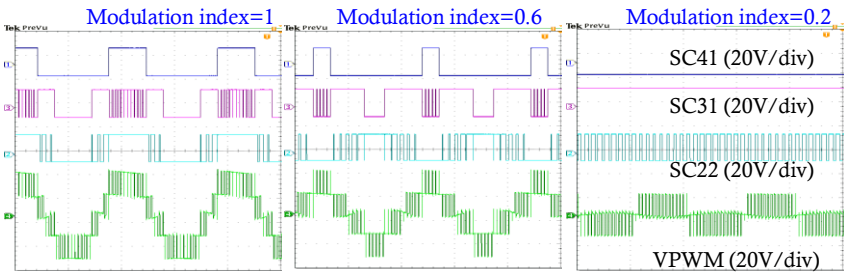


Figure 4-29 Experimental results of 5L ANPC case 8. From top to bottom: gating signals of SC41, SC31, SC22, the PWM voltage of 5L ANPC converter.

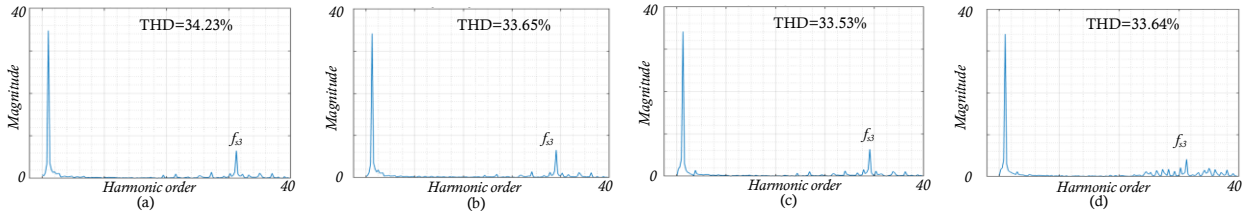


Figure 4-30 FFT results of PWM voltages of (a) case 5, (b) case 6, (3) case 7, (4) case 8 with modulation index equals to 1.

4.2.4 Generalization and discussions

For an *N*-level ANPC topology, there are a huge amount of PWM patterns, and each one is associated with a unique PWM scheme. As stated before, 110 PWM patterns for 4L ANPC converter results in 110 CB-PWM schemes (see **Appendix-B**). The number will increase dramatically for 5L ANPC converter, i.e. greater than 5000, and much bigger for higher-level ANPC topologies.

Let us take a very simple PWM pattern of an *N*-level ANPC topology as an example. It has only one HSF SC (SC_{n1}) as shown in **Figure 4-31**. After decomposition, an *N*-1-level ANPC PWM scheme can be utilized. And then, to realize *N*-1 level ANPC PWM, one can utilize *N*-2 level ANPC PWM. Such an iterative process can continue until the utilized PWM is for a 3-level pattern. Such that, the carrier-based LS PWM can be directly implemented for SC_{n1} as shown in **Figure 4-31**. Note that the resulting CB-PWM is similar to the work introduced for multilevel flying capacitor converters in [220], which is a special case in terms of the proposed method. While the signals of associated LSF SGs are assigned based on the *N*-1 bits binary number (total number is 2^{N-1}). The value "1" or "0" denotes the "ON" or "OFF" state of the upper switches of all SCs in associated SGs. To realize fundamental switching frequency modulation, the selected states can follow continuous Gray Code (only one binary number is different between any two adjacent codes) as shown in **Figure 4-31**.

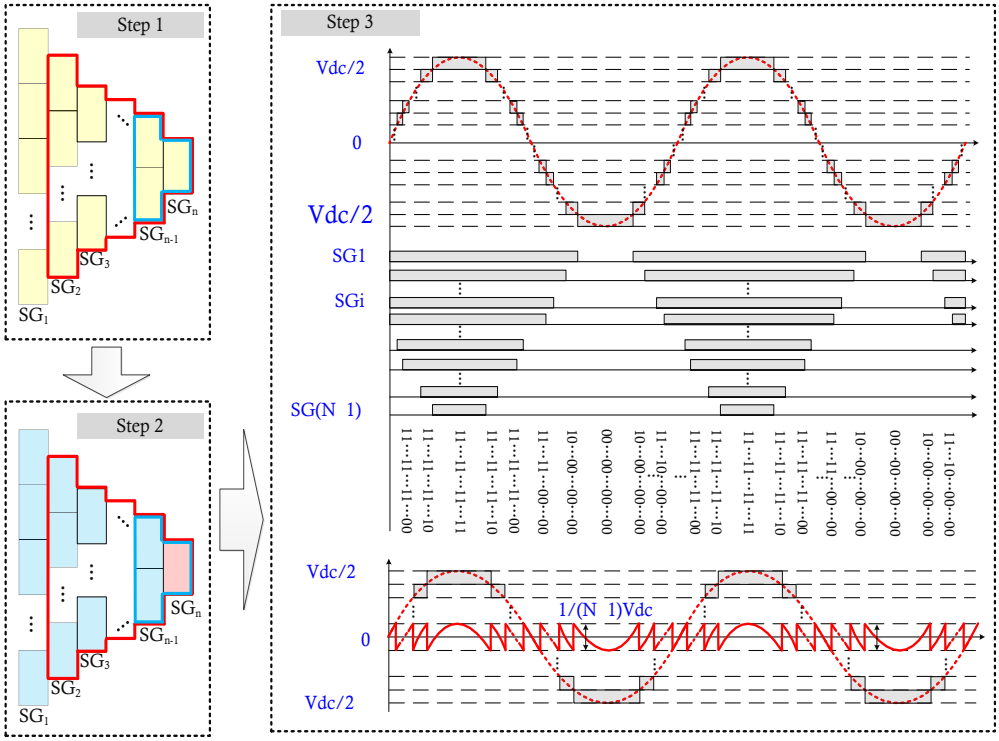


Figure 4-31 An N-level PWM pattern with only one HSF SC (SCn1) with a designed CB-PWM scheme (other cases are omitted here).

For an *N*-level ANPC pattern with multiple HSF SCs, other PWM schemes can also be designed. Low-level ANPC patterns can be utilized to reduce the design complexity. Therefore, the *N*-level ANPC PWM schemes can be realized by combining existing PWM schemes of the associated *i*-level ANPC PWM pattern (*i*<*N*, both PS PWM and LS PWM can be considered) with the complementary PWM schemes for the *N*-level topology.

With the proposed method, a large number of CB-PWM schemes can be designed systematically, bringing new opportunities to achieve a variety of composite control objectives. On one hand, the output waveforms of designed CB-PWM are the same if the same modulation reference is used. Hence, if only the output quality is considered, all the designed patterns are applicable. On the other hand, the operation of each SCs under the different PWM patterns can be different, leading to different loss distributions. This can be observed in a qualitative way as shown in **Figure 4-32**. For instance, even for the same operation mode (**Figure 4-32(c) and (d)**), the switching cells will have different switching losses, i.e., different thermal stress. Such differences will be significant when switching frequency is high.

In Table 4-II, the switching actions are summarized for three 4L patterns: **Figure 4-32(a), Figure 4-32(d), Figure 4-32(e)** with a ratio of inverter switching frequency/line frequency

around 24. It can be obviously observed that **Figure 4-32(a)** potentially has a better loss distribution in theory since the switching actions are distributed more balanced than the other two. While the switching losses are still dependent on the load currents (or power factor) through non-linear relationships [221]. For different types of devices and different power ratings, the relationship can vary largely.

The switching actions of HSF SCs are also related to M.I. With a high M.I, the upper and lower SCs will suffer increased loss. While a low M.I will even result in no actions for certain SCs since they will never be used in such conditions. For the low switching frequency devices, the dominant loss will be conduction loss which is highly related to load conditions.

Table 4-II Switching Action Numbers of SCs in Three 4L Patterns in One Fundamental Period

	Pattern in Figure 4-32(a)	Pattern in Figure 4-32(d)	Pattern in Figure 4-32(e)
SC_{11}	7	1	1
SC_{12}	5	1	1
SC_{13}	9	1	1
SC_{21}	1	7	1
SC_{22}	1	13	1
SC_{31}	1	1	19

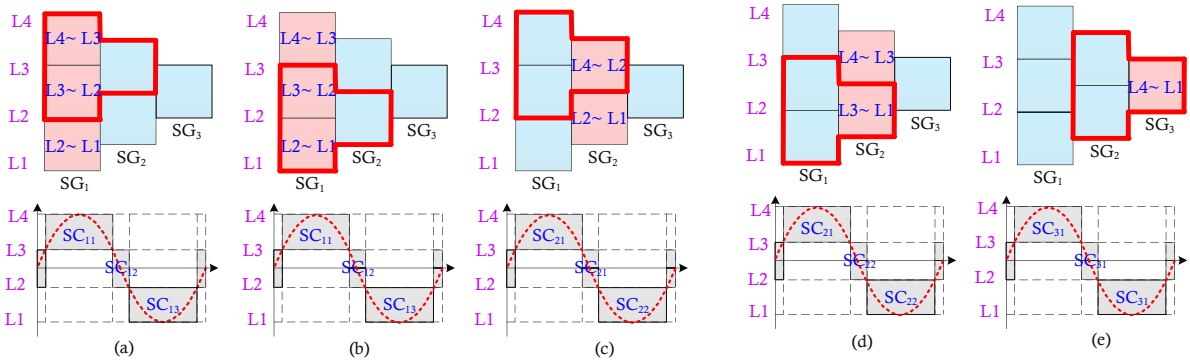


Figure 4-32 Different allocations of HSF SCs in various PWM patterns.

Another way to deal with uneven losses is to utilize complementary patterns to cooperate with each other. As shown in previous sections, each operation mode has a unique allocation of HSF/LSF SCs. For example, pattern in **Figure 4-32(a)** has SG_1 in HSF mode, while SG_2 and SG_3 in LSF mode; pattern in **Figure 4-32(d)** has SG_2 in HSF mode, while SG_1 and SG_3 in LSF mode; pattern in **Figure 4-32(e)** has SG_3 in HSF mode, while SG_1 and SG_2 in LSF mode. Combining

those three patterns and rotate them during a long time constant, one can equivalently operate the converter with all SCs in HSF mode. In such a way, all the SCs can be operated with a similar number of switching actions and share the loss more evenly. Moreover, such complementary patterns can be easily found in the derived complete list of patterns and have many freedoms of degrees to implement. In **Appendix-B**, the patterns with logically opposite SC modes are complementary with each other, such as 4L-PWM-1-1-1 denoted as 001100 is complementary with 4L-PWM-1-2-5 denoted as 110011. While the overall performance relies on how optimally we utilize the various patterns to achieve the control goals.

In summary, to overcome the increasing PWM design complexity of multilevel converter with a high number of output levels and possible PWM patterns, e.g. ANPC converter, a universal carrier-based PWM design method based on isomorphic theory is proposed. Based on the hierarchical decomposition process, the complete sets of PWM patterns can be derived. Even with a high number of PWM patterns, the design process is dramatically simplified by utilizing low-level sub-topologies (i.e. isomorphisms between two converters). Several designed PWM schemes under different operation modes are verified through experiments and demonstrate how the same approach can also be generalized for a high-level ANPC topology (e.g. 3L to 4L, 4L to 5L).

With the help of this simplified and unified method, a complete design of an exhaustive list of CB-PWM schemes of ANPC-based topology can be achieved. Such a complete list of PWM schemes provide the opportunity for optimal selection and utilization of PWM schemes in a more comprehensive way.

4.3. Phase shift PWM design for ANPC-based converter

For multilevel converters, especially when output level number is higher than three, carrier-based PWM schemes, i.e., LS and PS PWM, are much easier to implement than SVM methods. While conventional LS PWM tends to cause unequal loss distribution [219]. An alternative method is to develop PS PWM which has been successfully applied for state-of-art topologies to achieve higher equivalent switching frequency (ESF), better device utilization, and evenly loss distribution. Recently, a hybrid PWM scheme has been applied in hybrid-clamped converters [100], [101], [222]. The converter is controlled by a 3L PS PWM for FC legs and low switching frequency modulation for a 3L ANPC converter. However, it cannot be applied for ANPC converter since no FC legs exist in ANPC converters. For the conventional PS PWM schemes of cascaded H-bridge or modular multilevel converter, they utilize the inherent modular structures and generate the phase-shifted PWM signals for each submodule [99]. Unfortunately, due to the different topology operation

principles and the lack of submodule structures, such methods cannot be implemented for ANPC converter. In [218], a PWM scheme with phase-shifted carriers was proposed for the three-level ANPC converter. A similar method was also introduced in [45] for a Marx converter (it has the sub-topology of a three-level ANPC-based topology). In this section, these methods are further investigated and generalized for the ANPC converters through the identical circuits within a single converter.

4.3.1 Proposed phase shift PWM

A. Identical circuits within a single converter in ANPC converters

As investigated in **Section 4.1.2-B**, identical circuits within a single converter can be found in ANPC converters. In detail, the symmetrical overlapping identical sub-topologies are shown in **Figure 4-33(a)-(b)**. Meanwhile, asymmetrical non-overlapping identical sub-topologies can also be seen as examples in **Figure 4-33(c)-(d)**. The identical circuits within a single converter normally consists of some different combinations of SCs and can also be utilized to facilitate the PWM implementation process. In addition to the definition of SG in **Section 4.1.2-A**, a switching group can also be defined as the sub-topologies for every two adjacent levels (i.e., the i^{th} and $(i+1)^{th}$ level, i is an integer) are derived and selected for ANPC topology. As shown in **Figure 4-33**, two types of SGs can be found: downward SG and upward SG, depending on the cascaded directions (see **Figure 4-33(a)**). Inside an SG, each half-bridge is included in a Stage. The number of the stages within the SG can be indicated by the number of SCs, e.g. in **Figure 4-33(a)**, the highlighted SGs have four stages.

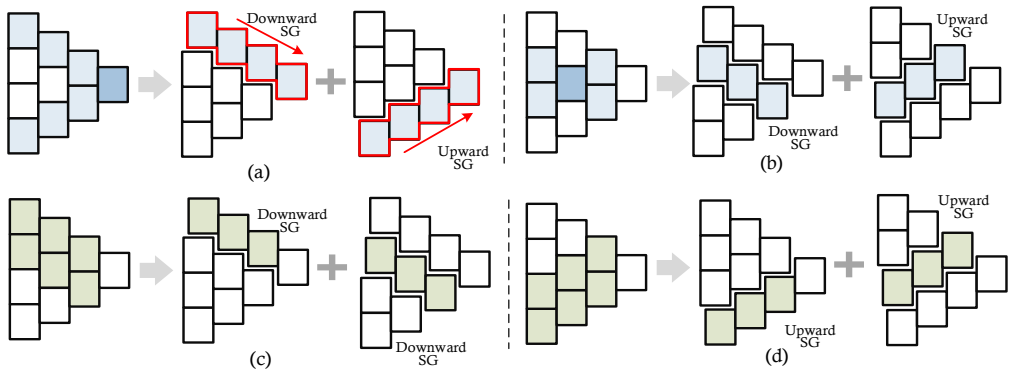


Figure 4-33 Identical circuits in ANPC converter: (a)-(b) symmetrical overlapping identical sub-topologies, (c)-(d) asymmetrical non-overlapping identical sub-topologies.

In fact, the similar structure can be found in Marx converter. For instance, the converter structure in [45] is the simplest Marx converter enjoying doubled ESF, which can be transferred as an

SG of a 3L ANPC converter as shown in **Figure 4-34(a)**. Here same concept can be further generalized for other SGs (**Figure 4-34(b)**).

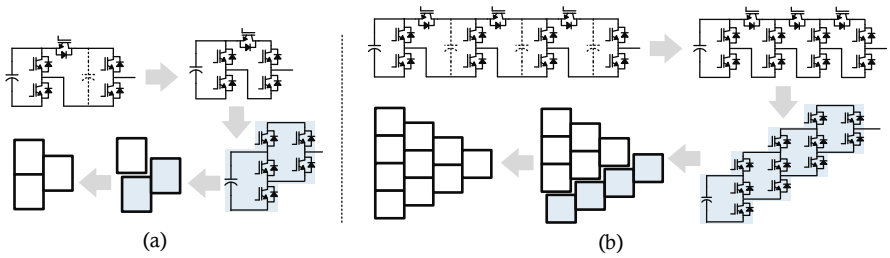


Figure 4-34 Marx converters can be transformed into switch group in ANPC converters by eliminating the intermediate capacitors. (a) A two-stage Marx converter can be transformed into a sub-topology associated with two SCs, (b) a four-stage Marx converter can be transformed into a sub-topology associated with four SCs.

B. Phase-shifted PWM for switching groups

Based on the isomorphic theory, an ANPC converter can be considered as combinations of different SGs regards different output regions, which naturally decomposes the converter in terms of different operation points. In general, for ANPC converter with i-level outputs ($i \leq 5$), e.g., 3L, 4L, 5L ANPC converters, there are three different types of upwards SGs (see **Figure 4-35(a)** and **Figure 4-36**) and three different types of downwards SGs (see **Figure 4-37**). Inspired by the double frequency PWM schemes, a novel PWM scheme can be designed for each SGs to achieve the phase-shifted modulation.

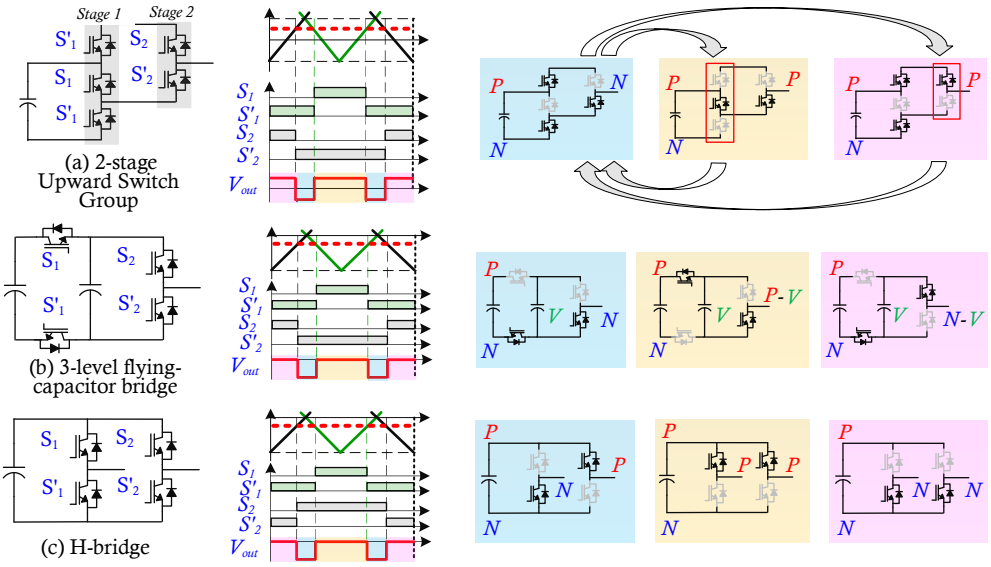


Figure 4-35 Phase-shifted PWM for (a) 2-stage upward switch group, (b) 3-level flying-capacitor bridge, (c) conventional H-bridge.

For 2-stage upward SG in **Figure 4-35(a)**, the PWM scheme is the same with the method in [45], where two carriers are phase-shifted by 180° and are utilized to compare with reference to operate five switches in this SG. As indicated by the arrows in Figure4 (a), during different periods of one fundamental cycle, the switches in the corresponding SG will be turned ON and OFF while the states of other switches keep unchanged. In other words, SGs will take turns to make switching actions in one fundamental cycle and switching loss can be well distributed. The same carriers and same output waveforms can also be found in PS PWM schemes for 3-level FC bridge and conventional H-bridge [83], [99], however, device utilizations are different as shown in **Figure 4-35(b)** and **(c)**, respectively.

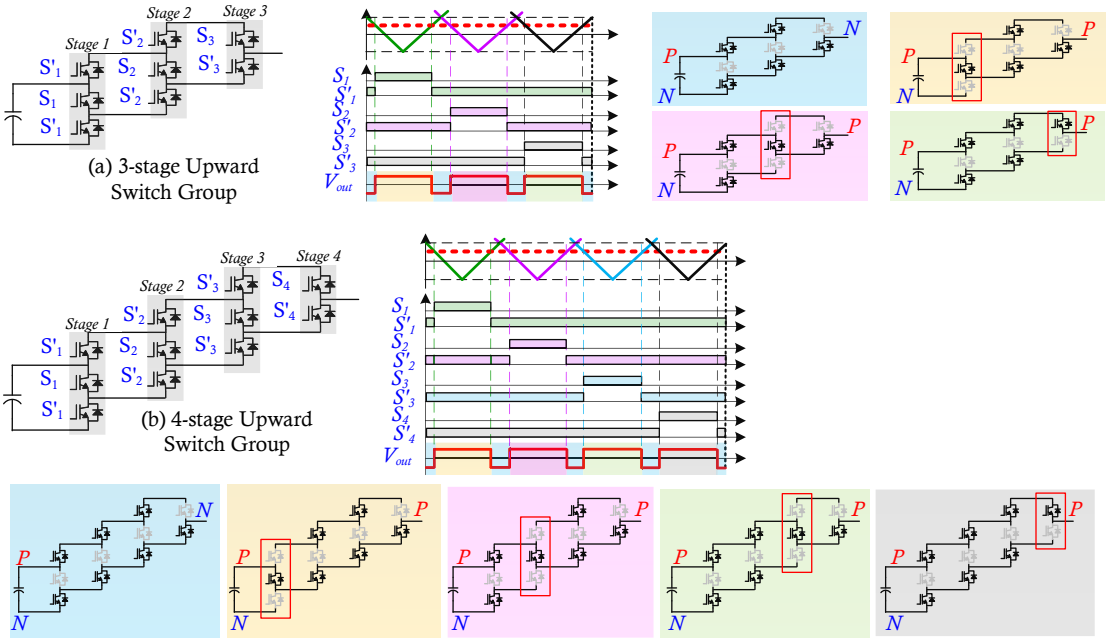


Figure 4-36 Phase-shifted PWM for (a) 3-stage upward switch group, (b) 4-stage upward switch group.

For 3-stage upward SG in **Figure 4-36(a)**, three carriers are phase-shifted by 120° to modulate the eight switches in this SG. There are four switching states that will be generated in PS PWM and result in a triple ESF of output pulses. For a 4-stage upward SG, four carriers are used with 90° phase shift and result in four times ESF of output pulses in theory. Similar algorithms can also be developed for downward SGs, as shown in **Figure 4-37**.

For each SG with the proposed PS PWM scheme, the PWM waveforms with increased ESF can be guaranteed as indicated in **Figure 4-35~37**. And the same phenomenon also happens in the FC bridge and H-bridge scenarios with the same PS PWM logic but different switching states.

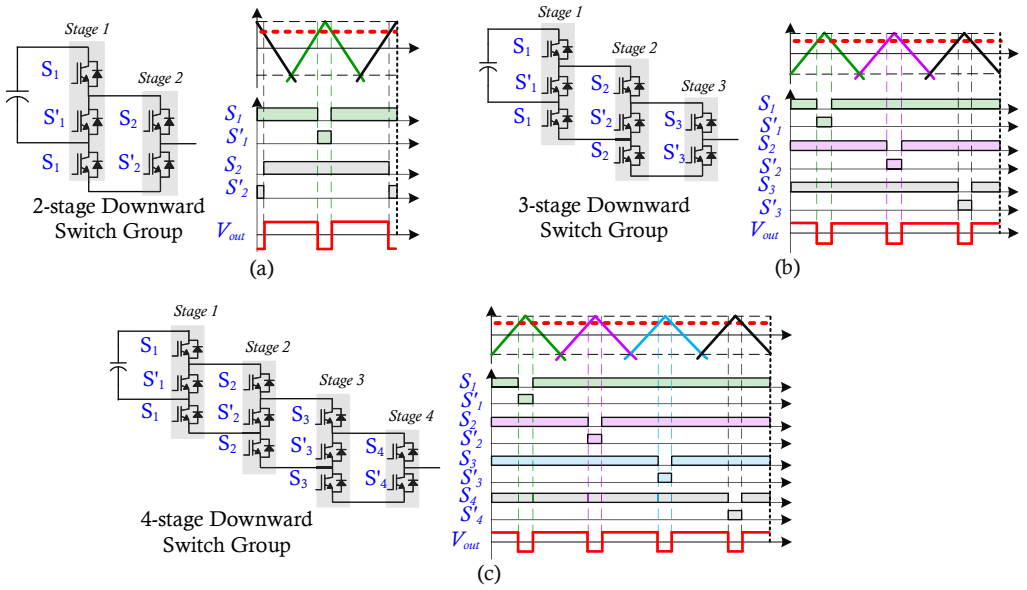


Figure 4-37 Phase-shifted PWM for (a) 2-stage downward switch group, (b) 3-stage downward switch group, (c) 4-stage downward switch group.

C. Design procedure

Based on the isomorphisms within a single converter, the modulation schemes of ANPC converters can be obtained by combining the algorithms of SGs. In practice, two main objectives of the modulation are focused on: (1) simplify the design process through several modular steps, (2) achieve higher ESF through best utilization of switching devices. To realize the above goals, the three-step PS PWM design procedure is proposed and shown in **Figure 4-38**.

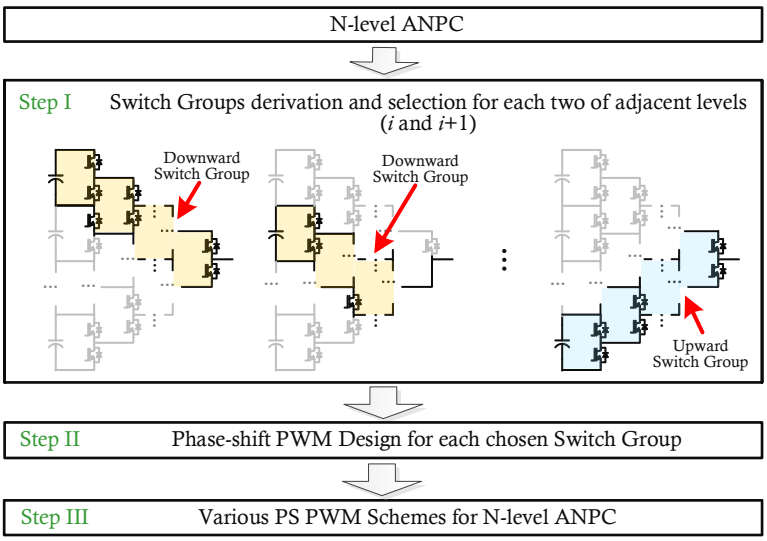


Figure 4-38 Phase-shift PWM Design Process for ANPC Converter.

Step-I is to derive the switch groups by implementing the identical circuits within a single converter. Step-II is to design PS PWM for each SG by utilizing interleaved carriers as introduced in **Section 4.3.1-B**. Step-III is to combine the SG PWM schemes into the final PWM scheme to operate the ANPC converter. In the following sections, 3/4/5-level examples will be illustrated to describe the design details.

4.3.2 Phase shift PWM design examples

A. 3-level PS PWM for ANPC converter

To better understand the proposed PS PWM design method, a 3-level ANPC converter is demonstrated first. In [218], the PWM schemes with the phase-shifted process is proposed to realize natural doubling of the inverter frequency. Such PWM was verified to have a better balancing of loss distribution in a 3-level ANPC converter with LS PWM. The theoretical gating signals are shown in **Figure 4-39**. The scheme can be easily synthesized through the proposed PS PWM method.

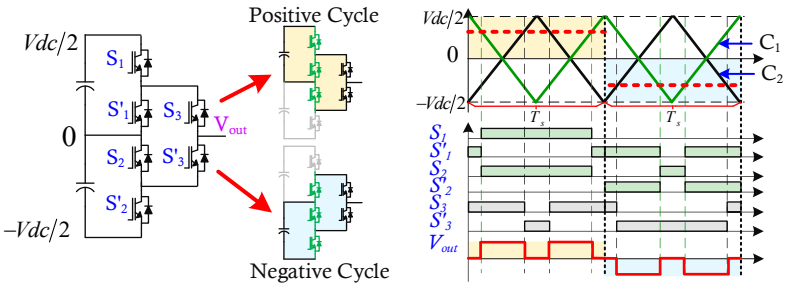


Figure 4-39 Phase-shift PWM for 3-level ANPC Converter.

Step I: Based on the concept of *Switch Group*, the 3-level ANPC has only two available SGs as shown in **Figure4-34**, one is downward that produces an output voltage from $V_{dc}/2$ to 0, the other is upward that produces output voltage potentials from 0 to $-V_{dc}/2$.

Step II: PS PWM schemes are designed for these SGs, respectively. In positive half-cycle, associated switches (S_1, S'_1, S_2, S_3, S'_3) of downward SG are utilized. Two carriers (C_1 and C_2) are phase-shifted by 180°, as shown in **Figure 4-39**. The carrier frequency is f_{s1} for downward SG, while the ESF is $2f_{s1}$. In negative half-cycle, associated switches (S'_1, S_2, S'_2, S_3, S'_3) of upward SG are utilized. The same carriers can still be implemented with the same ESF.

Step III: two developed SG PWM schemes are implemented for positive and negative half-cycle, respectively. The unused switches during each half-cycle (S_1, S'_2) are controlled to be OFF to bearing the dc-link voltage properly, as shown in **Figure 4-39**.

B. The proposed phase-shifted PWM for the general 4-level ANPC converter

Based on the PS PWM for SGs, the general 4-level ANPC can be modulated through the different combinations of SGs with designed PWM schemes in **Figure 4-35-37**. (The complete list of SGs of 4-level ANPC converter is shown in **Appendix-D**.)

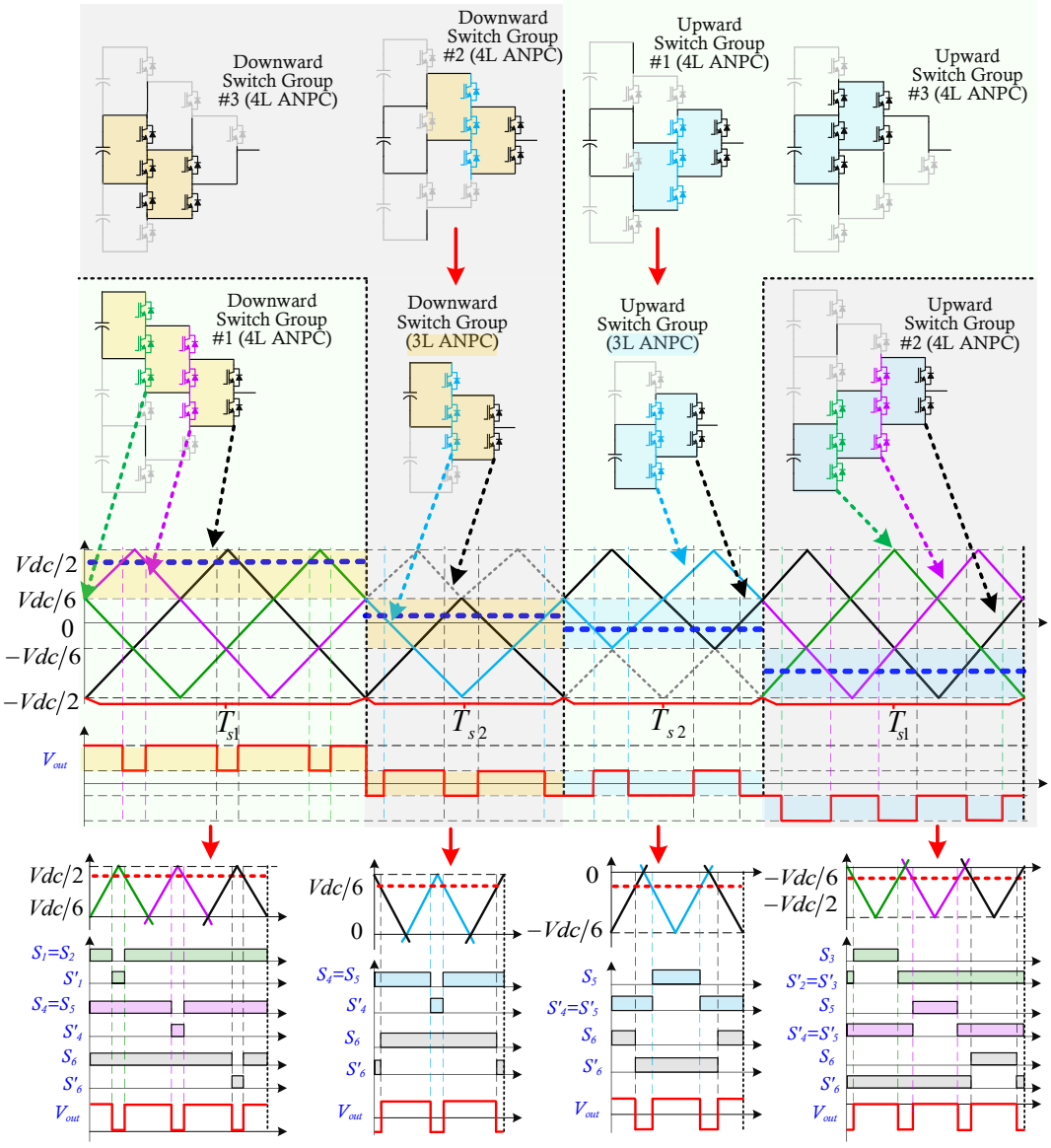


Figure 4-40 Phase-shift PWM for the general 4-level ANPC converter.

Step I: Proper SGs can be selected as shown in **Figure 4-40** (in the Appendix, the complete list of SGs are provided). Eight associated switches (S_1, S'_1, S_2, S_4, S'_4, S_5, S_6, S'_6) are utilized to form downward SG #1, which has three stages. As the stages of derived SGs increase, the ESF increases as well, which guarantees power quality of phase voltage using lower switching

frequency compared to conventional LS PWM. To achieve the highest ESF, downward SG #1 and #2 can be chosen for positive half-cycles. Based on the same idea, upward SG #1 and #2 can be chosen for negative half-cycles. The reason for two different SGs (downward SG#2, upward SG #1) during [-Vdc/6, Vdc/6] is to guarantee the symmetrical device utilization for [-Vdc/6, 0] and [0, Vdc/6]. If downward/upward SG #3 is chosen in this area, the device utilization will be different, while the output will be maintained the same.

Step II: Based on **Figure 4-37(b)**, the PS PWM for downward SG #1 utilizes three carriers which are phase-shifted by $1/(3f_{s1})$ (f_{s1} is the carrier frequency for downward SG #1, the ESF is $3f_{s1}$.) and compared with voltage reference. The PWM logic and generated gating signals are shown at the bottom of **Figure4-40**. To output [0, $V_{dc}/6$], downward SG #2 is selected. Two carriers are shifted by $1/(2f_{s2})$ (f_{s2} is the carrier frequency for downward SG #2). The ESF is $2f_{s2}$. It can be seen the selected SG has the same form as a 3L case. Therefore, the 3L PS PWM schemes can be utilized for the 4L design case. The case of negative half-cycles is similar to that of positive half-cycles, which is omitted here.

Step III: All four PS PWM schemes for selected SGs are combined. For four different output regions, four carrier groups are enabled separately. In addition to the PWM switching signals, other switches in different output ranges are maintained fixed states, as indicated in **Figure 4-40**: (1) during [Vdc/6, Vdc/2], switches [S_2', S_3', S_5'] are OFF and [S_3] are ON, (2) during [0, Vdc/6], [S_1, S_2, S_3, S_5'] are OFF and [S_1', S_2', S_3'] are ON, (3) during [-Vdc/6, 0], [S_1', S_2', S_3', S_4] are OFF and [S_1, S_2, S_3] are ON, (4) during [-Vdc/2, -Vdc/6], [S_1, S_2, S_4] are OFF and [S_1'] are ON.

C. The proposed phase-shifted PWM for the general 5-level ANPC converter

PS PWM design for a 5L ANPC converter is taken as another example. There could be multiple possible choices of SGs in terms of different output regions (in the **Appendix-E**, the complete list of SGs are provided). To better utilize all the devices and achieve a high ESF, downward SG #1 and #2, upward SG #1 and #2 can be selected for four output regions, respectively.

Since the PS PWM schemes of these SGs have already been designed, the 5-level PS PWM can be simply derived with PWM of equivalent SGs in lower-level ANPC topologies, as indicated in **Figure 4-41**. For example, the gating signals for S_2, S'_2, S_3 in downward SG #2 in **Figure 4-41** are the same as S_1, S'_1, S_2 in downward SG #1 of the 4L case in **Figure 4-40**. The corresponding PWM logic and generated outputs are also identical. Therefore, the complexity of the PS PWM design process is significantly reduced.

Similar to the 4L case, during each region, only the selected SG is operated at PWM frequency, while the rest switches are maintained fixed states in 5L ANPC converter, as indicated in **Figure**

4-40. For example, during [Vdc/4, Vdc/2], switches [S_2', S_3', S_4', S_6', S_7', S_9'] are OFF and [S_3, S_4, S_7] are ON.

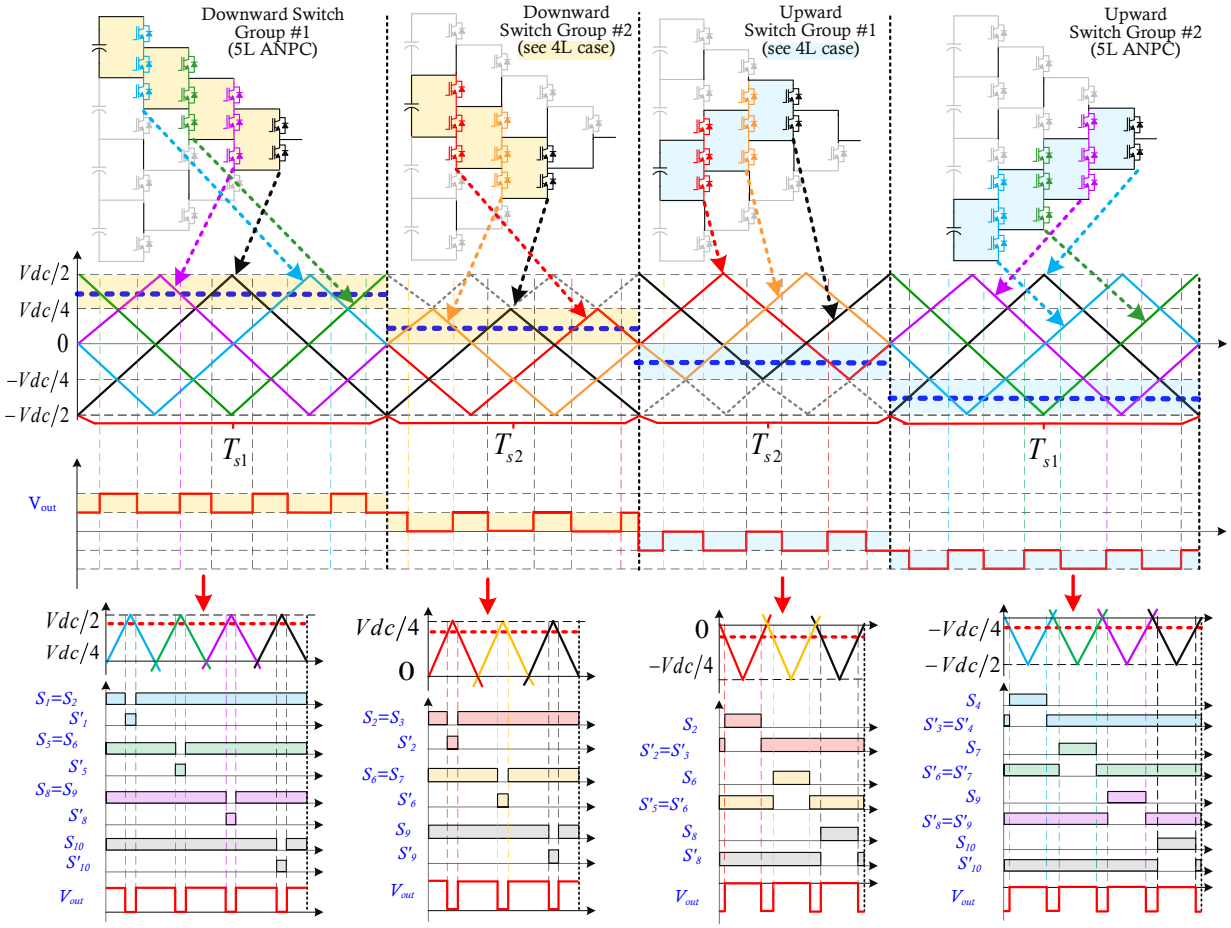


Figure 4-41 Phase-shift PWM for the general 5-level ANPC converter.

4.3.3 Generalizations of the proposed method

Based on the previous examples, several principles are summarized for an *n*-level ANPC topology as the guidelines of the proposed design method in this section. The generalization of the design procedure is facilitated through the utilization of multiple lower-level schemes of SGs to control higher-level multilevel ANPC converters.

The first step is the derivation of various SGs. Two guidelines should be followed:

Guideline 1 for Step I:

Maximum stage number of the derived upward/downward SGs are selected for every two adjacent levels to have better utilization of all devices and achieve maximum ESF.

Guideline 2 for Step I:

Derived SGs of n-level topology and an associated n-stage SG can be directly utilized to simplify the derivation process of (n±1)-level ANPC topology. Two possible derivations of (n+1)-level topology are demonstrated in **Figure 4-42**. **Figure 4-42(a)** shows the (n+1)-level topology realized by combing n-level topology with n-stage downward SG. **Figure 4-42(b)** shows the (n+1)-level topology realized by using the same n-level topology with n-stage upward SG. The n−1 case is vice versa.

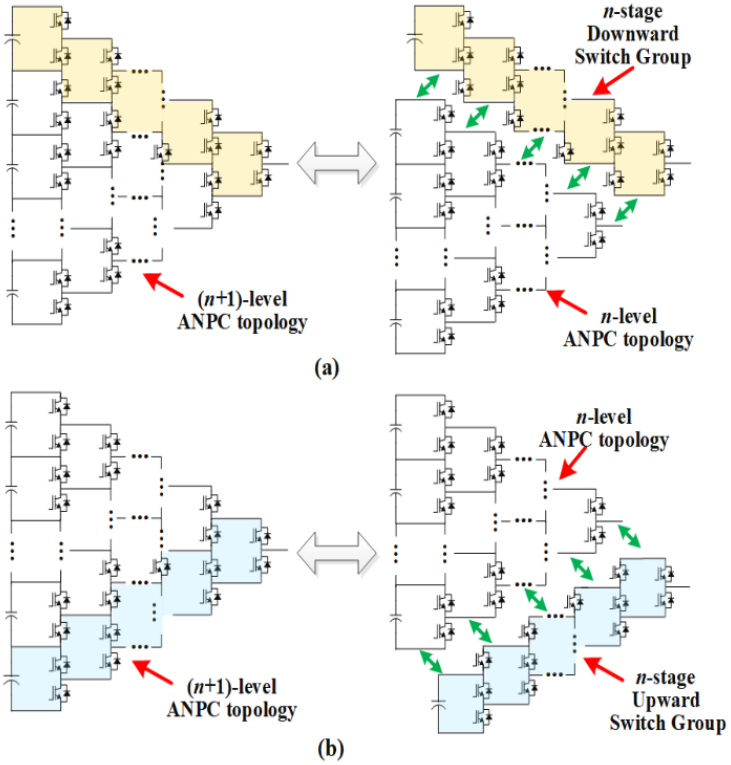


Figure 4-42 The derivation of (n+1)-level ANPC topology by an n-level circuit.

The second step is to design the associated PS PWM of derived SGs, which are summarized in **Figure 4-43**. Two guidelines should be followed:

Guideline 3 for Step II:

i carriers (C_1~C_i) are needed, and the phase-shift angle is 360°/i for i-stage upward (or downward) SG associated with output level $n-i$ and $n-i+1$ (or output level i and $i+1$). Each carrier is a triangle wave with frequency f_s and amplitude Vdc·i/(n−1).

Guideline 4 for Step II:

***The switching logic of the i^{th} carrier for upward/downward SG can be expressed as*:**

$$S_i = Sign(m_{ref} - C_i) \tag{4-1}$$

$$Sign(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x > 0 \\ 0, & x \le 0 \end{cases} \tag{4-2}$$

where S_i is the switching function of the i^{th} switch, *Sign* is a symbolic function, m_{ref} denotes the modulated waveform.

The ESF f_{es} of the final carrier can be expressed as:

$$f_{es} = i * f_s \tag{4-3}$$

Note that the doubled frequency PWM for 3-level ANPC is the special case when i=2.

The third step is to combine different schemes of SGs to form the final designed PS PWM for ANPC topology, as shown in **Figure 4-43(c)**. Two guidelines should be followed:

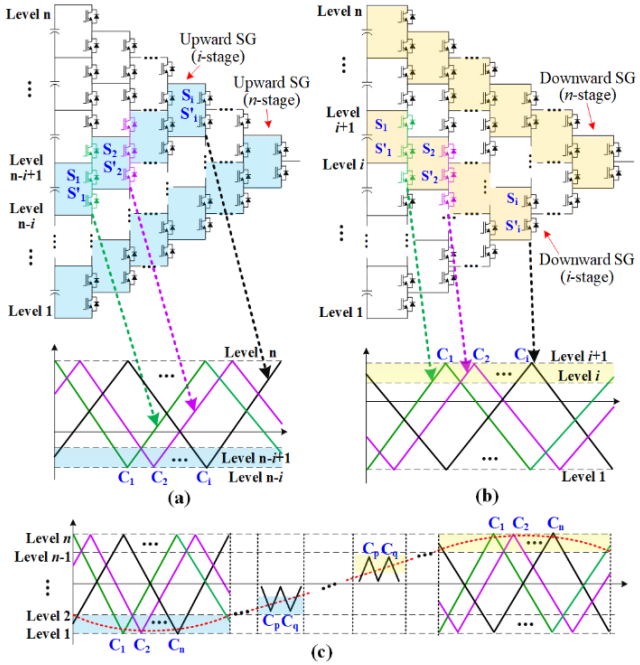


Figure 4-43 Phase-shift PWM designed for (a) upward switch groups, (b) downward switch groups, (c) the combined PWM of n-level ANPC topology with multiple carrier groups.

Guideline 5 for Step III:

For every two adjacent levels, associated SGs can be selected based on the control objectives, e.g., ESF, switching loss distribution, etc. During the design process of an *n*-level ANPC converter, there can be redundant SGs for the same output level range, such as downward SG #2 and #3 in 4-level converter example (**Figure 4-40**) (in Appendix, more equivalent SGs are provided). Therefore, various PWM schemes can be derived based on different selections of SGs according to different requirements. This provides a wealth of control freedom for optimized PWM modulation to achieve complex control goals, such as: maximizing the ESF while maintaining the good switching loss balance as in 5L cases.

Guideline 6 for Step III:

The reference wave is compared with carrier groups only in the corresponding level range to realize cooperation with multiple sets of carriers.

4.3.4 Verifications and discussions

A. Experimental Verifications and Loss Analysis

To verify the ESF and power quality of the proposed PWM method, one 5L phase-leg is built for experiments with parameters listed in Table. 4-III. The experimental setups are shown in **Figure 4-44**. The measured switches are highlighted in blue shadows. To compare with PS PWM, three different LS PWM schemes are implemented based on the method in **Section 4.1.3**.

Table 4-III Experiment Parameters

Parameter	Value
Rated Phase Voltage (peak)	60 V
Rated Phase Power	500 VA
DC link Voltage	120 V
Carrier Frequency f_{c1} (PS PWM)	390 Hz
Carrier Frequency f_{c2} (PS PWM)	520 Hz
Carrier Frequency f_{c3} (LS PWM)	1560 Hz
Equivalent Switching Frequency	1560 Hz
Modulation Index	0.9 and 0.45
Line Frequency f_o	60 Hz
Load inductance	30 mH
Load resistance	27.5-2.7 Ω

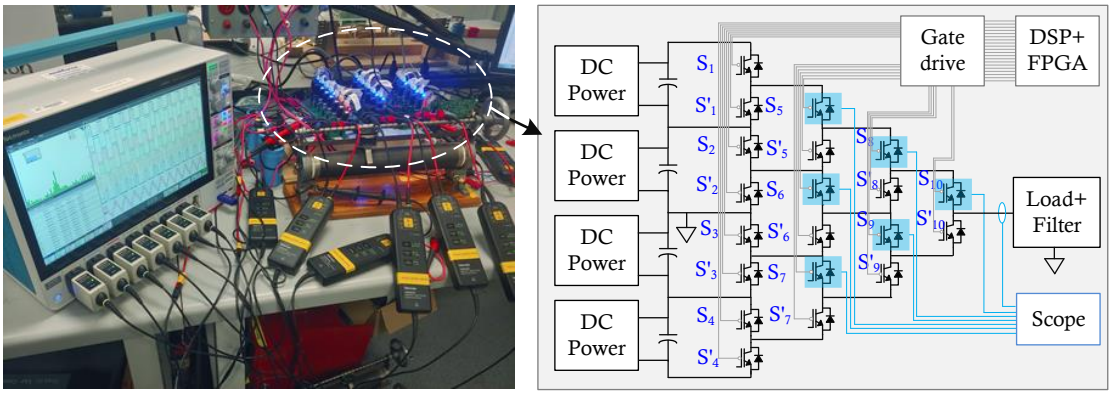


Figure 4-44 Experimental setups of 5L ANPC topology.

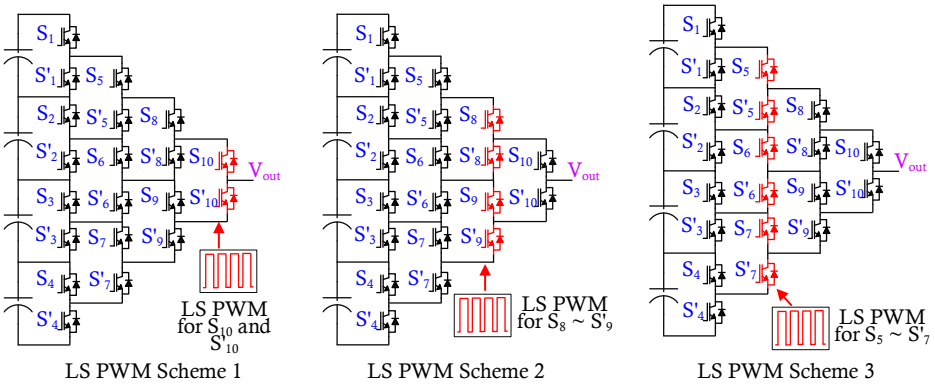


Figure 4-45 Three LS PWM schemes of the general 5L ANPC converter with different device utilizations.

They have three different utilizations of devices, as indicated in **Figure 4-45**. In LS PWM scheme 1, the switches [S_{10}, S_{10}'] are utilized at f_{c3}, the rest switches operate at f_o. In LS PWM scheme 2, the switches [S_8, S_8', S_9, S_9'] are utilized at f_{c3}, the rest switches operate at f_o. In LS PWM scheme 3, the switches [S_5, S_5', S_6, S_6', S_7, S_7'] are utilized at f_{c3}, the rest switches operate at f_o. The experimental results verify such device utilization in **Figure 4-46(a)~(d)** with different modulation index (0.9 and 0.45).

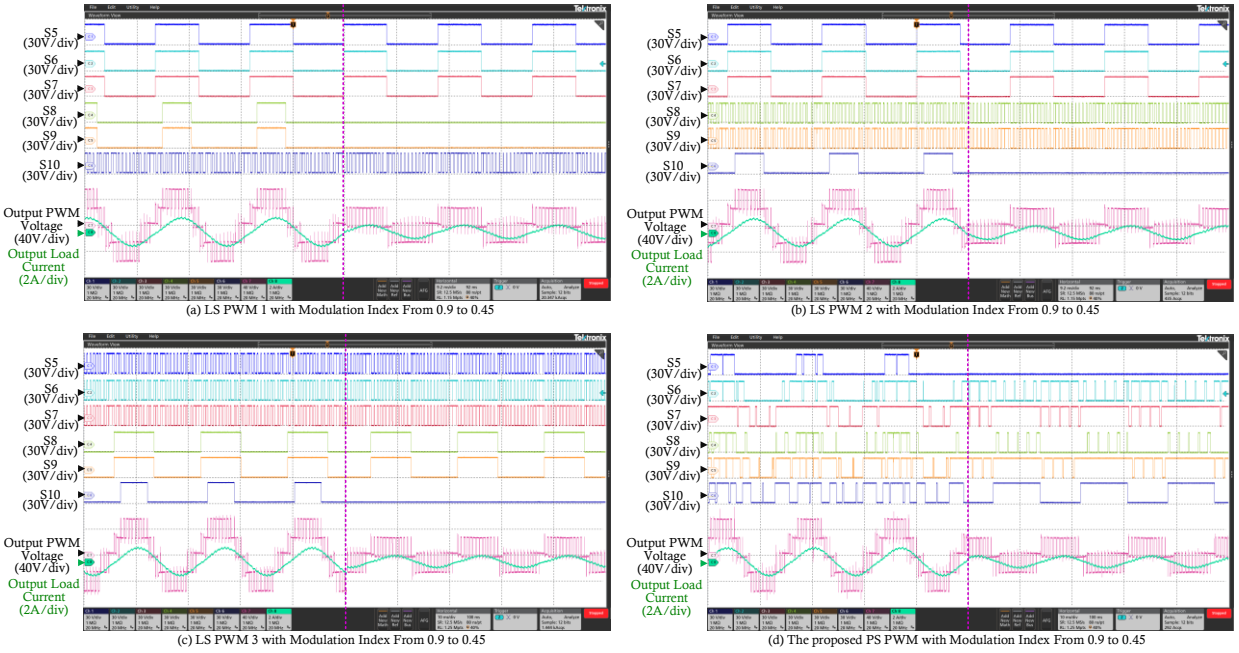


Figure 4-46 The gating signals of switches [S5, S6, S7, S8, S9, S10], output PWM waveforms and load current of the general 5L ANPC converter using different PWM methods: (a) LS PWM 1, (b) LS PWM 2, (b) LS PWM 3, (b) the proposed PS PWM. (Modulation index from 0.9 to 0.45)

The FFT analysis verifies that the ESF is three/four times the device frequency through the proposed PS PWM. The introduced low order harmonics are mainly because of double frequency ripples of single-phase configurations and the sideband of switching frequency harmonics, as shown in **Figure 4-47**.

The different load conditions are also considered, as shown in **Figure 4-48**, which shows the feasibility of the proposed method. The introduced fluctuation of DC links is mainly because of the increased power consumption in single-phase systems [223].

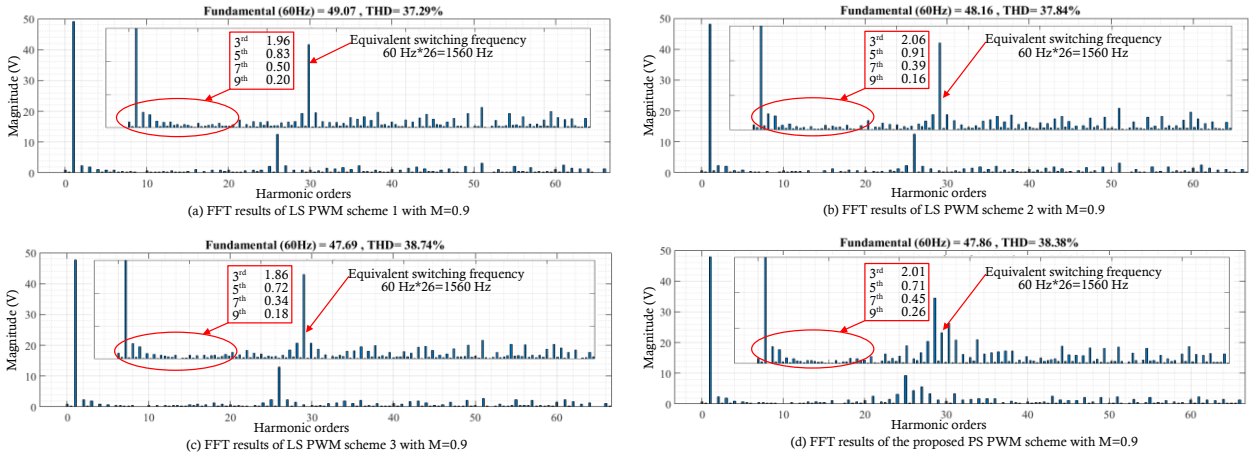


Figure 4-47 FFT analysis of different PWM methods: (a) LS PWM scheme 1, (b) LS PWM scheme 2, (c) LS PWM scheme 3, (d) the proposed PWM scheme.

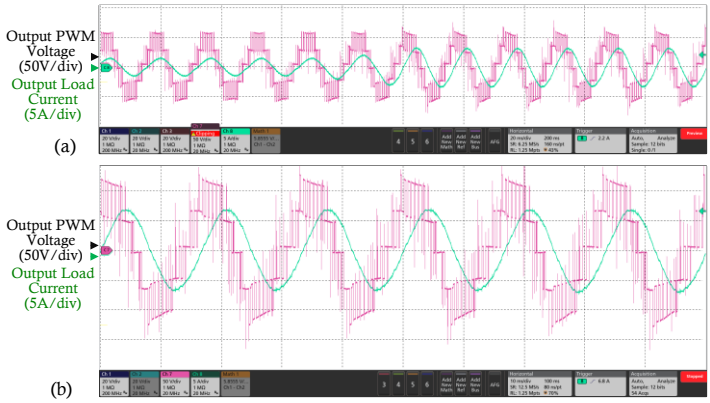
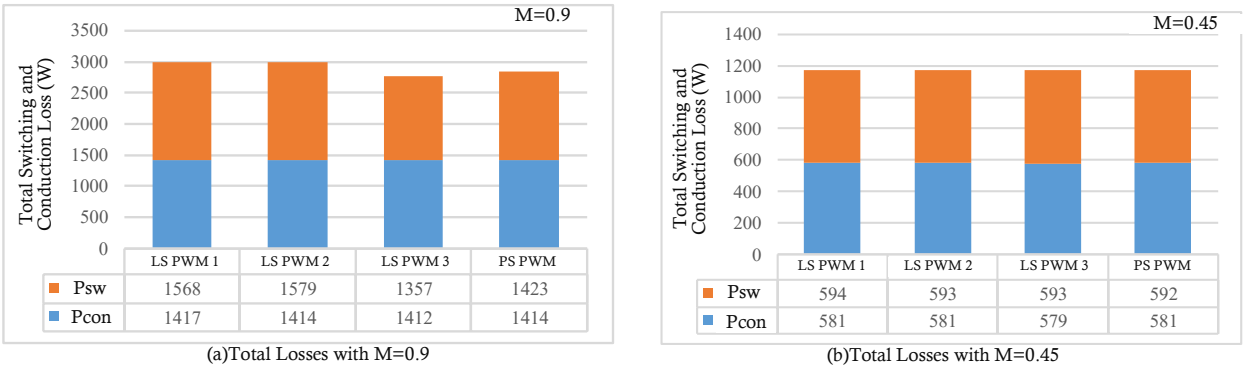


Figure 4-48 (a) The output PWM waveforms of load change from 30mH/27.5Ω to 30mH/2.7Ω. (b) increased output power with higher DC-link voltage.

B. Analysis and discussions

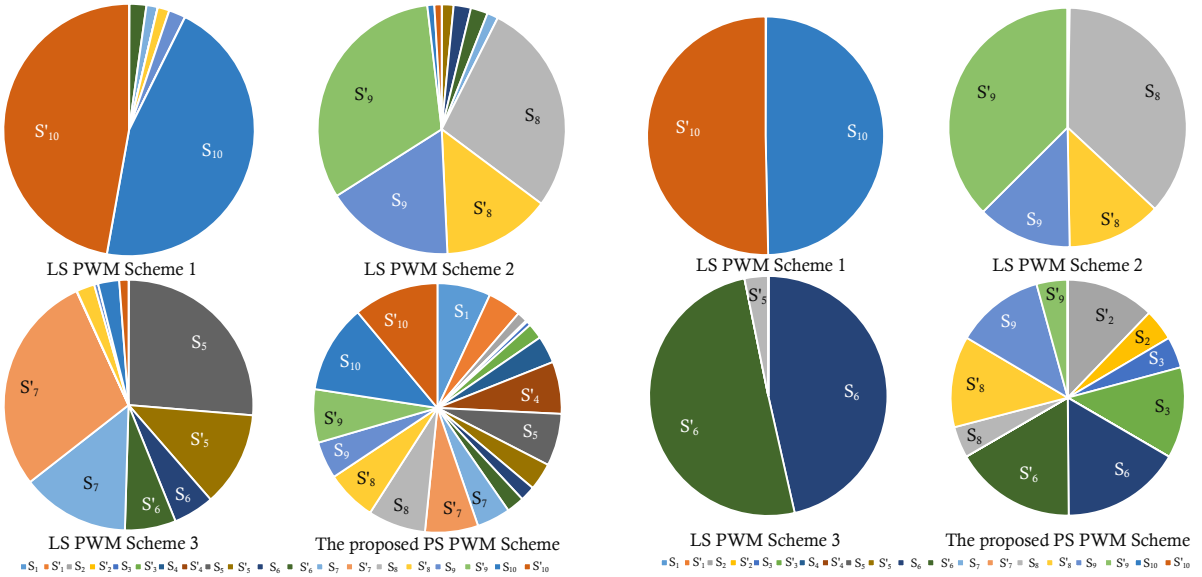
To demonstrate the loss distribution performance of the proposed PS PWM, the total/switching losses of 5L ANPC converter with 3300V 800A IGBT (i.e., Infineon FZ800R33KF2C) under same ESF (1560Hz) and modulation index (0.9 and 0.45) are chosen as an example through PLECS tools in MATLAB/Simulink.

The PS PWM is the same as **Figure 4-49**. Three LS PWM schemes are the same with LS PWM methods used in experiments. The power factor, load current, and blocking voltages of devices are maintained the same. Both the conduction loss and switching loss of switches and diodes are considered based on the output characteristics curves and switching energy loss curves.



(a)Total Losses with M=0.9 (b)Total Losses with M=0.45

Figure 4-49 Total losses of four different PWM schemes with (a) modulation index is 0.9, (b) modulation index is 0.45.



(a) Switching Loss Distribution of Different PWM Methods with M=0.9 (b) Switching Loss Distribution of Different PWM Methods with M=0.45

Figure 4-50 Switching loss distributions of four different PWM schemes with (a) modulation index is 0.9, (b) modulation index is 0.45.

Firstly, the total losses are investigated for these four schemes. Both the conduction losses and switching losses are listed in **Figure 4-49**, where P_{sw} indicates switching power loses, P_{con} indicates conducting power loses. It turns out all these four methods have similar conduction losses. The slightly higher losses of LS PWM 1 and 2 with 0.9 modulation index are caused by their different commutation processes among the four PWM methods.

Secondly, the switching losses distributions are compared. All the switches in 5L ANPC converter are included, and their losses are shown in **Figure 4-50**. In LS PWM, the switching losses are concentrated on a few switches, e.g., one or two switches can contribute to half of all switching losses. With the same ESF, the designed PS PWM can achieve better switching loss distribution than LS PWM schemes under both high and low modulation index. This is because the proposed PS PWM naturally distributes the switching actions evenly in each SGs.

Based on experimental results and above analysis, the comparisons between the proposed PS PWM and three LS PWM schemes for ANPC converter are summarized in Table. 4-IV. Since the proposed method uses the carrier phase-shifted technique, ESF with multiple times of carrier frequency can be achieved. Under the same ESF, both the power quality and total power losses (conduction and switching losses) are similar among these four PWM schemes. However, due to inherent balanced switching actions within SGs, the proposed PS PWM features a much better switching loss distribution.

In summary, identical circuits within a single converter can be utilized for introducing some new modulations and simplifying the design process. With more evenly distributed switching actions among all devices, the designed PS PWM schemes feature better utilization of devices and higher ESF compared with conventional LS PWM. Moreover, high-level PWM schemes can be synthesized through low-level schemes. In such a way, the PS PWM design for ANPC topology can be realized modularly for both the general and the simplified ANPC converters. Besides, the extensibility and reduced computation burden make the proposed method very suitable for multi-level ANPC topologies (e.g., 4- and 5-level). The five-level PS PWM scheme is designed with experimental validation and thorough discussions and comparisons, which shows a better performance regards device utilization and loss distribution.

Table 4-IV Summary of the Proposed PS PWM and Conventional LS PWM Schemes for ANPC Converters

	LS PWM Scheme 1	**LS PWM Scheme 2**	**LS PWM Scheme 3**	**Proposed PS PWM**
Equivalent Switching Frequency	Same as carrier frequency			Multiple times of carrier frequency
Power Quality	PS PWM has higher power quality if device/carrier frequency is the same with LS PWM; all schemes have a similar output power quality using the same equivalent switching frequency.			
Total losses	Similar total loss performance under same equivalent switching frequency			

Switching Loss distribution	Most uneven distributed	Uneven distributed	Uneven distributed	Much better distributed
Utilized Switches (at PWM frequency)	Two (five-level case)	Four (five-level case)	Six (five-level case)	All (five-level case)
Scalability	Can be utilized for any ANPC topologies	Can be utilized for any ANPC topologies	Can be utilized for ANPC topologies with more than three levels	Can be utilized for ANPC topologies with more than three levels

4.4. Summary

In this chapter, a universal carrier-based PWM design method using hierarchical method is proposed for non-modular MLCs. Two important circuits are introduced: identical circuits between two converters and identical circuits within a single converter.

To deal with the non-modularity of the MLCs, the sub-topologies are decomposed in a hierarchical way by using the identical circuits between two converters, then, an exhaustive list of CPWM schemes can be designed. The demonstration of the proposed method is mainly done for ANPC converters. It features some advantages over conventional case-by-case methods: (1) It is a universal and offline design method regards CB-PWM schemes and can be easily implemented for MLCs once the pattern is selected. (2) An exhaustive list of CB-PWM schemes can be designed which provides an opportunity to enhance the system by the adoption of different PWM strategies according to different application requirements. (3) The low-level PWM schemes can be utilized for high-level PWM design which can significantly reduce the design complexity and guarantee the control modularity. Several designed PWM schemes under different operation modes are verified through experiments and demonstrate how the same approach can also be generalized for high-level ANPC topologies (e.g. 3L to 4L, 4L to 5L).

On the other hand, the identical circuits within a single converter are utilized and demonstrated in ANPC converter for the novel PS-PWM methods. It is based on different operation principles from the conventional methods for flying-capacitor-based, cascaded H-bridge, or modular multilevel converter. With more evenly distributed switching actions among all devices, the designed PS PWM schemes feature better utilization of devices and higher ESF compared with conventional LS PWM. Moreover, high-level PWM schemes can be synthesized through low-level schemes. In such a way, the PS PWM design for ANPC topology can be realized modularly for both

the general and the simplified ANPC converters. Besides, the extensibility and reduced computation burden make the proposed method very suitable for multi-level ANPC topologies (e.g., 4- and 5-level). The five-level PS PWM scheme is designed with experimental validation and thorough discussions and comparisons, which shows a better performance regards device utilization and loss distribution.

In addition to ANPC converters, the implementation of hierarchical concepts can also potentially facilitate the PWM design process for other non-modular MLCs, especially those ANPC-based derivatives. In the next chapter, the proposed PWM design method in this chapter will be synergically combined with the unified matrix models in **chapter 3** for some specialized issues of ANPC converters.

Chapter 5

Applications using the proposed unified models and PWM design approach[1]

In previous chapters, based on the new theories introduced in **chapter 2**, the new topology derivation methods and PWM design methods are proposed for various MLCs in **chapter 3** and **chapter 4**, respectively. In particular, special attention is dedicated to non-modular MLCs, e.g. ANPC converters.

As discussed in **chapter 4**, those non-modular MLCs face some challenges regarding systematic modulation design. As one of the promising types of MLCs, ANPC converters keep drawing some increasing attention in literature, however, the systematic methods for some practical applications are still missing, e.g. topological simplification and the fault-tolerant operation. Specifically speaking, the mathematical tools are still missing for such non-modular MLCs to universally deal with these issues.

Take ANPC converters as examples. The general form of multilevel ANPC topology inherently consists of a larger number of devices compared with conventional NPC topology. With the complexity of the circuit increasing dramatically, the applicability and the reliability tend to be decreased. Therefore, both the topological simplification and the fault-tolerant operation are preferred in practice. However, there are no available methods in literature dealing with these challenges in a systematic way, especially for those with output levels greater than three.

In **chapter 5**, efforts are dedicated to both the topological simplification and the fault-tolerant operation of the ANPC topology. The unified matrix models of MLCs (**Chapter 3**) and the systematic PWM design methodology (**Chapter 4**) are combined and implemented synergistically for 4-level and 5-level ANPC converters. Therefore, the topology simplification process can be achieved with the help of the matrix model-based approach. And the established PWM schemes

[1] Publication out of this Chapter:

Yuzhuo Li, Hao Tian and Yunwei Li, "Systematic Derivation of Simplified Active-Neutral-Point-Clamped Multilevel Converter through Matrix Models," *2019 20th Workshop on Control and Modeling for Power Electronics (COMPEL)*, Toronto, ON, Canada, 2019, pp. 1-8.

can be directly implemented for the simplified topologies. Besides, the fault-tolerant PWM patterns can be systematically derived using the proposed matrix method. Meanwhile, the applicable PWM patterns can be systematically implemented for the converter with multiple fault switches and without degradation of the output performance.

The logic structure of the **chapter 5** is shown below:

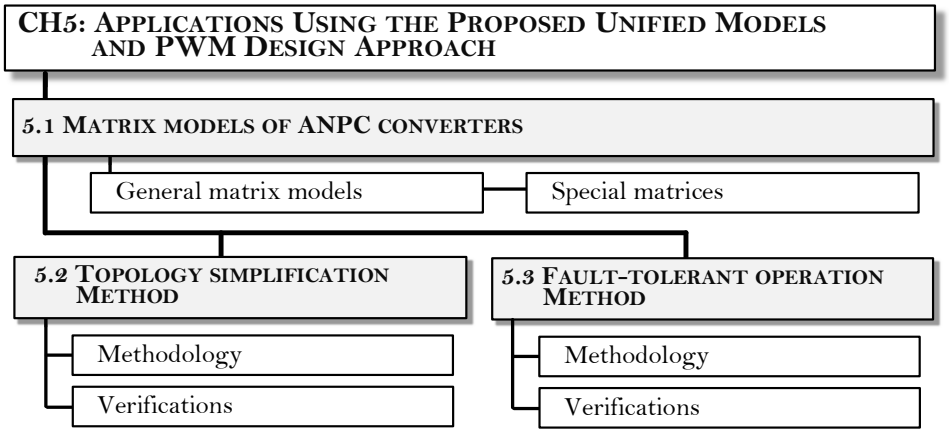


Figure 5-1 Logic structure of Chapter 5.

5.1. Matrix models of ANPC converters

As investigated in **chapter 3**, the mathematical models of MLCs can help unify the representations of various topologies, facilitate the topological simplification and the operation in a general way. This is especially beneficial when dealing with some MLCs with non-modular structures, e.g. ANPC converters.

5.1.1 General matrix model

The general form of multilevel ANPC topology inherently consists of a larger number of devices compared with conventional NPC topology. A three-level ANPC converter has 6 active switches per phase leg (see **Figure 5-2(a)**), while this number will dramatically increase with the output levels, e.g. 12 for the four-level case, 20 for the five-level case, etc.

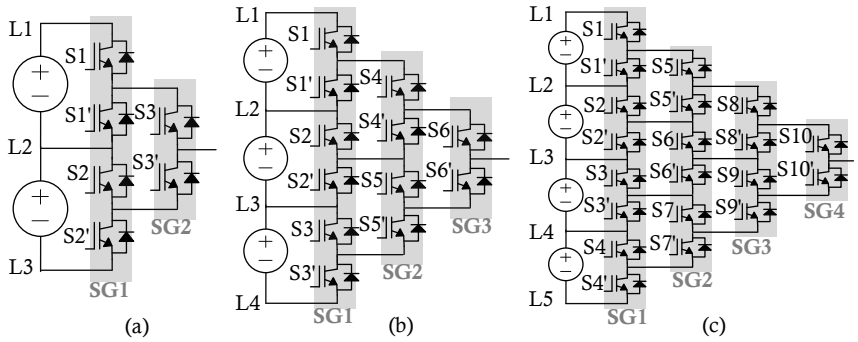


Figure 5-2 General topology of (a) 3-level ANPC converter, (b) 4-level ANPC converter, (c) 5-level ANPC converter.

Based on the unified matrix-based model structure introduced in **Section 3.1** (of **Chapter 3**), the output of the general ANPC topology under normal condition can be derived by the switching network matrix **S** and the DC-link level matrix **L**:

$$V_o = \mathbf{SL} \tag{5-1}$$

Since the switching network of ANPC topology normally consists of multiple columns of switches, it can be naturally decomposed into several switching groups (e.g. SG_1, SG_2, ...), as indicated in the shadow areas of **Figure 5-2**. In such a way, the matrix **S** can be decomposed as the product of concatenated sub-matrix. Each sub-matrix represents one switching group.

For instance, the matrix model of 4-level ANPC converter (shown in **Figure 5-2(b)**) is:

$$V_{out\_4L} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} s_6 & s_6' \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{SG}_3} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} s_4 & s_4' & 0 \\ 0 & s_5 & s_5' \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{SG}_2} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} s_1 & s_1' & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & s_2 & s_2' & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & s_3 & s_3' \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{SG}_1} \mathbf{L}_4 \tag{5-2}$$

where s_i indicate the state of devices: (1) s_i =1, if the switch is ON state; (2) s_i =0, if the switch is OFF state. $\mathbf{L}_4$=[L_1 L_2 L_3 L_4]^T indicates the DC-link levels (see Figure **5-2(b)**), s_1~s_6 and s'_1~s'_6 indicate the switching states of associated devices in the topology.

The general matrix models can preserve the complete structure information of ANPC topologies, which tend to be quite complicated when the output levels are many. Therefore, it is necessary to establish some special matrix models for specific interests. In the next section, some specific matrix models will be introduced.

5.1.2 Some special matrices

A. Structural matrix representation

To represent the structural information, the topology can be referred to as an upper triangular square matrix:

$$\mathbf{D}(n) = \left[d_{ij} \right]_{n \times n}, \tag{5-3}$$

where n=N-1, N is the number of output levels of ANPC. Assignments to matrix elements are arranged according to simplified graphical form of ANPC topology (which can be found in **chapter 4.1.2-A**): if SC_{ji} is in the topology (note the order of subscripts), a_{ij} is 1, if SC_{ji} is simplified into one switch, a_{ij} is 1/2, otherwise it is zero. The upper triangular square matrix $\mathbf{D}(n)$ can be defined as the structural matrix which uniquely represents the topological structure of a given ANPC. It means a known ANPC has only one structural matrix, in other words, one can use $\mathbf{D}(n)$ to mathematically analyze the structure of ANPC converters.

The matrix representation of 4L ANPC topology in Figure 5-2(b) can be expressed as follows:

$$\mathbf{D}(3) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-4}$$

$\mathbf{D}(3)$ can be split into two matrices based on the addition process (three possibilities exist) as follows:

$$\mathbf{D}(3)=\mathbf{D}(3)_1+\begin{bmatrix}0&0&1\\0&1&0\\1&0&0\end{bmatrix}=\mathbf{D}(3)_2+\begin{bmatrix}1&1&1\\0&0&0\\0&0&0\end{bmatrix}=\mathbf{D}(3)_3+\begin{bmatrix}1&0&0\\1&0&0\\1&0&0\end{bmatrix}$$
$$\mathbf{D}(3)_1=\begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{D}_2&\mathbf{0}_{2\times1}\\\mathbf{0}_{1\times2}&0\end{bmatrix},\mathbf{D}(3)_2=\begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{0}_{1\times2}&0\\\mathbf{D}_2&\mathbf{0}_{2\times1}\end{bmatrix},\mathbf{D}(3)_3=\begin{bmatrix}\mathbf{0}_{2\times1}&\mathbf{D}_2\\0&\mathbf{0}_{1\times2}\end{bmatrix} \tag{5-5}$$

where the $\mathbf{D}(3)_k$ (k=1, 2, 3) can be represented by the matrix $\mathbf{D}(2)$. When n is greater than 3, $\mathbf{D}(n)$ can always be decomposed into similar additions of two matrices (three possibilities exist) of which can be represented by the matrix $\mathbf{D}(n\text{-}1)$. The equivalent iteration process can continue until n=2, which is essentially the matrix representation of the hierarchical decomposition process introduced in **Chapter 4**.

B. Status matrix representation

To represent the possible operation status of ANPC converter, the following square matrix can be defined:

$$\mathbf{S}(n)=\left[s_{ij}\right]_{n\times n}, \tag{5-6}$$

where n=N-1, N is the number of output levels of ANPC. It can be defined as the status matrix which uniquely represents the operation status of a given ANPC at a given time or during a given period. Assignments to matrix elements are arranged according to abstract form: if the upper switch of SC_{ji} is on (***note the order of subscripts***), s_{ij} is 1, if the lower switch of SC_{ji} is on, s_{ij} is -1, otherwise, it is zero. Each element of the matrix is related to modulation algorithm and can be treated as a discrete function of the sampling period T_{PWM} (assuming the algorithm is regular sampling PWM, sample frequency is $f_{PWM}=1/T_{PWM}$) and the fundamental period T_1 ($f_1=1/T_1$). The status matrix can be rewritten as:

$$\mathbf{S}\left(n,kT_{PWM}\right)=\left[s_{ij}\left(kT_{PWM}\right)\right]_{n\times n}, \tag{5-7}$$

where k (k∈N, 1≤ k ≤ f_{PWM}/f_1) denotes the sampling position. For the sake of simple expression, it can also be presented as:

$$\mathbf{S}(n,k)=\left[s_{ij}(k)\right]_{n\times n}. \tag{5-8}$$

In Figure 5-3, four 5-level ANPC PWM patterns are shown: 5L-PWM-1 (see **Figure 5-3(a)**), 5L-PWM-2 (see **Figure 5-3(b)**), 5L-PWM-3 (see **Figure 5-3(c)**), 5L-PWM-4 (see **Figure 5-3(d)**). The status matrix of 5L ANPC can be expressed as the following form:

$$\mathbf{S}(4,k)=\begin{bmatrix} s_{11}(k) & s_{12}(k) & s_{13}(k) & s_{14}(k) \\ s_{21}(k) & s_{22}(k) & s_{23}(k) & 0 \\ s_{31}(k) & s_{32}(k) & 0 & 0 \\ s_{41}(k) & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-9}$$

To simplify the expression, it can be written in the column vector form:

$$\mathbf{S}(4,k)=\left[\vec{\mathbf{s}}_{g1}(k) \quad \vec{\mathbf{s}}_{g2}(k) \quad \vec{\mathbf{s}}_{g3}(k) \quad \vec{\mathbf{s}}_{g4}(k)\right] \tag{5-10}$$

where $\vec{\mathbf{s}}_{gi}(k)$ denotes the status vector form of *i*th SG, *i*=1,2,3,4.

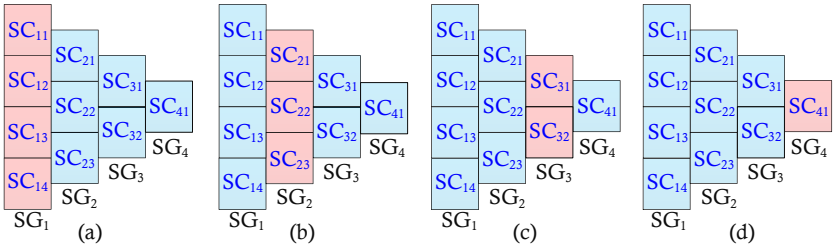


Figure 5-3 5-level ANPC PWM patterns. (a) 5L-PWM-1, (b) 5L-PWM-2, (c) 5L-PWM-3, (d) 5L-PWM-4.

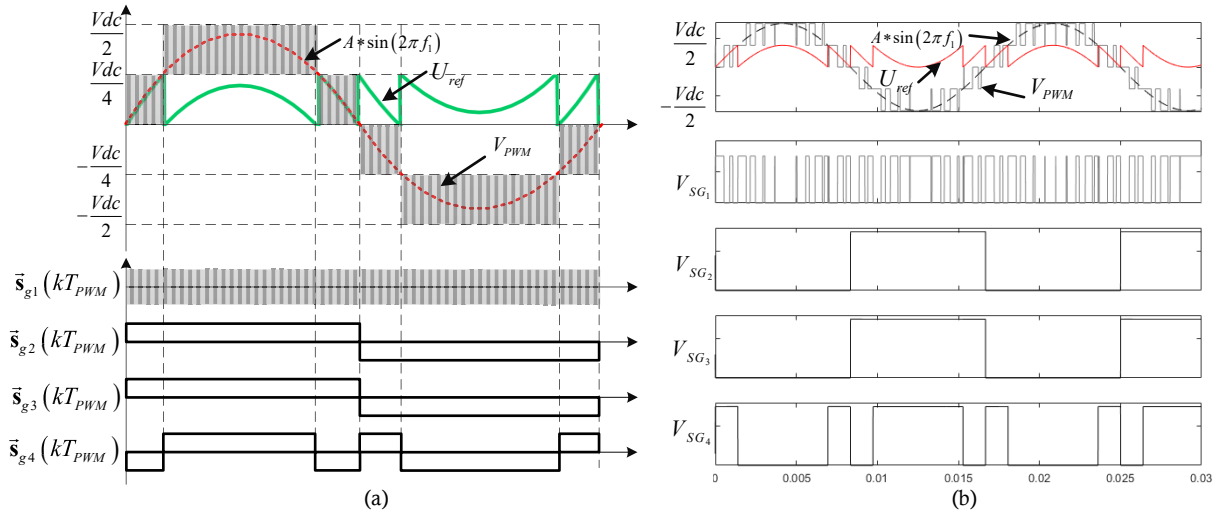


Figure 5-4 The carrier-based PWM generation and associated switching status of the upper switch of each SCs (same SG) of 5L-PWM-1. (a) value of one element in each status vectors, (b) blocking voltages in simulation.

The carrier-based PWM generation and associated switching status of the upper switch of each SCs (same SG) of 5L-PWM-1 are shown in **Figure 5-4**. Note that, in each status vector (represents the status of SG), all elements (represent the status of SCs) are expected to have the same value at the same time based on 5L-PWM-1, which gives:

$$\begin{cases} s_{11}(k)=s_{21}(k)=s_{31}(k)=s_{41}(k) \\ s_{12}(k)=s_{22}(k)=s_{32}(k) \\ s_{13}(k)=s_{23}(k) \end{cases} \tag{5-11}$$

C. Synthesized matrix models of ANPC converter

The synthesized matrix model $\mathbf{A}(n, k)$ of ANPC can be defined based on the structural matrix ($\mathbf{D}(n)=[d_{ij}]_{nxn}$) and status matrix ($\mathbf{S}(n, k)=[s_{ij}=(k)]_{nxn}$), which can be written as:

$$\mathbf{A}(n,k)=\left[a_{ij}(k)\right]_{n\times n}=\left[s_{ij}(k)\times d_{ij}\right]_{n\times n} \tag{5-12}$$

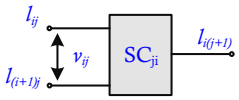


Figure 5-5 The potential voltages of the three terminals of a single SC.

In order to obtain the instantaneous voltage information in certain operation status, the potential voltages of the three terminals of a single SC (assuming that the basic half bridge circuit can be considered as an SC in ANPC topology) are defined first as shown in **Figure 5-5**. The l_{ji} and $l_{j(i+1)}$ denote the potential voltages of two input terminals of SC_{ji} ($l_{ji} \geq l_{j(i+1)}$). The $l_{(j+1)i}$ denotes the potential voltage of one output terminal of SC_{ji} and satisfying the following equation:

$$l_{i(j+1)}(k)=\begin{cases} l_{ij}(k) & ,if\ a_{ij}(k)>0 \\ l_{(i+1)j}(k) & ,if\ a_{ij}(k)<0 \\ \left(l_{ij}(k)+l_{(i+1)j}(k)\right)/2 & ,if\ a_{ij}(k)=0 \end{cases} \tag{5-13}$$

Then, the level matrix $\mathbf{L}(N, k)=[l_{ij}=(k)]_{NxN}$ of N-level ANPC can be derived based on the matrix model. Note that the first column of elements in $\mathbf{L}(N, k)$ should be arranged based on the potential voltages of input dc sources. A flexible reference voltage should not have effects on the identification of blocking voltages.

In **Figure 5-5**, the v_{ij} denotes the blocking voltage of SC_{ji}, and satisfying the following equation:

$$v_{ij}(k)=l_{ij}(k)-l_{(i+1)j}(k) \tag{5-14}$$

Then, the blocking voltage matrix:

$$\mathbf{V}(n,k)=\left[v_{ij}(k)\right]_{n\times n} \tag{5-15}$$

where N-level ANPC can be derived based on eqn. (5-13) and (5-14), which denotes the blocking voltages at a certain time with a modulation scheme of specific topology. The total blocking

voltage $V_{total}(k)$ of the N-level ANPC at time k can be calculated based on the sum of all elements of blocking voltage matrix as follows:

$$V_{total} = \sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} v_{ij}(k) \tag{5-16}$$

5.1.3 5L ANPC example

Here using an example of 5L ANPC to demonstrate the whole process. The status matrix at a certain time k_{t2} is assumed to be:

$$\mathbf{S}(4,k_{t2}) = \left[s_{ij}(k_{t2})\right]_{4\times4} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-17}$$

Then, the matrix model is

$$\mathbf{A}(4,k_{t2}) = \left[a_{ij}(k_{t2})\right]_{4\times4} = \left[s_{ij}(k_{t2}) \times d_{ij}\right]_{4\times4} = \mathbf{S}(4,k_{t2}) \tag{5-18}$$

Based on (5-13), the level matrix can be obtained:

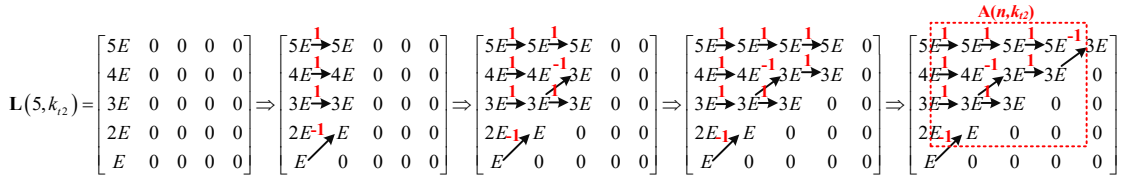
$$\mathbf{L}(5,k_{t2}) = \left[l_{ij}(k_{t2})\right]_{5\times5} = \begin{bmatrix} 5E & 5E & 5E & 5E & 3E \\ 4E & 4E & 3E & 3E & 0 \\ 3E & 3E & 3E & 0 & 0 \\ 2E & E & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ E & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-19}$$

Note that the first column of elements of $\mathbf{L}(5, k_{t2})$ are arranged according to possible potential voltages of input dc sources (assuming the lowest potential voltage is E).

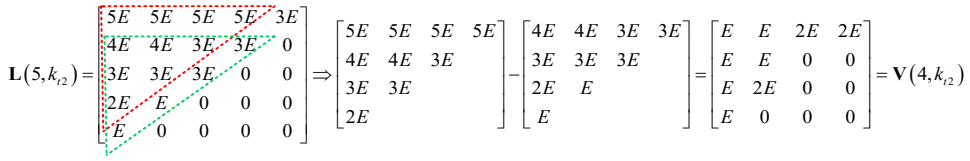
Based on (8) and (12), the blocking voltage matrix can be obtained:

$$\mathbf{V}(4,k_{t2}) = \left[v_{ij}(k_{t2})\right]_{4\times4} = \begin{bmatrix} E & E & 2E & 2E \\ E & E & 0 & 0 \\ E & 2E & 0 & 0 \\ E & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-20}$$

which indicates that the blocking voltages are E for SC_{11}~SC_{14} and SC_{21}~SC_{22}, $2E$ for SC_{23}, SC_{31} and SC_{41}, zero for SC_{32}. While the high blocking voltage is undesired in practice and should be avoided. This process can also be achieved by manual operation of the level matrix. The process can be expressed as (5-21) and (5-22).



(5-21)



(5-22)

The total blocking voltage $V_{total}(k_{t2})$ of the N-level ANPC at time k_{t2} can be calculated based on the sum of all elements of the blocking voltage matrix as follows:

$$V_{total} = \sum_{j=1}^{4}\sum_{i=1}^{4} v_{ij}\left(k_{t2}\right) = 12E \tag{5-23}$$

5.2. Topology simplification method

The existing methodology of obtaining simplified topologies is highly based on experiences, hardware configuration and product requirements. Due to the lack of general frameworks with a systematic analysis of topological structure, such a process is normally a case-by-case study. Besides, the PWM design process has to be carried out repeatedly for each newly simplified topology. It leads to repetitive work and further reduces the converter design efficiency, especially when the targeted topology contains many redundant switches, like the general form of an ANPC topology.

To overcome above-mentioned problems and achieve systematic derivation of simplified multilevel ANPC-based topology with properly designed PWM, a general approach will be proposed in this work based on the matrix models of multilevel converters. The matrix model of the multilevel converter is essentially a mathematic representation of switching network of multilevel converters. With mathematic expression, the topology simplification process can be carried out in a universal form and become a unique mathematical transformation. It utilizes the different ANPC PWM patterns in the form of matrix models and exhaustively search the different combinations of switching states of LSF parts of the topology. The HSF parts remain the same. By finding the unchanged element in the obtained matrix, the unnecessary switches can be identified easily. The simplified topology can thus be obtained by eliminating these unnecessary switches. With this approach, carrier-based modulation schemes of **Chapter 4** can also be directly implemented for any potential simplified topologies after derivation. Therefore, design and simplification process is realized in a decoupled way, avoiding repeated design for each potential simplified topology.

5.2.1 Direct derivation of simplified ANPC converter

With the help of the special matrices (i.e. structural matrix, status matrix, level matrix), the derivation process of simplified *N*-level ANPC converters can be directly derived based on the following steps:

(1) Derive all effective PWM patterns based on **Section 4.1.3** (in **Chapter 4**),

(2) Derive all level matrices considering all possible switching states of LSF SCs for each pattern,

(3) Find out the states of LSF SCs make sure the final produced level covers all the output ranges,

(4) Simplify the low switching frequency parts based on these states obtained in step 3. Note that, in step 2, the resulting potential voltage of one output terminal of HSF SC is uncertain and can be marked as the set of all possibilities.

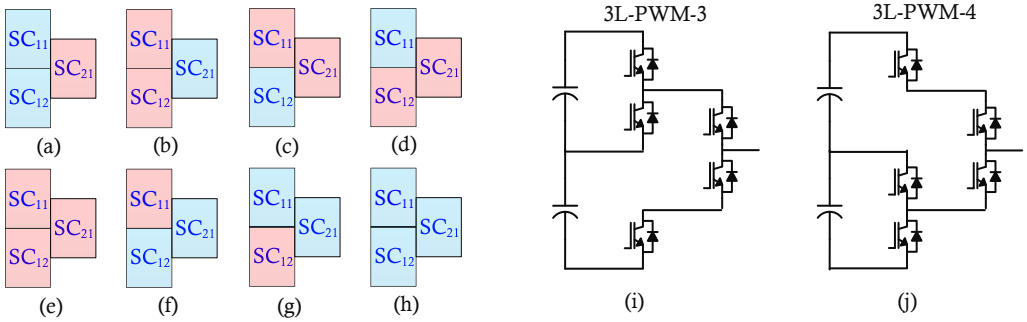


Figure 5-6 (a)~(h) 3L PWM patterns, (i)~(j) derivations of simplified 3L ANPC converter.

Take 3L ANPC as an example. First, the effective PWM patterns of 3L ANPC are derived. As shown in **Figure 5-2**, a phase leg of three-level ANPC converter contains three half bridge, or we call them SCs. And each one of them can be selected to operate at HSF to generate PWM pulses. Such that, there are totally 8 possibilities, and only five of them (**Figure 5-3(a)~(e)**) can generate proper PWM pulses as expected. For 3L ANPC, there are four PWM patterns of which the level-shift PWM can be easily applied. In [97], the first two PWM schemes (**Figure 5-6 (a)** and **(b)**) are referred as modulation 2 (**Figure 5-6(a)**), modulation 1 (**Figure 5-6(b)**), and are analyzed in detail. PS PWM with doubled equivalent inverter frequency can be applied for pattern 3L-PWM-5 (see **Figure 5-6(e)**) [218].

Then, the LSF SCs are to be exhaustively investigated. Since no LSF SCs exist in 3L-PWM-5, thus, the four patterns are considered. In **Table. 5-I**, all level matrices considering all possible switching states of LSF SCs for four patterns are derived.

Thirdly, the switching states that make sure the final produced level covers all the output ranges are determined as the LSF parts of 3L-PWM-3 and 3L-PWM-4.

Finally, the associated LSF parts of 3L-PWM-3 and 3L-PWM-4 can be simplified as shown in **Figure 5-6(i)** and **(j)**.

The structural matrix representation of **Figure 5-6(i)** is:

$$\mathbf{D}(2)=\begin{bmatrix}1 & 1\\ \frac{1}{2} & 0\end{bmatrix} \tag{5-24}$$

The structural matrix representation of **Figure 5-6(j)** is:

$$\mathbf{D}(2)=\begin{bmatrix}\frac{1}{2} & 1\\ 1 & 0\end{bmatrix} \tag{5-25}$$

Table 5-I Level Matrices of 3L PWM Patterns

3L-PWM-1			**3L-PWM-3**		
$SC_{11}SC_{12}$	**A**(3, k)	**L**(4, k)	SC_{12}	**A**(3, k)	**L**(4, k)
00	$\begin{bmatrix}-1 & SC21\\ -1 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 2L & 2L/1L\\ 2L & 1L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$	0	$\begin{bmatrix}SC11 & SC21\\ -1 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 3L/2L & 3L/2L/1L\\ 2L & 1L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$
01	$\begin{bmatrix}-1 & SC21\\ 1 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 2L & 2L\\ 2L & 2L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$	1	$\begin{bmatrix}SC11 & SC21\\ 1 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 3L/2L & 3L/2L\\ 2L & 2L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$
10	$\begin{bmatrix}1 & SC21\\ -1 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 3L & 3L/1L\\ 2L & 1L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$			
11	$\begin{bmatrix}1 & SC21\\ 1 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 3L & 3L/2L\\ 2L & 2L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$			
3L-PWM-2			**3L-PWM-4**		
SC_{21}	**A**(3, k)	**L**(4, k)	SC_{11}	**A**(3, k)	**L**(4, k)
0	$\begin{bmatrix}SC11 & -1\\ SC12 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 3L/2L & 2L/1L\\ 2L & 2L/1L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$	0	$\begin{bmatrix}-1 & SC21\\ SC12 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 2L & 2L/1L\\ 2L & 2L/1L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$
1	$\begin{bmatrix}SC11 & 1\\ SC12 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 3L/2L & 3L/2L\\ 2L & 2L/1L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$	1	$\begin{bmatrix}1 & SC21\\ SC12 & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L\\ 2L & 2L/1L & \\ 1L & & \end{bmatrix}$

5.2.2 Hierarchical derivation of simplified ANPC converter

In this section, hierarchical decomposition is introduced and used to split *N*-level ANPC topology into two non-overlapping sub-topologies (which have no common SCs), one is *N*–*i* level conventional ANPC (*N* and *i* are integers), the other one is complementary topology. Based on this principle, a 4L ANPC topology can be decomposed into a 3L ANPC sub-topology and the complementary part as shown in following **Figure 5-7** (following the method proposed in **Section 4.1.3**).

Therefore, the simplification process step 1 and 2 can be further modified through the hierarchical decomposition method:

(1) derive all effective PWM patterns and identify the sub-topologies that have been simplified in lower level decomposition,

(2) derive all level matrices considering all possible switching states of LSF SCs for each pattern that are not in identified sub-topologies in step 1.

Such iterative method can greatly reduce the duplication of work since low-level simplified results can be directly utilized and are suitable for high-level topology simplification.

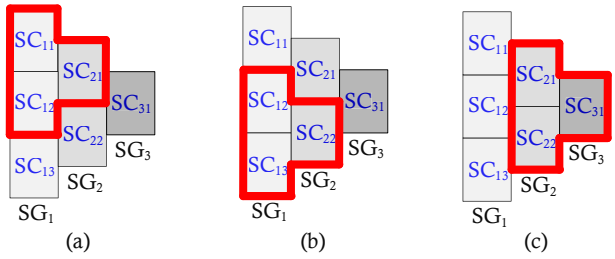


Figure 5-7 Three possible decompositions of 4L ANPC topology.

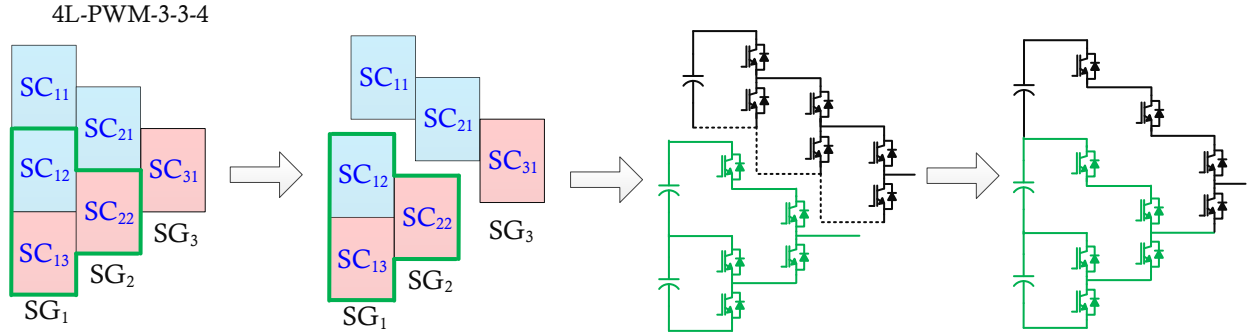


Figure 5-8 Derivations of simplified 4L ANPC converter based on existing simplified 3L ANPC converter.

Table 5-II Level Matrices of 4L-PWM-3-3-4

4L-PWM-3-3-4					
SC_{11} SC_{21}	**A**(4, *k*)	**L**(5, *k*)	SC_{11} SC_{21}	**A**(4, *k*)	**L**(5, *k*)
00	$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & -1 & SC31 \\ 1 & SC22 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$	10	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & SC31 \\ 1 & SC22 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$
01	$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & SC31 \\ 1 & SC22 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$	11	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & SC31 \\ 1 & SC22 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L & 4L & 4L/3L/2L/1L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$

Take 4L-PWM-3-3-4 as an example. This pattern can be found in **Appendix-B** and based on the decomposition result of **Figure 5-7(b)**. The derived simplified topology is shown in **Figure**

5-8, while the level matrices are obtained as shown in Table 5-II. The SC_{11} and SC_{21} can be simplified into one switch branch in **Figure 5-8**.

5.2.3 Demonstration Examples

Take 4L-PWM-3-1-6 as an example (this pattern can be found in **Appendix-B**). The derived simplified topology is shown in **Figure 5-9**, while the level matrices are obtained as shown in **Table 5-III**.

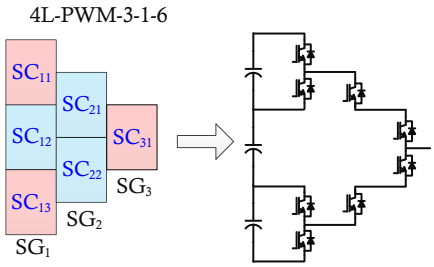


Figure 5-9 Derivations of simplified 4L ANPC converter through matrix models.

Table 5-III Level Matrices of 4L-PWM-3-1-6

4L-PWM-3-1-6		
$SC_{12}SC_{21}SC_{22}$	**A**(4, *k*)	**L**(5, *k*)
000	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & -1 & SC31 \\ -1 & -1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 2L & 2L/1L \\ 3L & 2L & 2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$
001	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & -1 & SC31 \\ -1 & 1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 2L & 2L \\ 3L & 2L & 2L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$
010	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & 1 & SC31 \\ -1 & -1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L/2L/1L \\ 3L & 2L & 2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$
011	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & 1 & SC31 \\ -1 & 1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L/2L \\ 3L & 2L & 2L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$
100	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & -1 & SC31 \\ 1 & -1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L \\ 3L & 3L & 2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$

101	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & -1 & SC31 \\ 1 & 1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 3L & 3L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$
110	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & 1 & SC31 \\ 1 & -1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L/2L/1L \\ 3L & 3L & 2L/1L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$
111	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & 1 & SC31 \\ 1 & 1 & \\ SC13 & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix}$

Based on **Table 5-III**, as long as the states of SC_{21} and SC_{22} are "10", the full produced levels can be guaranteed no matter what state of SC_{12} is. Therefore, the SC_{12}, the bottom switch of SC_{21}, the upper switch of SC_{22} can be simplified.

The simplified 4L ANPC can be represented as follows:

$$\mathbf{D}'(3)=\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-26}$$

Take 5L ANPC as another example. The derivation process of the simplified 5L topologies based on one of 5L PWM patterns is shown in **Figure 5-10**. A 4L ANPC sub-topology is derived in 5L ANPC topology firstly, of which the pattern is identical with 4L-PWM-3-1-6 as shown in **Figure 5-9**. Therefore, the same simplification can be applied to this sub-topology.

To further simplify the 5L ANPC under shown PWM pattern, all level matrices considering all possible switching states of LSF SC_{12} and SC_{13} are derived as shown in **Table 5-IV**. Three states, "00", "01", "11", can guarantee the final produced level covers all the five levels, which results in three simplified 5L ANPC topologies as shown in **Figure 5-10(a)~(c)**. While the Rockwell patent topology is **Figure 5-10(b)** [224].

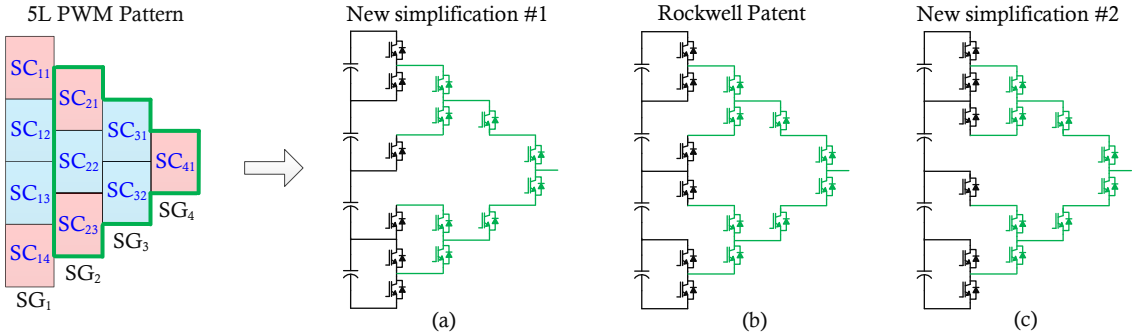


Figure 5-10 Derivations of simplified 5L ANPC converter through hierarchical decomposition.

Table 5-IV Level Matrices of One of 5l PWM Patterns

$SC_{11}SC_{21}$	$\mathbf{A}(4, k)$	$\mathbf{L}(5, k)$
00	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & SC21 & 1 & SC41 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & \\ -1 & SC23 & & \\ SC14 & & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 5L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L/3L & 5L/4L/3L & 5L/4L/3L/2L/1L \\ 4L & 3L & 3L & 2L/1L & \\ 3L & 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & & \\ 1L & & & & \end{bmatrix}$
01	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & SC21 & 1 & SC41 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & \\ 1 & SC23 & & \\ SC14 & & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 5L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L/3L & 5L/4L/3L & 5L/4L/3L/2L/1L \\ 4L & 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L & \\ 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L & & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & & \\ 1L & & & & \end{bmatrix}$
10	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & SC21 & 1 & SC41 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & \\ -1 & SC23 & & \\ SC14 & & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 5L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L/2L/1L \\ 4L & 4L & 4L & 2L/1L & \\ 3L & 2L & 2L/1L & & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & & \\ 1L & & & & \end{bmatrix}$
11	$\begin{bmatrix} SC11 & SC21 & 1 & SC41 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & \\ 1 & SC23 & & \\ SC14 & & & \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 5L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L & 5L/4L/3L/2L/1L \\ 4L & 4L & 4L & 3L/2L/1L & \\ 3L & 3L & 3L/2L/1L & & \\ 2L & 2L/1L & & & \\ 1L & & & & \end{bmatrix}$

5.2.4 Verifications

To verify the proposed method, the experiments of simplified ANPC topologies are carried out. The experimental parameters are chosen as shown in **Table 5-V**. DC sources are generated from Agilent E4360A.

Table 5-V Experimental Parameters

Parameters	Values	
	SI	p.u.
Rated Line voltage 4L	41 V	0.75
Rated Line voltage 5L	55 V	1.0
Rated Power	100 VA	1.0
DC-link Voltage 4L	60 V	--
DC-link Voltage 5L	80 V	--
Fundamental frequency	50Hz	1.0
Switching frequency	1560Hz	31.2

Through the proposed simplification process, a new simplified 4L ANPC can be derived using the same designed PWM scheme for the general 4L ANPC with pattern 4L-PWM-3-1-2. The

derivation of simplified 4L ANPC converter through matrix models are omitted here, while the simplified topology is shown in **Figure 5-11**.

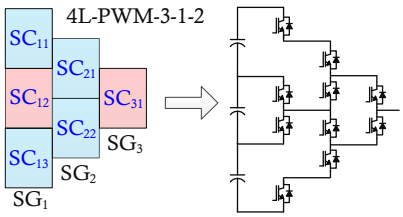


Figure 5-11 A simplified 4L ANPC topology based on 4L-PWM-3-1-2.

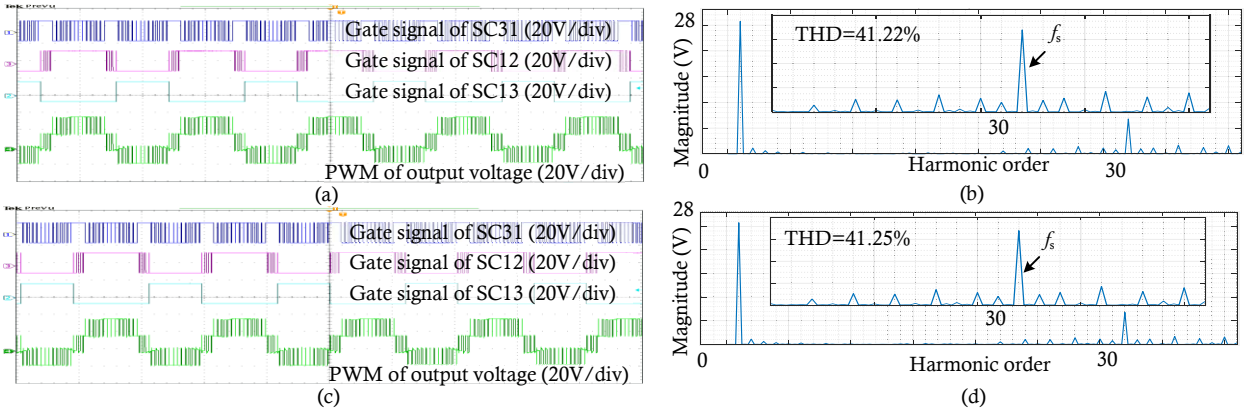


Figure 5-12 Experimental results of (a) original 4L ANPC topology. (b) FFT analysis of original 4L converter PWM waveform. (c) simplified 4L ANPC topology. (b) FFT analysis of simplified converter PWM waveform.

The PWM pulses and gate signals of the general 4L ANPC with pattern 4L-PWM-3-1-2 and the derived new topology are shown in **Figure 5-12(a)** and **(c)**. The FFT analysis results in **Figure 5-12(b)** and **(d)** show the same spectrums of the experimental waveforms as expected.

A new simplified 5L ANPC can be derived using the same designed PWM scheme for the general 5L ANPC with one of the 5L PWM patterns. The derivation of simplified 5L ANPC converter by utilizing the hierarchical decomposition method is omitted here, while the simplified topology is shown in **Figure 5-13**. The PWM pulses and gate signals of the general 5L ANPC with the chosen pattern and the derived new topology are shown in **Figure 5-14(a)** and **(c)**. The FFT analysis results in **Figure 5-14(b)** and **(d)** show the same spectrums of the experimental waveforms as expected.

Through the above verification, it is demonstrated that the operation principles can be inherited in the proposed method. Therefore, there is no need to go through the PWM design process again.

As for the DC balance management, any ANPC topologies with same output levels are considered equivalent since the input-output features of simplified topology is equivalent to the original one. While the switching actions are dependent on the PWM patterns, in theory, the simplified topology should have a similar loss distribution as the original circuit if the same pattern is implemented. In practice, various factors can affect the loss performance, e.g. modulation index, power factor, device type, etc. While one can always optimally utilize the proper pattern.

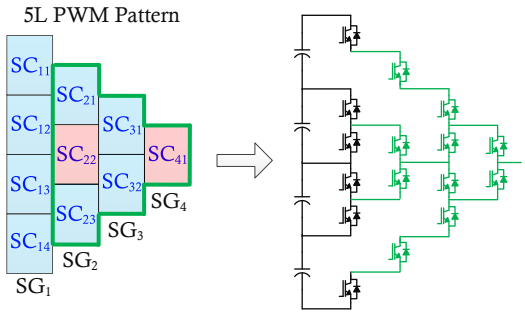


Figure 5-13 a simplified 5L ANPC topology based on 5L PWM pattern.

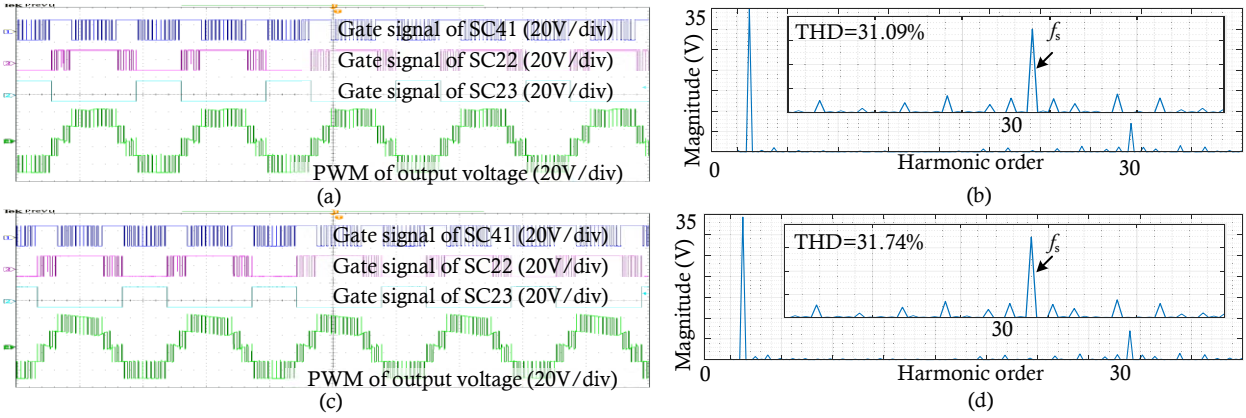


Figure 5-14 Experimental results of (a) original 4L ANPC topology. (b) FFT analysis of original 4L converter PWM waveform. (c) simplified 4L ANPC topology. (b) FFT analysis of simplified converter PWM waveform.

In summary, a mathematical matrix-model-based derivation of simplified ANPC converter is proposed in this paper. For an arbitrary ANPC topology with any PWM pattern, the LSF SCs can be simplified based on this method. Same PWM schemes of the general topology with a certain PWM pattern can be directly utilized for the simplified topology. Several examples of 4L/5L ANPC topologies are demonstrated. To easily extend this method for higher level topologies, hierarchical decomposition method can also be applied to systematically simplify the ANPC topology. The

advantages of the proposed approach include ease of developing simplified topology and direct PWM design of derived topologies. Experimental results verify the derived simplified topologies.

5.3. Fault-tolerant operation method

Due to adequate redundancies, the ANPC topology can utilize only part of its switches to produce the expected output level. The switching cells (formed by half-bridges) can be naturally classified into LSF cells and HSF cells. Only the HSF cells will be modulated by PWM schemes, at the same time, the LSF cells are maintained unchanged or operated at line frequency. Such features have been exhaustively investigated in **Chapter 4** through the carrier-based PWM method and were also validated in some simplified ANPC topologies in **Section 5.2**.

For a specific switching cell, it can be HSF cell or LSF cell under different carrier-based PWM patterns. So, the number of applicable PWM patterns can be very large for an ANPC topology due to the various combinations of HSF and LSF cells (e.g. over 100 for 4-level, over 1000 for 5-level). However, switch open-circuit faults could dramatically reduce the applicable number of switching patterns as the faulty switching cells cannot be selected as HSF cells, and accordingly, the related patterns are not applicable. Traditionally, the evaluation of the pattern under faults is performed case by case. This is not a big challenge for three-level ANPC topology (circuit shown in **Figure 5-2(a)**) due to the limited number of possible faulty-switch combinations [216]. However, the number of possible cases increases significantly for a higher-level ANPC topology (e.g. four- or five-level as shown in **Figure 5-2(b)** and **(c)**). Therefore, the traditional case-by-case methodology becomes increasingly inefficient and difficult to implement. To determine if the performance can be maintained the same as pre-fault, all applicable switching states need to be examined [215]. Moreover, the post-fault algorithms are normally realized through space-vector modulation methods, which lacks scalability and modularity towards higher-level topologies (e.g. four-level and five-level ANPC topologies). Therefore, for the design of fault-tolerant PWM, it is important to develop a mathematical method for high-level ANPC converters to avoid random enumeration and non-systematic case-by-case design.

5.3.1 Matrix models for fault-tolerant analysis

Reliability has always been an important design consideration for power converters. The failure of power switches, including short-circuit and open-circuit failures, is an important reason for power converter faults, particularly when the converter has many switches, e.g. multilevel converters. **Figure 5-15** summarizes some causes of these two types of failures. As one kind of the

most available devices, IGBT modules are normally classified into two types: the wire-bonded type and the press-pack type. In practice, open-circuit faults are normally found in the wire-bonded type modules, while short-circuit faults can be found in the press-pack type modules [225]. Since the short circuit faults could be easily handled by introducing local sensors and bypass hardware. On the other hand, the solutions for open-circuit fault-tolerant operation of ANPC converter are still not clear and lack of systematic analysis and design method, therefore, the following discussions are mainly focused on this issue.

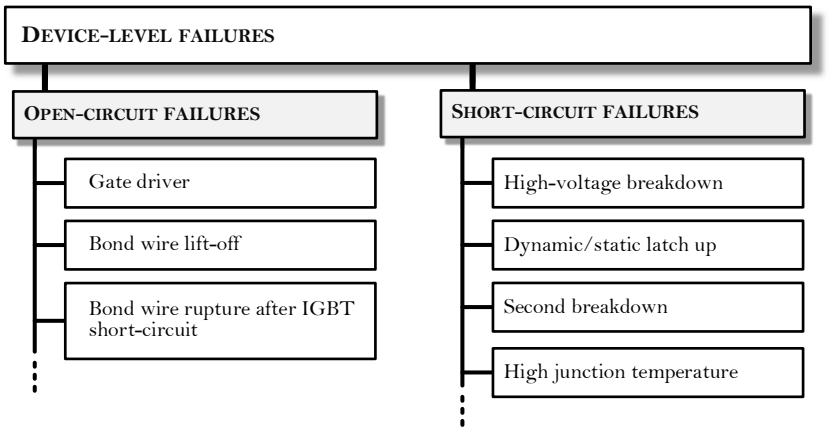


Figure 5-15 Failures and causes for power switching devices.

A. Matrix models of ANPC converters

As discussed in **section 5.1**, the output of the general ANPC topology under normal condition can be derived by the level selector (switching network) matrix **S** and the level generator (DC-link levels) matrix **L**:

$$V_o = \mathbf{SL} \tag{5-27}$$

Take 4-level as an example, the matrix expression is:

$$\begin{aligned} V_{out\_4L} &= \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} s_6 & s_6' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_4 & s_4' & 0 \\ 0 & s_5 & s_5' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_1 & s_1' & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & s_2 & s_2' & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & s_3 & s_3' \end{bmatrix} \right\} \mathbf{L}_{4L} \\ &= s_6 \left\{ s_4 \left[s_1 L_1 + s_1' L_2 \right] + s_4' \left[s_2 L_2 + s_2' L_3 \right] \right\} \\ &+ s_6' \left\{ s_5 \left[s_2 L_2 + s_2' L_3 \right] + s_5' \left[s_3 L_3 + s_3' L_4 \right] \right\} \end{aligned} \tag{5-28}$$

where $\mathbf{L}_{4L}=[L_1\ L_2\ L_3\ L_4]^T$ indicates the DC-link levels (see **Figure 5-2(b)**), s_1~s_6 and s'_1~s'_6 indicates the switching states of associated devices in the topology (see **Figure 5-2(b)**).

The compact expression of the status can be represented by the following equation:

$$\mathbf{S}(k)=\mathbf{SU}(k)-\mathbf{SL}(k)$$
$$=\begin{bmatrix} s_1(k) & s_4(k) & s_6(k) \\ s_2(k) & s_5(k) & \\ s_3(k) & & \end{bmatrix}-\begin{bmatrix} s_1'(k) & s_4'(k) & s_6'(k) \\ s_2'(k) & s_5'(k) & \\ s_3'(k) & & \end{bmatrix}=\begin{bmatrix} s_{11}(k) & s_{21}(k) & s_{31}(k) \\ s_{12}(k) & s_{22}(k) & \\ s_{13}(k) & & \end{bmatrix} \quad (5\text{-}29)$$

where $\mathbf{S}(k)$ represents the state matrix of ANPC topology at time k, $\mathbf{SU}(k)$ represents the state matrix of all the upper switches in ANPC topology at time k, $\mathbf{SL}(k)$ represents the state matrix of all the lower switches in ANPC topology at time k. The states of switches in $\mathbf{SU}(k)$ and $\mathbf{SL}(k)$ are assigned by using bi-logic: (1) if the switch is turned ON, then, the value of the state is "1"; (2) if the switch is turned OFF, then, the value of the state is "0". While the elements in state matrix $\mathbf{S}(k)$ are tri-logic and have three states: "1", "0", "−1", representing the operation states of associated half-bridges in the topology.

Define the level matrix $\mathbf{L}(k)$ as the following equation:

$$\mathbf{L}(k)=\begin{bmatrix} L_{11}(k) & L_{21}(k) & L_{31}(k) & L_{41}(k) \\ L_{12}(k) & L_{22}(k) & L_{32}(k) & \\ L_{13}(k) & L_{23}(k) & & \\ L_{14}(k) & & & \end{bmatrix} \quad (5\text{-}30)$$

The elements in $\mathbf{L}(k)$ are assigned based on the DC-voltage levels and the state matrix $\mathbf{S}(k)$, which follow the same approach in **section 5.1.2-C**.

To represent the equivalent input-output features of the topology, (2) can be further simplified into:

$$V_{out\_4L}=\begin{bmatrix} s_{e1} & s_{e2} & s_{e3} & s_{e4} \end{bmatrix}\mathbf{L}_{4L}, \quad (5\text{-}31)$$

where s_{e1}~s_{e4} can be expressed as: $s_{e1}=s_6\,s_4\,s_1$, $s_{e2}=s_6\,s_4\,s'_1+s_6\,s'_4\,s_2+s'_6\,s_5\,s_2$, $s_{e3}=s_6\,s'_4\,s'_1+s'_6\,s_5\,s'_2+s'_6\,s'_5\,s_3$, $s_{e4}=s'_6\,s'_5\,s'_3$, and denote the composite switching states associated with each DC-link level, and the value is "1" or "0". It denotes the associated switches with respect to various levels in a mathematical way.

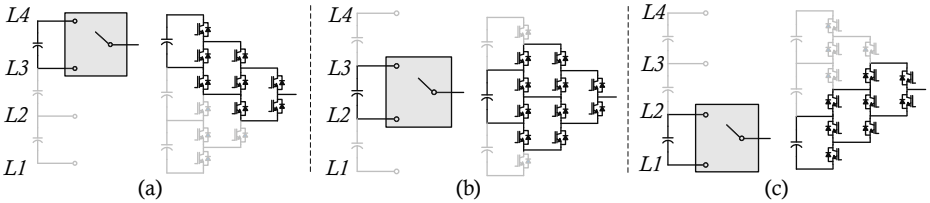


Figure 5-16 4-level ANPC converter with (a) operation range from *L4* to *L3*, (b) operation range from *L3* to *L2*, (c) operation range from *L2* to *L1*.

As **Figure 5-16** shows, for instance, s_{e1} of 4-level ANPC topology is determined by the product of s_6, s_4 and s_1, and if s_{e1} is "1", then, the L_4 can be generated by the converter as the output level.

Similarly, s_{e2} is determined by s_6, s'_6, s_5, s_4, s'_4, s_2, s'_1, can related with the generation of L_3 for converter output.

Based on the simplified matrix model, the redundancies inside the ANPC converters can be exhaustively investigated. For instance, in eq.(5-31), s_{e2} is consisted of the sum of three terms. Since each state of switches using bi-value logic, it can be translated into binary code. Therefore, the equation is calculated as binary system. And the applicable states of the topology are the ones that result in s_{e2}=1, which indicates that the 2nd level can be generated as long as the sum of three terms equals to "1".

To thoroughly investigate all these possibilities, one can simply test all combinations of the associated switches in s_{e2}, i.e., testing all values of the binary number ($s_6\, s_5\, s_4\, s_2\, s'_1$) from (11111) to (00000). Note that s'_6 and s'_4 are omitted if assumed their values are complementary of s_6 and s_4, respectively. The results are shown in **Figure 5-17**, which contains 12 states that result in s_{e2}=1. With the same approach, there is only one state for 1st or 4th level and 12 states for 3rd level.

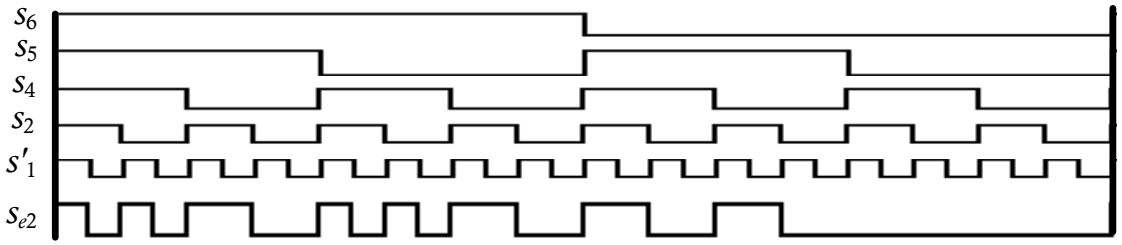
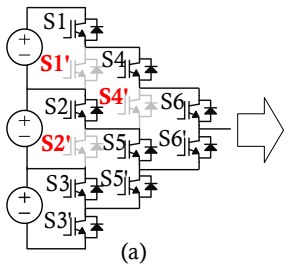


Figure 5-17 The logic form values of s_{e2} based on (4) by exhaustive investigation of associated states in 4-level topology (s'_6 and s'_4 are omitted since their values are complementary of s_6 and s_4, respectively). High level means logic value "1", low level means logic value "0".

B. Analysis of device faults

To systematically analyze the post-fault operation, matrix model **S**(k) and **L**(k) can be utilized. If there are open-switch faults in ANPC topology, certain elements in **SU**(k) or **SL**(k) will be fixed as "0". For instance, if three switches (S_1', S_2', S_4') are open-circuit as in **Figure 5-18(a)**, the resulting state matrix **S**(k) should be derived with $s_1'(k)$=$s_2'(k)$=$s_4'(k)$=0 as in **Figure 5-18(b)**.



(a)

$$\mathbf{S}(k) = \mathbf{SU}(k) - \mathbf{SL}(k)$$
$$= \begin{bmatrix} s_1(k) & s_4(k) & s_6(k) \\ s_2(k) & s_5(k) & \\ s_3(k) & & \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & s'_6(k) \\ 0 & s'_5(k) & \\ s'_3(k) & & \end{bmatrix}$$

(b)

Figure 5-18 (a) 4-level ANPC topology with three open-circuit switches (S1', S2', S4'). (b) The state matrix of the post-fault 4-level ANPC topology.

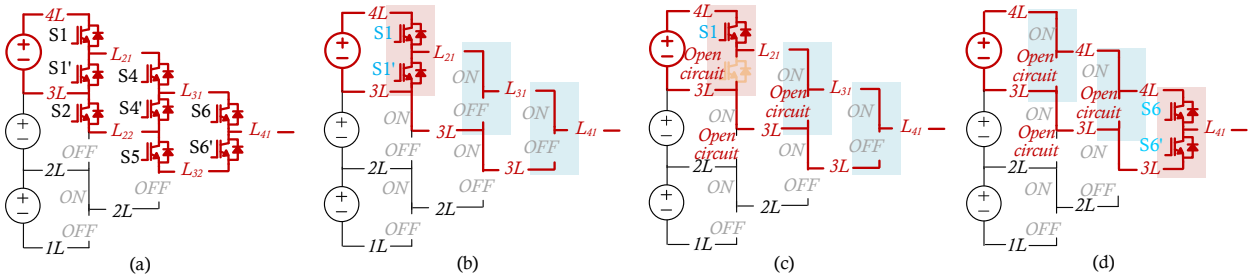


Figure 5-19 (a) Available switches for generation of 3rd and 4th voltage levels in 4-level ANPC under normal condition. (b) One possible modulation scheme with S1, S1' operating at PWM frequency, other switches are maintained fix states. (c) Implementation of the modulation scheme in (b) with three switches (S_1', S_2', S_4') are open-circuit. (d) Implementation of another modulation scheme with tolerance of open-circuit switches (S_1', S_2', S_4').

As a result, the converter output could be affected if the improper modulation schemes are implemented. In normal condition, eight switches are available to generate PWM waveforms consists of 4L and 3L, i.e. S_1, S_1', S_2, S_4, S_4', S_5, S_6, S_6' (see **Figure 5-19(a)**), resulting in a various operation patterns, e.g. **Figure 5-19(b)** with HSF (S_1, S_1') and LSF (S_4, S_4', S_5, S_6, S_6'). The associated $\mathbf{L}_1(k)$ can be derived as follow:

$$\mathbf{L}_1(k)=\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L & 4L/3L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L & \\ 2L & 2L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-32}$$

where the rightmost column element in $\mathbf{L}_1(k)$ indicates the converter under this modulation scheme can generate complete PWM waveforms consisting of 4L and 3L. However, this scheme could fail under fault condition. With the three open-circuit switches (S_1', S_2', S_4') (see **Figure 5-19(c)**), the eq.(5-32) should be modified into:

$$\mathbf{L}_2(k)=\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L & 4L & 4L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L & \\ 2L & 2L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-33}$$

Eq.(5-33) indicates only the 4th voltage level can be generated under this modulation scheme.

To guarantee the complete output capability, the implemented schemes should have tolerance of these open-circuit switches. In **Figure 5-19(d)**, another PWM pattern is implemented that S_6 and S_6' are modulated to generate the PWM waveforms, while the rest switches are maintained fix states. The associated $\mathbf{L}_3(k)$ under open-circuit switches (S_1', S_2', S_4') can be derived as follow:

$$\mathbf{L}_3(k)=\begin{bmatrix} 4L & 4L & 4L & 4L/3L \\ 3L & 3L & 3L & \\ 2L & 2L & & \\ 1L & & & \end{bmatrix} \tag{5-34}$$

Like the $\mathbf{L}_1(k)$, the rightmost column element in $\mathbf{L}_3(k)$ also demonstrates a complete output capability. Therefore, the open-circuit fault will not degrade the output capability. With the help of matrix model $\mathbf{S}(k)$ and $\mathbf{L}(k)$, same analysis process can also be done for the rest operation zones of 4-level ANPC converter, i.e. from 1st to 3rd voltage levels as shown in **Figure 5-20(a)** to **(b)**.

Combining all the three applicable schemes (**Figure 5-19(d)**, **Figure 5-20(a)** and **(b)**) results in the PWM pattern (see **Figure 5-20(c)**) with tolerance of open-circuit switches (S_1', S_2', S_4') during whole operation zones. It can be observed that the half bridges without fault can be assigned to generate the PWM waveforms, while the half bridges with faults are assigned to be fixed states.

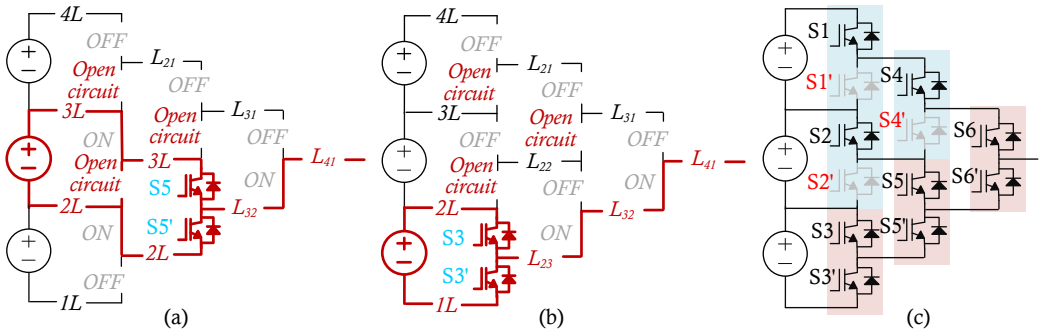


Figure 5-20 Post-fault 4-level ANPC with: (a) implementation of applicable scheme for generation of 2nd and 3rd voltage levels in, (b) implementation of applicable scheme for generation of 1st and 2nd voltage levels, (c) a PWM pattern that can guarantee a complete output capability.

5.3.2 Systematic operation design

The aforementioned fault-tolerant analysis shows a great chance that the fault-tolerant operation can be achieved by exhaustively investigating the applicable PWM pattern. To systematically realize this objective, a five-step process is proposed as shown in **Figure 5-21**. In particular, the logic calculations are summarized from the matrix-model-based analysis to further facilitate the operation design process.

The **1st step** is to derive the general matrix model of ANPC converters, which follows the same way in **section 5.1.1**. Both the internal structure and the input-output features can be preserved in such models.

The **2nd step** is to simplify the expression of (5-27) to obtain the minimum matrix form. Therefore, a strict relationship between the switching states and each level can be established in a mathematical way. In specific, the polynomials in **S** should be expanded and then (5-27) can be rewritten as (5-35)

$$V_o = \mathbf{SL} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{e1} & s_{e2} & \cdots & s_{ei} & \cdots \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{L}_N \tag{5-35}$$

Then s_{ei} can be used to find out which switches contribute to generating a specific output level in $\mathbf{L}_N = [L_N \ldots L_i \ldots L_2 \, L_1]^T$.

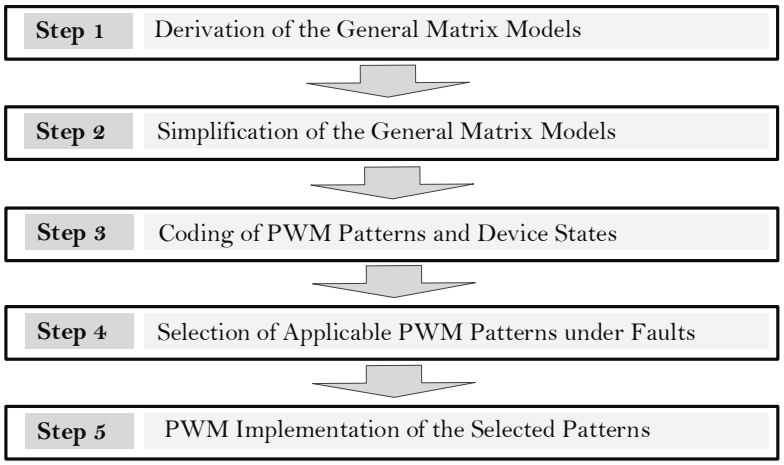


Figure 5-21 Flow chart of the proposed fault-tolerant operation for ANPC topology based on the matrix method.

The **3rd step** is to assign binary codes for the switching devices under faults and all the PWM patterns of normal condition ANPC topology. Therefore, the pattern selection can be treated as a mathematical calculation process.

Firstly, the switching states of all devices are defined as a binary variable *State*:

$$State \triangleq \left(s_1 s_2 s_3 \cdots s_i \cdots s_1' s_2' s_3' \cdots s_i' \cdots \right) \tag{5-36}$$

Then, the device fault indicator of open-circuit fault is defined as a binary variable $Fault_{OC}$:

$$Fault_{OC} \triangleq \left(f_1 f_2 f_3 \cdots f_i \cdots f_1' f_2' f_3' \cdots f_i' \cdots \right) \tag{5-37}$$

where the bits regarding open-circuit switches are assigned as "0", normal ones are set as "1".

Then, the device states with faults can be assigned as:

$$State\_f \triangleq State \ \mathbf{AND} \ Fault_{OC} \tag{5-38}$$

Also, each PWM pattern is named as a pattern code, which can be defined as:

$$Pattern \triangleq \left(p_1 p_2 p_3 \cdots p_i \cdots \right) \tag{5-39}$$

where p_i denotes the operation mode of the i^{th} half-bridge cell (consist of switches s_i and s_i'). If the cell is LSF, the value of p_i is set as "0"; if the cell is HSF, the value of bit p_i is set as "1".

The **4th step** is to select the applicable PWM for fault-tolerant operation. This step is mainly based on logic operations; therefore, the complexity could be very low. More importantly, it can be processed in an offline way to form a comprehensive and systematic database of all possible patterns.

In detail, to maintain the output performance, the associated half-bridge with fault switches can no longer be selected as HSF cell due to the inability of generating PWM waveforms. To filter out those PWM patterns, a selection code can be defined based on the high/low part of the fault indicator:

$$Select \triangleq Fault_H \ \textbf{AND} \ Fault_L \tag{5-40}$$

where $Fault_H=(f_1 f_2 f_3 ... f_i ...)$, $Fault_L=(f_1' f_2' f_3' ... f_i' ...)$.

And the following equation should be satisfied for all of the applicable PWM patterns under faults:

$$\begin{cases} \mathbf{0} = Pattern \ \textbf{XOR} \ \left(Pattern \ \textbf{AND} \ Select \right) \cdots (5\text{-}41a) \\ \exists \ State\_f \left(Pattern \right) : (s_{ei} = 1|_{i=1 \cdots N}) \cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots (5\text{-}41b) \end{cases} \tag{5-41}$$

where **0** is zero matrix and it is used to check if the *Pattern* has the fault-condition HSF cell. The bottom equation is to check if variable *State_f* under *Pattern* can guarantee s_{ei} equal to "1" for every $i \in \{1, 2, ..., N\}$. By evaluating if the *Pattern* fulfills (9), the pattern can be examined to see if it is applicable for the fault condition.

The **5th step** is to implement the chosen patterns for fault-tolerant operation, which can be modularly achieved by using the carrier-based PWM design method. Since all the fault-tolerant carrier-based PWM patterns are included in the complete set of the normal ANPC cases, therefore, the same PWM design method in [199] are still valid and can be implemented without changes.

5.3.3 Demonstration Examples

In this section, case studies will be presented and show how to utilize the proposed method to directly find out the applicable pattern under fault conditions and use it for fault-tolerant operation. In particular, the multi-switch open-circuit faults are considered for a 5-level ANPC converter.

A. Step-1: Deriving the general matrix model

For 5-level ANPC converter (shown in **Figure5-2 (c)**), the general matrix model is:

$$V_{out\_5L}=\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix}s_{10} & s'_{10}\end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{SG}_4}\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix}s_8 & s'_8 & 0\\ 0 & s_9 & s'_9\end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{SG}_3}\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix}s_5 & s'_5 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & s_6 & s'_6 & 0\\ 0 & 0 & s_7 & s'_7\end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{SG}_2}\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix}s_1 & s'_1 & 0 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & s_2 & s'_2 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 0 & s_3 & s'_3 & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & s_4 & s'_4\end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{SG}_1}\mathbf{L}_5 \quad (5\text{-}42)$$

where s_i indicate the state of devices: (1) s_i =1, if the switch is ON state; (2) s_i =0, if the switch is OFF state. $\mathbf{L}_5=[L_5\ L_4\ L_3\ L_2\ L_1]^{\mathrm{T}}$ indicates the DC-link levels (see **Figure 5-2(c)**), s_1~s_{10} and s'_1~s'_{10} indicate the switching states of associated devices in the topology.

B. Step-2: Simplification of the matrix model

In this step, (5-35) should be simplified into:

$$V_{out\_5L}=\begin{bmatrix}s_{e1} & s_{e2} & s_{e3} & s_{e4} & s_{e5}\end{bmatrix}\mathbf{L}_5, \quad (5\text{-}43)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
s_{e1} &= s_{10}s_8s_5s_1,\\
s_{e2} &= s_{10}s_8s_5s'_1+s_{10}s_8s'_5s_2+s_{10}s'_8s_6s_2+s'_{10}s_9s_6s_2,\\
s_{e3} &= s_{10}s_8s'_5s'_2+s_{10}s'_8s_6s'_2+s_{10}s'_8s'_6s_3+s'_{10}s_9s_6s'_2+s'_{10}s_9s'_6s_3+s'_{10}s'_9s_7s_3,\\
s_{e4} &= s_{10}s'_8s'_6s'_3+s'_{10}s_9s'_6s'_3+s'_{10}s'_9s_7s'_3+s'_{10}s'_9s'_7s_4,\\
s_{e5} &= s'_{10}s'_9s'_7s'_4.
\end{aligned}$$

where s_{e1}~s_{e5} denote the composite switching states associated with five DC-link levels $\mathbf{L}_5=[L_5\ L_4\ L_3\ L_2\ L_1]^{\mathrm{T}}$. Since each state of switches using bi-value logic, it can be translated into binary code. Therefore, the equation is calculated as binary system. And the applicable states of the topology are the ones that result in s_{ei}=1, which indicates that the (5-i)$^{\mathrm{th}}$ level can be generated if the sum of all terms equals to "1".

The circuit-level operation features can be demonstrated in **Figure 5-22**, which shows the device utilization of 5-level ANPC converter with different operation regions. For example, s_{e2} indicates the 4$^{\mathrm{th}}$ voltage level is related to switches: (s'_1 s_2 s_5 s'_5 s_6 s_8 s'_8 s_9 s_{10} s'_{10}), e.g. (1) if their states are (1010010010), then, s_{e2}=1; (2) if their states are (0010010010), then, s_{e2}=0.

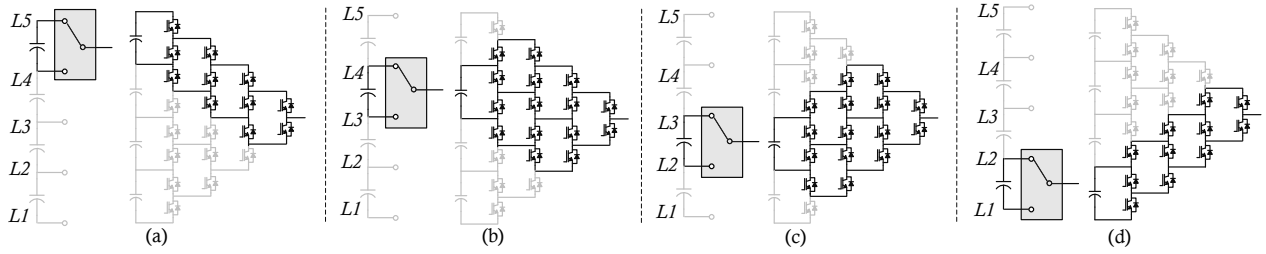


Figure 5-22 The device utilization of 5-level ANPC converter with (a) operation range from L_5 to L_4, (b) operation range from L_4 to L_3, (c) operation range from L_3 to L_2, (d) operation range from L_2 to L_1.

C. Step-3: Coding for devices and patterns

The device states of 5-level case are coded as:

$$State = (s_1 s_2 s_3 s_4 s_5 s_6 s_7 s_8 s_9 s_{10} s_1' s_2' s_3' s_4' s_5' s_6' s_7' s_8' s_9' s_{10}') \tag{5-44}$$

And the pattern is coded as:

$$Pattern = (p_1 p_2 p_3 p_4 p_5 p_6 p_7 p_8 p_9 p_{10}) \tag{5-45}$$

Note that there could be over one thousand PWM patterns for 5-level topology that can be derived similarly, here only two patterns are demonstrated as examples: $Pattern_1$ (**Figure 5-23(a)**) and $Pattern_2$ (**Figure 5-23(b)**). One is with seven HSF SCs, one is with two HSF SCs.

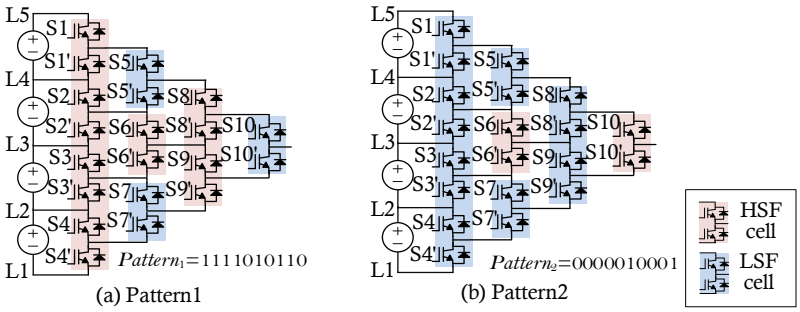


Figure 5-23 Two PWM patterns with different arrangements of cells.

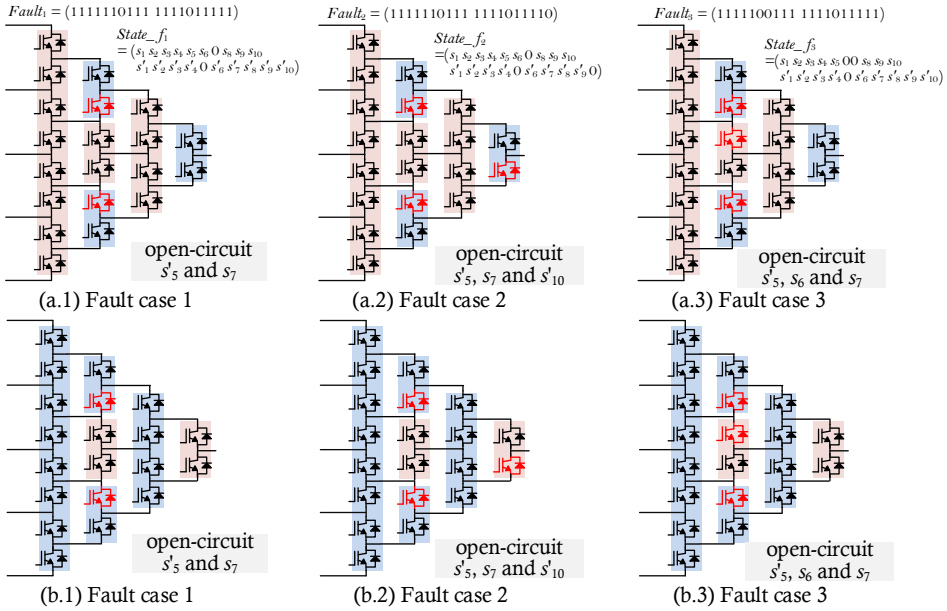


Figure 5-24 Three fault cases with multiple open-circuit switches in 5-level ANPC topology. (a) Using pattern 1 under (a.1) fault case 1, (a.2) fault case 2, (a.3) fault case 3; (b) Using pattern 2 under (b.1) fault case 1, (b.2) fault case 2, (b.3) fault case 3.

Three fault cases are demonstrated here with these PWM patterns as shown in **Figure 5-24 (a.1)~(a.3)** and **(b.1)~(b.3)**. And these faults can be coded as listed with associated *State_f* in

Figure 5-24. Case 1 is a two-switch fault, while case 2 and 3 are three-switch fault which could easily lead to very time-consuming workloads with conventional approach.

D. Step-4: Selection of applicable PWM patterns

To select the proper pattern ($Pattern_1$, $Pattern_2$), first, the selection codes for case 1~3 should be calculated:

$$\begin{aligned} Select_1 &= (1111010111), \\ Select_2 &= (1111010110), \\ Select_3 &= (1111000111). \end{aligned} \tag{5-46}$$

Then, the equation (5-41) is utilized to checked with all the variables ($Pattern_1$, $Pattern_2$, $State\_f_y$, $Select_y$, y=1, 2, 3) to find out the eligibility of the patterns. Based on the first part of (5-34a), the calculation results are shown in **Table 5-VI**. It can be determined the $Pattern_1$ is not applicable for fault case 3 and the $Pattern_2$ is not applicable for fault case 2 and 3.

Table 5-VI The Eligibility of the Patterns through (5-41A)

$Pattern_x$ **XOR** $\left(Pattern_x$ **AND** $Select_y\right)$	$Select_1$	$Select_2$	$Select_3$
$Pattern_1$=1111010110	0000000000	0000000000	0000010000
$Pattern_2$=0000010001	0000000000	0000000001	0000010000

To find out the eligibility of the $Pattern_1$ under fault case 1 and 2, and the eligibility of the $Pattern_2$ under fault case 1, the (5-41b) can be utilized. Note that the matrix model (5-43) under fault condition can be further simplified by assigning "OFF" state for fault switches, i.e. "0". For example, under fault case 1, the model is:

$$\begin{cases} s_{e1}\big|_{State\_f1} = s_{10}s_8s_5s_1 \\ s_{e2}\big|_{State\_f1} = s_{10}s_8s_5s_1' + s_{10}s_8's_6s_2 + s_{10}'s_9s_6s_2 \\ s_{e3}\big|_{State\_f1} = s_{10}s_8's_6s_2' + s_{10}s_8's_6's_3 + s_{10}'s_9s_6s_2' + s_{10}'s_9s_6's_3 \\ s_{e4}\big|_{State\_f1} = s_{10}s_8's_6's_3' + s_{10}'s_9s_6's_3' + s_{10}'s_9's_7's_4 \\ s_{e5}\big|_{State\_f1} = s_{10}'s_9's_7's_4' \end{cases} \tag{5-47}$$

Moreover, by implementing different PWM patterns, parts of the switches will be operated at HSF while the rest will be maintained a fixed state during the operation region. The switches in HSF cells with these two PWM patterns are summarized as in **Table 5-VII**.

Table 5-VII The Switches in HSF Cells with the Two Patterns

	L5, L4	L4, L3	L3, L2	L2, L1
$Pattern_1$=1111010110	S1,S1',S8,S8'	S2,S2',S6,S6',S9,S9'	S3,S3',S6,S6',S8,S8'	S4,S4',S9,S9'
$Pattern_2$=0000010001	S10,S10'	S6,S6'	S6,S6'	S10,S10'

In details, it is guaranteed that the switches in HSF cells can be assigned as "1" within a certain operation region. For instance, with $Pattern_1$ under fault case 1, the switches (s_1, s_1', s_8, s_8') can be assigned as ON-state and results in following models:

$$\begin{cases} s_{e1}\big|_{State\_f1}^{Pattern1} = s_{10}s_5 \cdots (\text{for } L_5) \\ s_{e2}\big|_{State\_f1}^{Pattern1} = s_{10}s_5 + s_{10}s_6s_2 + s'_{10}s_9s_6s_2 \cdots (\text{for } L_4) \end{cases} \tag{5-48}$$

Based on the definition of PWM pattern, the switching states of each LSF cells can be changed once at line frequency. Therefore, the upper (or lower) switching states can form a set of binary codes, and each code is associated with an operation zone (e.g. [L_5, L_4], [L_4, L_3], [L_3, L_2], [L_2, L_1])

It is easy to find out the (5-41b) can be satisfied as long as switches (s_5, s_{10}) in LSF cells are assigned as ON-state (i.e. code "11") during [L_5, L_4]. Following the same way, it can be seen that the rest regions can also satisfy (5-41b). Therefore, $Pattern_1$ is applicable under fault case 1. Based on the same approach, $Pattern_2$ is not applicable.

The results of the examination are summarized in **Table 5-VIII**. It is shown that both patterns can be used for case 1 fault but cannot be applied for case 2 and case 3 faults in theory. Note that more switch fault cases in 5-level or other ANPC topologies can also be exhaustively investigated based on the same methodology.

Table 5-VIII The Summary of Various PWM Patterns

Codes		**Applicable or Not?**
Case 1 $Fault_1$ = (1111110111 1111011111) open-circuit s'_5 and s_7 $State\_f_1 = (s_1 s_2 s_3 s_4 s_5 s_6 \, 0 \, s_8 s_9 s_{10} \; s'_1 s'_2 s'_3 s'_4 \, 0 \, s'_6 s'_7 s'_8 s'_9 s'_{10})$		
$Pattern_1$	1111010110	Applicable
$Pattern_2$	0000010001	Applicable
Case 2 $Fault_2$ = (1111110111 1111011110) open-circuit s'_5, s_7 and s'_{10} $State\_f_2 = (s_1 s_2 s_3 s_4 s_5 s_6 \, 0 \, s_8 s_9 s_{10} \; s'_1 s'_2 s'_3 s'_4 \, 0 \, s'_6 s'_7 s'_8 s'_9 \, 0)$		
$Pattern_1$	1111010110	Not applicable, cannot make sure s_{ei} equal to "1" for every $i \in \{1, 2, ..., N\}$.
$Pattern_2$	0000010001	Not applicable, fault switches will affect the operation of the HSF cells

Case 3 $Fault_3$ = (1111100111 1111011111) open-circuit s'_5, s_6 and s_7 $State\_f_3 = (s_1 s_2 s_3 s_4 s_5\ 00\ s_8 s_9 s_{10}\ s'_1 s'_2 s'_3 s'_4\ 0\ s'_6 s'_7 s'_8 s'_9 s'_{10})$		
$Pattern_1$	1111010110	Not applicable, fault switches will affect the operation of the HSF cells
$Pattern_2$	0000010001	

E. Step-5: PWM implementation

After the pattern selection, carrier-based PWM for the normal 5-level ANPC can be directly implemented, which can be modularly designed based on **Chapter 4**. The LS PWM can be adopted as investigated in **Section 4.2**. Four carriers should be compared with the reference waveform, and then, the resulting logics are assigned to different HSF/LSF cells based on the utilized pattern.

In detail, the modulation logic of $Pattern_1$ can be demonstrated as in **Figure 5-25** using the LS PWM approach. The logic generation results will not be changed before and after the faults, therefore, its applicability under faults could be verified. Similarly, the modulation logic of $Pattern_2$ can be demonstrated as in **Figure 5-26**.

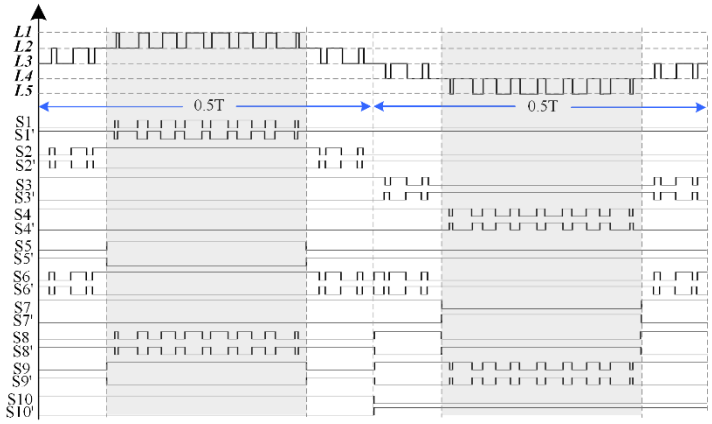


Figure 5-25 The detailed diagram of the PWM scheme designed for $Pattern_1$.

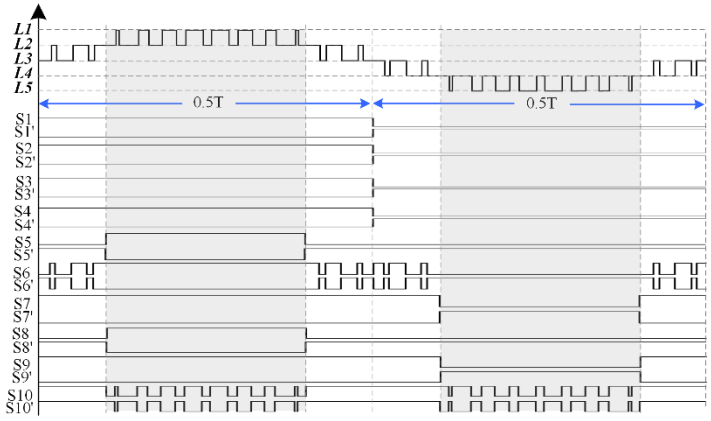


Figure 5-26 The detailed diagram of the PWM scheme designed for $Pattern_2$.

5.3.4 Experimental verifications

To further verify the proposed OCFT operation method, experiments of this 5-level case considering case 1~3 open-circuit faults with $Pattern_1$ and $Pattern_2$ are carried out in the single-phase platform shown in **Figure 5-27**. Since the fault diagnosis is not the focus of this work, all device faults are predetermined and assumed to be detected by the controller during the operation of the PWM. The fault conditions are realized through actively sending the turn-OFF gating signals of certain switches and overwrite the original modulation signals, so that these devices will act like in open-circuit condition. To monitor the status of the switches, six channels of the scope are used for (S4', S5', S6, S7, S8, S10), while one channel is for output PWM pulses, one is for the load current.

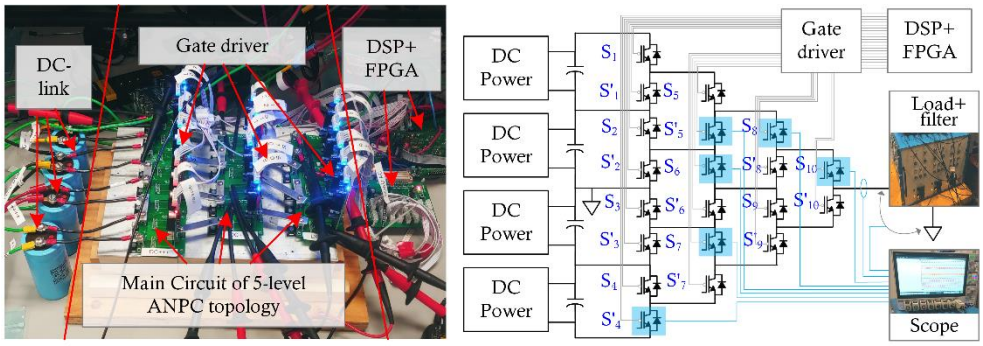


Figure 5-27 The single-phase 5-level experimental platform with the line frequency 60Hz, while the carrier/switching frequency is 1560Hz. The DC links of the converter are clamped by the DC power supply, and the total voltage is 120V. The RL load is chosen with value: 55ohm/30mH.

Based on the work in **chapter 4**, each pattern has a certain device utilization mode during the operation regions. As shown in **Figure 5-28**, to generation the complete 5-level waveforms, the converter should be operated during four regions, i.e. [L5, L4], [L4, L3], [L3, L2], [L2, L1]. For $Pattern_1$,its device utilizations are demonstrated in **Figure 5-28(a.1)~(a.4)**. The different device utilizations results in different fault-tolerant features.

As can be seen in **Figure 5-28(a.1)~(a.4)** with **fault case 1**, the device open-circuit faults of (s'_5, s_7) can be tolerated by following the PWM pattern, since they will not block the current paths of the converter, thus, cannot affect the output waveforms during all operation regions. Similar analysis can be done for $Pattern_2$ as shown in **Figure 5-28(b.1)~(b.4)**. The experimental results in **Figure 5-29** are showing the same thing: both the patterns can tolerant the fault case 1 and guarantee the output performance as in normal operation condition.

With **fault case 2** using $Pattern_1$, the open-circuit faults of (s'_5, s_7, s'_{10}) will block the current paths during the region [L4, L3] (**Figure 5-30(a.2)**) and [L2, L1] (**Figure 5-30(a.4)**), therefore,

cannot make sure the output capability in theory. Situation is different for $Pattern_2$, and the open-circuit faults of (s'_5, s_7, s'_{10}) will interfere the high frequency cells during the region [L5, L4] (**Figure 5-30(b.1)**) and [L2, L1] (**Figure 5-30(b.4)**), therefore, cannot be utilized during the fault case 2. The experimental results in **Figure 5-31** demonstrate the above analysis: neither of the patterns can maintain the output performance after the fault case 2. The output voltage and load current waveforms have obvious distortions. Note that $Pattern_1$ under fault 2 can still operate the converter with correct experimental waveforms in [L4, L3] as long as the output current is positive and compatible with the conducting direction of the anti-parallel diode of the fault switch (s'_{10}). Due to the half-cycle symmetry in ANPC topologies, the output current could be negative in the [L3, L2] and/or [L2, L1], when the anti-parallel diode of the fault switch (s'_{10}) blocks the current and cause distortions in output waveforms in **Figure 5-31(a)**.

As for **fault case 3**, the open-circuit faults of (s'_5, s_6, s_7) will block the current paths during the region [L5, L4] for both patterns as shown in **Figure 5-32(a.1)** and **(b.1)**. In addition, it is easy to see that the open-circuit faults of (s'_5, s_6, s_7) will interfere the operation of the high frequency cells in both patterns. The disturbed operation regions are [L4, L3] (**Figure 5-32(a.2)** and **(b.2)**) and [L3, L2] (**Figure 5-32(a.3)** and **(b.3)**). Therefore, the intended operation cannot be realized in a right way. The experimental results in **Figure 5-33** verify this: obvious distortions can be seen in the output voltage and load current waveforms in both patterns.

In summary, systematic analysis and selection for applicable carrier-based PWM patterns are achieved in a mathematical way. By using such a tool, the applicable PWM patterns of fault-condition ANPC converter can be systematically derived. Therefore, random enumeration and non-systematic case-by-case design can be avoided for ANPC converters. Without losing the generality, the 5-level cases with multiple open-circuit fault switches are discussed as examples. The experimental results show that the output levels can be appropriately produced with the selected applicable PWM pattern, especially under multiple switch open-circuit faults.

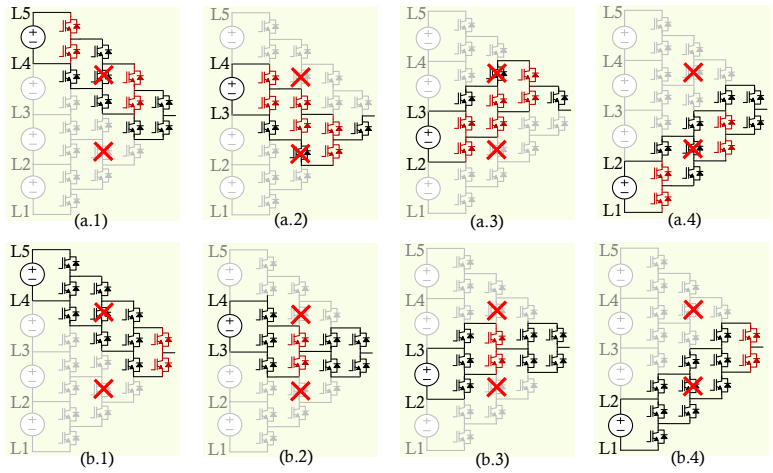


Figure 5-28 The **fault case 1** with multiple open-circuit switches (s'_5, s_7) in 5-level ANPC topology: (a.1)-(a.4) using **Pattern 1**, (b.1)-(b.4) using **Pattern 2**. From left to right are the utilized switches during four operation regions covering all output levels, e.g. (a.1) is for [L5, L4], (a.2) is for [L4, L3], (a.3) is for [L3, L2], (a.4) is for [L2, L1].

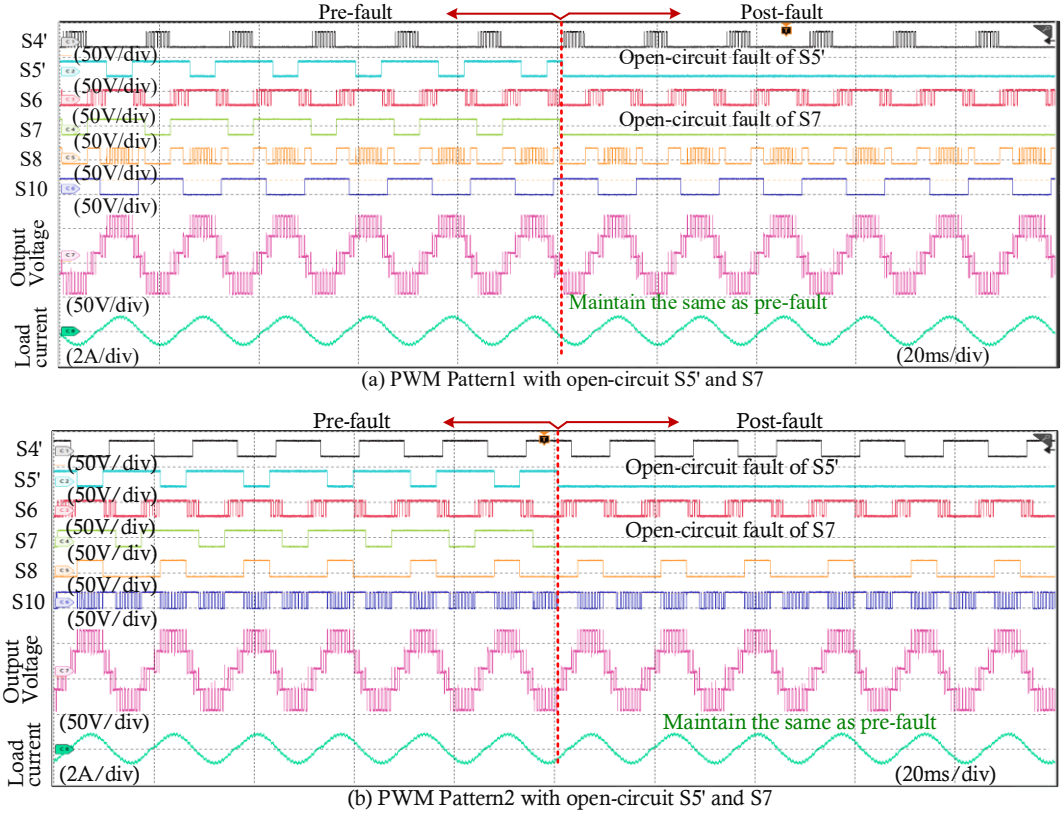


Figure 5-29 Experimental results of 5L ANPC topology before and after open-circuit faults with implemented carrier-based PWM scheme under **fault case 1** with (a) **Pattern 1**, (b) **Pattern 2**. Waveforms from top to bottom: switching states of S4', S5', S6, S7, S8, S10, the output PWM voltage, the load current.

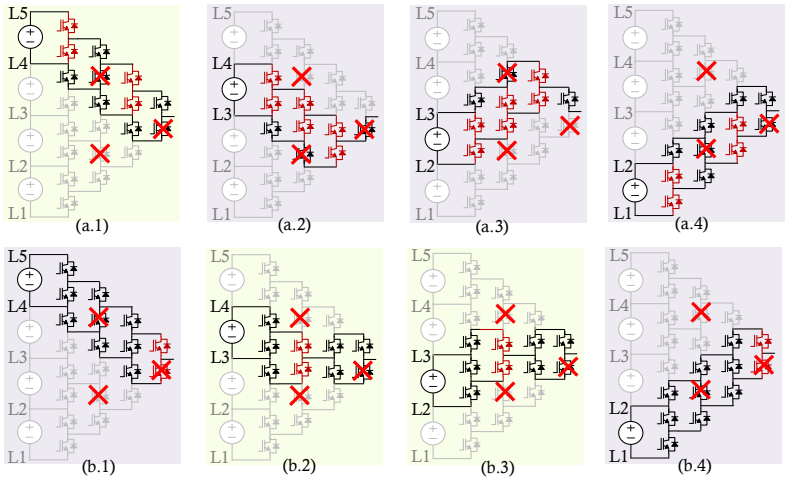


Figure 5-30 The **fault case 2** with multiple open-circuit switches (s'_5, s_7, s'_{10}) in 5-level ANPC topology: (a.1)-(a.4) using **Pattern 1**, (b.1)-(b.4) using **Pattern 2**. From left to right are the utilized switches during four operation regions covering all output levels, e.g. (a.1) is for [L5, L4], (a.2) is for [L4, L3], (a.3) is for [L3, L2], (a.4) is for [L2, L1].

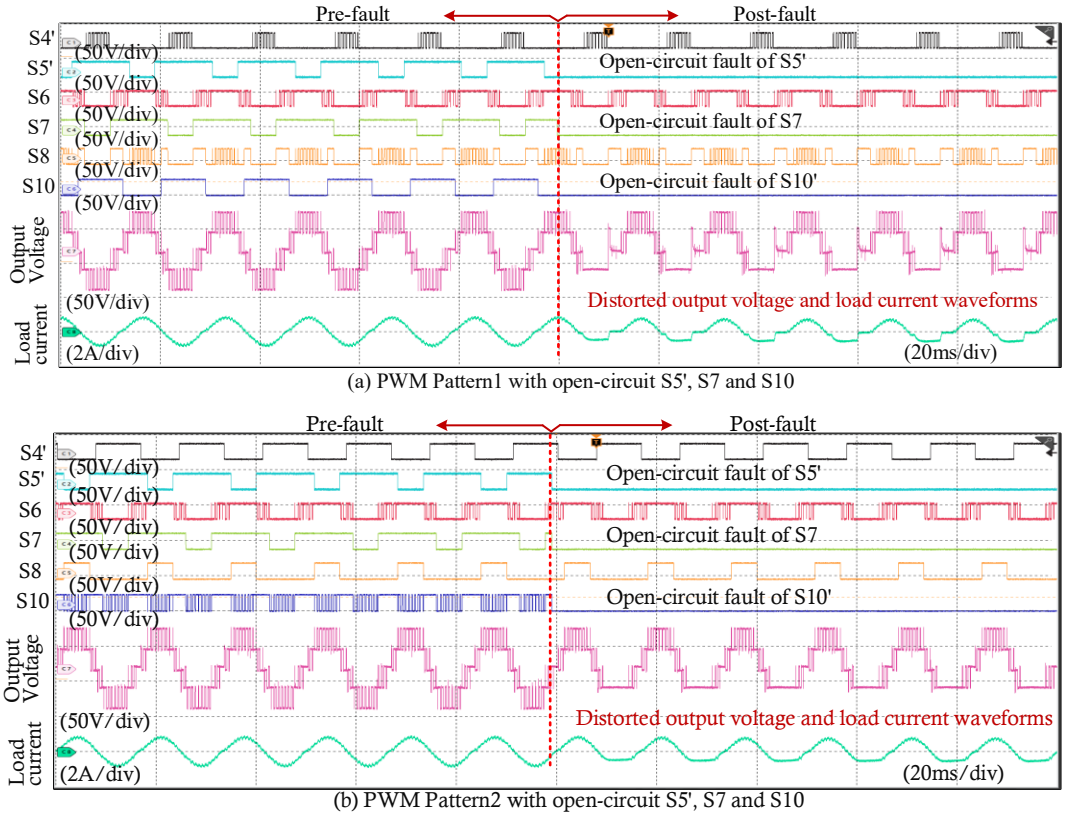


Figure 5-31 Experimental results of 5L ANPC topology before and after open-circuit faults with implemented carrier-based PWM scheme under **fault case 2** with (a) **Pattern 1**, (b) **Pattern 2**. Waveforms from top to bottom: switching states of S4', S5', S6, S7, S8, S10, the output PWM voltage, the load current.

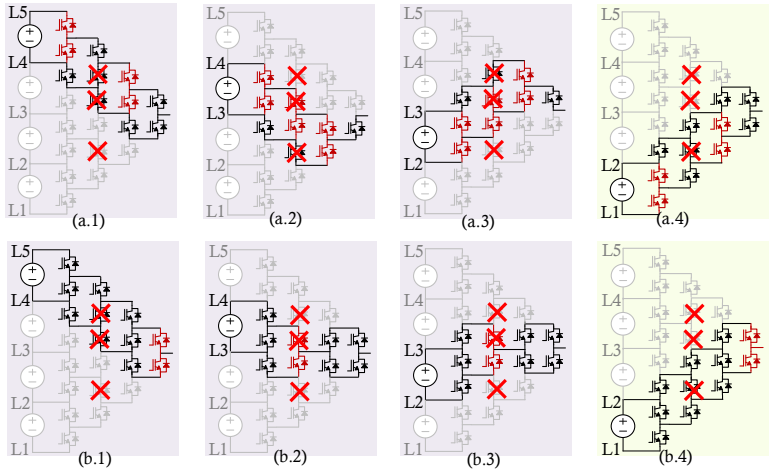
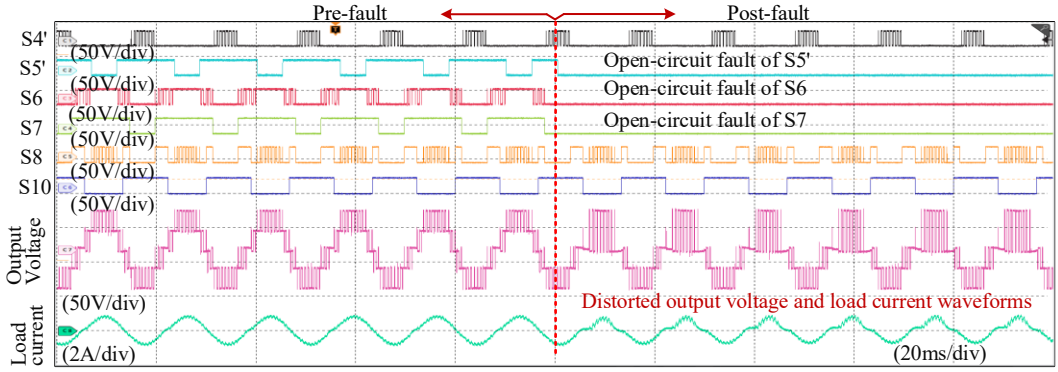
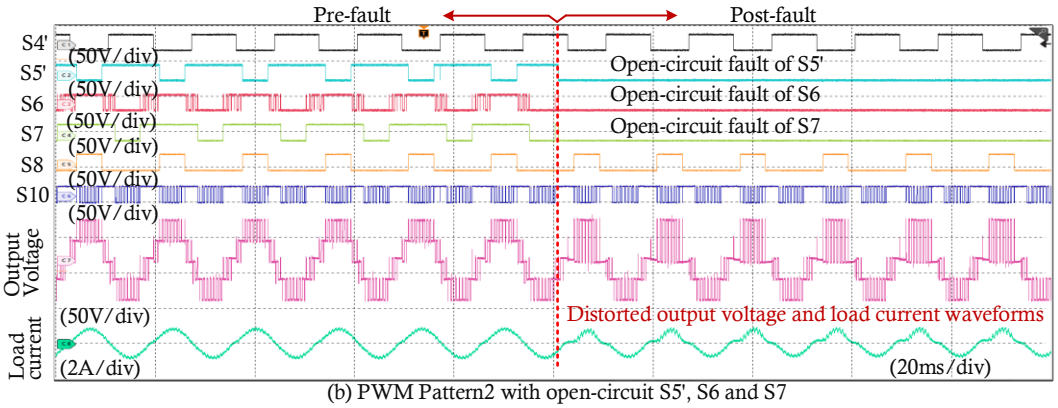


Figure 5-32 The **fault case 3** with multiple open-circuit switches (s'_5, s_7, s'_{10}) in 5-level ANPC topology: (a.1)-(a.4) using **Pattern 1**, (b.1)-(b.4) using **Pattern 2**. From left to right are the utilized switches during four operation regions covering all output levels, e.g. (a.1) is for [L5, L4], (a.2) is for [L4, L3], (a.3) is for [L3, L2], (a.4) is for [L2, L1].



(a) PWM Pattern1 with open-circuit S5', S6 and S7



(b) PWM Pattern2 with open-circuit S5', S6 and S7

Figure 5-33 Experimental results of 5L ANPC topology before and after open-circuit faults with implemented carrier-based PWM scheme under **fault case 3** with (a) **Pattern 1**, (b) **Pattern 2**. Waveforms from top to bottom: switching states of S4', S5', S6, S7, S8, S10, the output PWM voltage, the load current.

5.4. Summary

Following the works in **Chapter 3** and **Chapter 4**, the matrix models as well as the associated systematic PWM design method are implemented in a synergic way to help realize two different tasks: (1) the topology simplification, (2) fault-tolerant operation.

For the first task, some special matrices are used to systematically derive the simplified circuit of ANPC converters under certain PWM pattern. In such a way, the topology simplification can be decoupled with the PWM design process. The predesigned PWM schemes can directly operate the simplified converter without modification. In addition, the cross-topology isomorphism can be implemented to further facilitate the derivation process by hierarchically utilizing the low-level simplified circuits.

For the second task, both the general and the simplified matrix models are implemented along with a step-by-step logic-based procedure. The main focus is on the open-circuit type with multiple fault switches. After the systematic coding and calculation, the applicable PWM patterns of an arbitrary ANPC topology with fault switches can be identified. In such a way, the PWM pattern database can be predesigned and directly implemented after the fault-tolerant analysis. Therefore, random enumeration and non-systematic case-by-case design can be avoided for ANPC converters.

In these two tasks, both 4-level and 5-level case studies have been carried out to verify the proposed method for ANPC converters. Besides, this design method, particularly the matrix model concept, can potentially inspire similar PWM design method for other topologies, which can be studied in future.

Chapter 6

Conclusions and Future plans

6.1. Achievements of this work

In this work, four different levels of achievements have been achieved: theory level, circuit level, structure level, and PWM level.

A. Theory level achievements

In theory level, the fundamental relationships of power converters are thoroughly investigated in **Chapter 2**, especially for VSCs and CSCs. Two major types of theories are highlighted: one is the famous dual theory, the other one is the emerging isomorphic theory. Then, instead of implementing the dual methods and isomorphic methods in an independent way, we use both the duality and isomorphism synthetically and discover the topology cycling phenomenon. Such a new finding reveals the common properties among various VSCs and CSCs in terms of their topologies, operation principles, modulation/control strategies, etc. To demonstrate the cycling rules, the theoretical proof is given to show the versatility of these new findings for VSCs and CSCs.

B. Circuit level achievements

In circuit level, the dual theory for planar circuits and non-planar circuits is reviewed. Especially for non-planar circuits, various methods have been proposed in the literature and are systematically summarized. To overcome the limitations, additional constraints are normally needed for dual transformation of those converters.

Then, the isomorphic theory is introduced for establishing another intrinsic relationship among VSCs and CSCs. Not only the topology but also the operation rules (e.g. modulation) can be transformed from one converter to another. In particular, the single-phase three-level VSC is isomorphic with the three-phase CSC, and they share the one-to-one modulation scheme as verified in this work.

Based on the theory-level discovery, the systematic operation analysis and the unified model of selected examples are given to show the similarities among the cycling VSC and CSC topologies. The modulation scheme of the DC-series H-bridge CSC is designed to reduce the DC ripples based on the existing PWM of the existing VSC topology. In summary, by properly utilizing the

discovered relationships, both existing and future topologies can be linked with each other and sharing the existing knowledge in a more comprehensive way.

C. Structure level achievements

In structure level, the fundamental relationships of MLCs are introduced in **Chapter 3**: (i) the dual structures in voltage-source MLCs and current-source MLCs, (ii) the equivalent structures in matrix-type MLCs regarding voltage-source MLCs and current-source MLCs. Furthermore, the MLCs can be abstractly represented in unified matrix models using the concept of stage.

With the stage-based common structure, the systematic design of MLCs can be realized for all kinds of MLCs universally. In details, the node-branch forms are obtained for some most commonly studied topologies, which not only demonstrate the duality between voltage-source and current-source multilevel topologies, but also the logical equivalence of multilevel indirect and direct matrix converters. The matrix presentations of MLCs are derived from their node-branch forms, which provides an opportunity for systematic analysis of different MLCs. It can help the simplification process of derived various MLC topologies, and can also facilitate the modulation implementation for different MLCs, especially matrix converters, through the logic mapping.

Moreover, compared to the current approach of manual design and analysis, the design rules of the proposed method are more general and straightforward to follow even for researchers without a strong power electronics background. With the proposed method, a unified design platform could be established, which opens the potential for both manual synthesis/derivation and computer-aided design/analysis. Several multilevel topologies are derived as examples, e.g. internal paralleled MLCs, 7L hybrid MLCs and 9L MLCs with auxiliary circuits. The discussions with practical considerations and experiments are given to further demonstrate the feasibility of the proposed method.

D. PWM level achievements

In PWM level, several achievements have been done:

Firstly, in **Chapter 4**, universal carrier-based PWM design methods are proposed for non-modular MLCs through hierarchical decomposition of the converter topologies. Two important concepts are introduced: identical circuits between two converters and identical circuits within a single converter.

To deal with the non-modularity of the MLCs, the sub-topologies are decomposed in a hierarchical way by iteratively using the identical circuits between two converters. Then, an exhaustive list of CPWM schemes can be designed. The demonstration of the proposed method is mainly

done for ANPC converters. It features some advantages over conventional case-by-case methods: (1) It is a universal and offline design method regards CB-PWM schemes, and it can be easily implemented for MLCs once the pattern is selected. (2) An exhaustive list of CB-PWM schemes can be designed which provides an opportunity to enhance the system by the adoption of different PWM strategies according to different application requirements. (3) The low-level PWM schemes can be utilized for high-level PWM design which can significantly reduce the design complexity and guarantee the control modularity. Several designed PWM schemes under different operation modes are verified through experiments and demonstrate how the same approach can also be generalized for high-level ANPC topologies (e.g. 3L to 4L, 4L to 5L).

On the other hand, the identical circuits within a single converter are utilized and demonstrated in ANPC converter for the novel PS-PWM methods. It is based on different operation principles from the conventional methods for flying-capacitor-based, cascaded H-bridge, or modular multi-level converter. With more evenly distributed switching actions among all devices, the designed PS PWM schemes feature better utilization of devices and higher ESF compared with conventional LS PWM. Moreover, high-level PWM schemes can be synthesized through low-level schemes. In such a way, the PS PWM design for ANPC topology can be realized modularly for both the general and the simplified ANPC converters. Besides, the extensibility and reduced computation burden make the proposed method very suitable for multi-level ANPC topologies (e.g., 4- and 5-level). The five-level PS PWM scheme is designed with experimental validation and thorough discussions and comparisons, which shows a better performance regards device utilization and loss distribution.

Then, in **Chapter 5**, following the works in **Chapter 3** and **Chapter 4**, the matrix modeling as well as the associated systematic PWM design method are implemented in a synergic way to help realize two different tasks: (1) the topology simplification, (2) fault-tolerant operation.

For the first task, some special matrices are used to systematically derive the simplified circuit of ANPC converters under certain PWM pattern. In such a way, the topology simplification can be decoupled with the PWM design process. The predesigned PWM schemes can directly operate the simplified converter without modification. In addition, the cross-topology isomorphism can be implemented to further facilitate the derivation process by hierarchically utilizing the low-level simplified circuits.

For the second task, both the general and the simplified matrix models are implemented along with a step-by-step logic-based procedure. The main focus is on the open-circuit type with multiple fault switches. After the systematic coding and calculation, the applicable PWM patterns of an arbitrary ANPC topology with fault switches can be identified. In such a way, the PWM pattern

database can be predesigned and directly implemented after the fault-tolerant analysis. Therefore, random enumeration and non-systematic case-by-case design can be avoided for ANPC converters.

In these two tasks, both 4-level and 5-level case studies have been carried out to verify the proposed method for ANPC converters. Besides, this design method, particularly the matrix model concept, can potentially inspire similar PWM design methods for other topologies.

6.2. Interesting topics for future work

Due to the limitation of author, only some most important emerging topics of the research regarding "systematic topology derivation and PWM design of multilevel converters" have been addressed. As for the future works, there are several interesting topics summarized in Table 6-I.

TABLE. 6-I SUMMARIES OF POSSIBLE FUTURE TASKS

	Finished work	**Future tasks**
Theory level	➢ Fundamental relationships of VSCs and CSCs through the proposed isomorphism principles (graph theory) and well-developed duality principles (circuit theory)	➢ Isomorphism and dual theories for other types of power converters, e.g. AC-AC converters, DC-DC converters, multi-converter systems, etc. ➢ Other graphical methods and tools for power converters
Circuit level	➢ Implementation of graphical isomorphism and circuit-level duality for topological transformations of VSCs and CSCs ➢ Investigations of topology cycling phenomenon of VSCs and CSCs	➢ Cycling rules for generalization of some existing converter topologies ➢ Simplification and unification of the power converter common-knowledge database
Structure level	➢ Utilize the structure-level fundamental relationships, e.g. duality, to facilitate the MLC topology derivation process ➢ Development of unified structure for systematic synthesis and derivation of multilevel converter covering voltage-source, current-source and matrix type topologies	➢ Derivation of other types of converters can be considered, e.g. DC-DC converters and AC-AC converters ➢ Some hybrid-structure MLCs enabled by using active cells inside the topology ➢ Programmable topology derivations and evaluations ➢ Advanced intelligent approaches for topology synthesis and derivations

PWM level	➢ The systematic carrier-based PWM design method of ANPC-based converter through hierarchical method ➢ Utilize identical circuits within a single converter for PS PWM design of ANPC-based converters ➢ Utilize the proposed unified matrix model and the PWM design approach for systematic fault tolerance and simplification of ANPC converters	➢ Generalized modulation design approaches for other non-modular MLCs using some other PWM methods ➢ Optimal PWM pattern selections for non-modular MLCs ➢ Application-oriented PWM optimizations for non-modular MLCs, e.g. ANPC-based converter ➢ Utilize isomorphism for PWM design of multi-phase CSC. ➢ Utilize sub-isomorphism for systematic PWM design of other generalized MLCs, e.g. self-balance MLC ➢ Simplifications and fault-tolerant operation method applied for other non-modular MLCs

References

[1] W. McMurray, Fast response stepped-wave switching power converter circuit, US3581212A, 1971. (Filed by General Electric Co. in 1969)

[2] J.R. Garnett, Power supply apparatus converting d.c. to a stepped wave for approximating a sine wave, US3374414A, Mar. 19, 1968. (Application filed by Navy USA in 1964)

[3] W. McMurray, Multipurpose power converter circuits, US3487289A, 1969. (Filed by General Electric Co. in 1968)

[4] C. T. Kleiner and W. Hochwald, Distribution system for a. c. electrical energy derived from d. c. energy sources, US4052657A, 1977. (Filed by Rockwell International Corp. in 1976)

[5] Fang Zheng Peng, Jih-Sheng Lai, Multilevel cascade voltage source inverter with seperate DC sources, US5642275A, 1997. (Filed by Lockheed Martin Energy Systems Inc. in 1995)

[6] R. H. Baker, Switching circuit, *US patent*, US4210826A, Jul. 01, 1980. (Application filed by ExxonMobil Research and Engineering Co. in 1978)

[7] H. Akagi, "Multilevel Converters: Fundamental Circuits and Systems," in *Proceedings of the IEEE*, vol. 105, no. 11, pp. 2048-2065, Nov. 2017.

[8] T. Meynard and H. Foch, "Multi-level conversion: high voltage choppers and voltage-source inverters," in *Power Electronics Specialists Conference*, 1992. PESC'92 Record., 23rd Annual IEEE, 1992, pp. 397-403.

[9] T. Bruckner and S. Bemet, "Loss balancing in three-level voltage source inverters applying active NPC switches," *2001 IEEE 32nd Annual Power Electronics Specialists Conference (IEEE Cat. No.01CH37230)*, Vancouver, BC, 2001, pp. 1135-1140 vol.2.

[10] R. Marquardt, Power supply with a direct converter, EP1497911B1, 2005. (Filed by Siemens AG in 2003)

[11] A. Chen and X. He, "Research on Hybrid-Clamped Multilevel-Inverter Topologies," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 53, no. 6, pp. 1898-1907, Dec. 2006.

[12] B. Wu, J. Pontt, J. Rodriguez, S. Bernet and S. Kouro, "Current-Source Converter and Cycloconverter Topologies for Industrial Medium-Voltage Drives," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 55, no. 7, pp. 2786-2797, July 2008.

[13] H. Grüning, "IGCT Technology – A Quantum Leap for High-power Converters", *Switzerland: ABB Industrie*, 2003. [online] Available: https://library.e.abb.com/public/ d627aeaa2f9f8b24c1256f4100480fa0/ PT_IGCT.pdf

[14] A. Bindra and T. Keim, "Exciting Advances in Power Electronics: APEC 2018 Divulges Latest Advances in Magnetics, Wide-Bandgap Devices, Vehicle Batteries, 3-D Packaging, and More," in *IEEE Power Electronics Magazine*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 49-55, June 2018.

[15] W. Wang, F. Gao, Y. Yang and F. Blaabjerg, "Operation and Modulation of H7 Current-Source Inverter With Hybrid SiC and Si Semiconductor Switches," in *IEEE Journal of Emerging and Selected Topics in Power Electronics*, vol. 6, no. 1, pp. 387-399, March 2018.

[16] H. Dai, R. A. Torres, T. M. Jahns and B. Sarlioglu, "Characterization and Implementation of Hybrid Reverse-Voltage-Blocking and Bidirectional Switches using WBG Devices in Emerging Motor Drive Applications," *2019 IEEE Applied Power Electronics Conference and Exposition (APEC)*, Anaheim, CA, USA, 2019, pp. 297-304.

[17] V. Madonna, G. Migliazza, P. Giangrande, E. Lorenzani, G. Buticchi and M. Galea, "The Rebirth of the Current Source Inverter: Advantages for Aerospace Motor Design," in *IEEE Industrial Electronics Magazine*, vol. 13, no. 4, pp. 65-76, Dec. 2019.

[18] Hendrik Rissik, "Static frequency changing system," CA349289A, 1935.

[19] L. J. Lawson, "The Practical Cycloconverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry and General Applications*, vol. IGA-4, no. 2, pp. 141-144, March 1968.

[20] P. Kiatsookkanatorn and S. Sangwongwanich, "A Unified PWM Method for Matrix Converters and Its Carrier-Based Realization Using Dipolar Modulation Technique," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 59, no. 1, pp. 80-92, Jan. 2012.

[21] T. Friedli and J. W. Kolar "Milestones in matrix converter research" in *IEEJ Journal of Industry Applications*, vol. 1 no. 1 pp. 2-14 Jul. 2012.

[22] L. Empringham, J. W. Kolar, J. Rodriguez, P. W. Wheeler and J. C. Clare, "Technological Issues and Industrial Application of Matrix Converters: A Review," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 60, no. 10, pp. 4260-4271, Oct. 2013.

[23] L. Schrittwieser, M. Leibl and J. W. Kolar, "99% Efficient Isolated Three-Phase Matrix-Type DAB Buck–Boost PFC Rectifier," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 35, no. 1, pp. 138-157, Jan. 2020.

[24] N. D. Dao and D. Lee, "Modulation of Bidirectional AC/DC Converters Based on Half-Bridge Direct-Matrix Structure," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 35, no. 12, pp. 12657-12662, Dec. 2020.

[25] J. Rodriguez, S. Bernet, B. Wu, J. O. Pontt and S. Kouro, "Multilevel Voltage-Source-Converter Topologies for Industrial Medium-Voltage Drives," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 54, no. 6, pp. 2930-2945, Dec. 2007.

[26] J. Rodriguez, Jih-Sheng Lai and Fang Zheng Peng, "Multilevel inverters: a survey of topologies, controls, and applications," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 49, no. 4, pp. 724-738, Aug. 2002.

[27] J. W. Kolar, T. Friedli, J. Rodriguez and P. W. Wheeler, "Review of Three-Phase PWM AC–AC Converter Topologies," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 58, no. 11, pp. 4988-5006, Nov. 2011.

[28] S. Kouro *et al.*, "Recent Advances and Industrial Applications of Multilevel Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 57, no. 8, pp. 2553-2580, Aug. 2010.

[29] Y. Li and Z. Quan, "Derivation of multilevel voltage source converter topologies for medium voltage drives," in Chinese Journal of Electrical Engineering, vol. 3, no. 2, pp. 24-31, September 2017.

[30] B. P. McGrath and D. G. Holmes, "Natural Current Balancing of Multicell Current Source Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 23, no. 3, pp. 1239-1246, May 2008.

[31]Y. Sun, W. Xiong, M. Su, X. Li, H. Dan and J. Yang, "Topology and Modulation for a New Multilevel Diode-Clamped Matrix Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 29, no. 12, pp. 6352-6360, Dec. 2014.

[32] M. Schweizer and J. W. Kolar, "Design and Implementation of a Highly Efficient Three-Level T-Type Converter for Low-Voltage Applications," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 28, no. 2, pp. 899-907, Feb. 2013.

[33] A. Choudhury, P. Pillay and S. S. Williamson, "Comparative Analysis Between Two-Level and Three-Level DC/AC Electric Vehicle Traction Inverters Using a Novel DC-Link Voltage Balancing Algorithm," in *IEEE Journal of Emerging and Selected Topics in Power Electronics*, vol. 2, no. 3, pp. 529-540, Sept. 2014.

[34] Q. Guan *et al.*, "An Extremely High Efficient Three-Level Active Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter Comprising SiC and Si Hybrid Power Stages," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 33, no. 10, pp. 8341-8352, Oct. 2018.

[35] W. Qian, H. Cha, F. Z. Peng and L. M. Tolbert, "55-kW Variable 3X DC-DC Converter for Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 27, no. 4, pp. 1668-1678, April 2012.

[36] Y. Lei *et al.*, "A 2-kW Single-Phase Seven-Level Flying Capacitor Multilevel Inverter With an Active Energy Buffer," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 32, no. 11, pp. 8570-8581, Nov. 2017.

[37] D. L. Gerber, C. Le, M. Kline, P. R. Kinget and S. R. Sanders, "An Integrated Multilevel Converter With Sigma–Delta Control for LED Lighting," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 34, no. 4, pp. 3030-3040, April 2019.

[38] M. Chen, K. K. Afridi, S. Chakraborty and D. J. Perreault, "Multitrack Power Conversion Architecture," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 32, no. 1, pp. 325-340, Jan. 2017.

[39] C. Schaef, E. Din and J. T. Stauth, "A Hybrid Switched-Capacitor Battery Management IC With Embedded Diagnostics for Series-Stacked Li–Ion Arrays," in *IEEE Journal of Solid-State Circuits*, vol. 52, no. 12, pp. 3142-3154, Dec. 2017.

[40] P. A. M. Bezerra *et al.*, "Electrical and Thermal Characterization of an Inductor-Based ANPC-Type Buck Converter in 14 nm CMOS Technology for Microprocessor Applications," in *IEEE Open Journal of Power Electronics*, vol. 1, pp. 456-468, 2020.

[41]S. Jeszenszky, “Electrostatics and Electrodynamics at Pest University in the mid-19th Century,” 2015. [online] Available: http://ppp.unipv.it/Collana/Pages/Libri/Saggi/Volta%20and%20the%20History%20of%20Electricity/V%26H%20Sect2/V%26H%20175-182.pdf.

[42] P. Brenni, “From the 'Chain of Leyden Jars' to the Marx Generator 100 years of voltage multiplication, ” in *Bulletin of the Scientific Instrument Society*, vol. 107, pp. 1-9, 2010.

[43] T. Tanzawa, "Innovation of Switched-Capacitor Voltage Multiplier: Part 1: A Brief History," in *IEEE Solid-State Circuits Magazine*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 51-59, winter 2016.

[44] Y. Gu, W. Li, Y. Zhao, B. Yang, C. Li and X. He, "Transformerless Inverter With Virtual DC Bus Concept for Cost-Effective Grid-Connected PV Power Systems," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 28, no. 2, pp. 793-805, Feb. 2013.

[45] K. Wang, Y. Li, Z. Zheng and L. Xu, "Voltage Balancing and Fluctuation-Suppression Methods of Floating Capacitors in a New Modular Multilevel Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 60, no. 5, pp. 1943-1954, May 2013.

[46] Y. Li, H. Tian and Y. W. Li, "Generalized Phase-Shift PWM for Active-Neutral-Point-Clamped Multilevel Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 67, no. 11, pp. 9048-9058, Nov. 2020.

[47] N. Sandeep and U. R. Yaragatti, "A Switched-Capacitor-Based Multilevel Inverter Topology With Reduced Components," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 33, no. 7, pp. 5538-5542, July 2018.

[48] M. J. Sathik, N. Sandeep and F. Blaabjerg, "High Gain Active Neutral Point Clamped Seven-Level Self-Voltage Balancing Inverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Circuits and Systems II: Express Briefs*, vol. 67, no. 11, pp. 2567-2571, Nov. 2020.

[49] S. S. Lee and K. Lee, "Switched-Capacitor-based Modular T-type Inverter (SC-MTI)," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, 2021 (*Early Access*).

[50] Richard H. Baker, Synthesizer circuit for generating three-tier waveforms, US4135235A, 1979. (Filed by ExxonMobil Research and Engineering Co in 1977)

[51] Carmelo J Amato, Portable static inverter with reduced harmonic content in the output wave form, US3241038A, 1966. (Filed by Thompson Ramo Wooldridge Inc. in 1960)

[52] T. M. Heinrich and A. Kernick, Static inverter wherein a plurality of square waves are so summed as to produce a sinusoidal output wave, *US patent*, US3491282A, Jan. 20, 1970. (Application filed by Westinghouse Electric Corp. in 1961)

[53] D. L. Ve Nard, Synthetic wave three phase alternating current power supply system, US3477010A, 1969. (Filed by Gates LearJet Corp. in 1967)

[54] J. Salmon, A. M. Knight and J. Ewanchuk, "Single-Phase Multilevel PWM Inverter Topologies Using Coupled Inductors," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 24, no. 5, pp. 1259-1266, May 2009.

[55] C. W. Flairty, "A 50-KVA Adjustable-Frequency 24-Phase Controlled Rectifier Inverter," in *IRE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. IE-9, no. 1, pp. 56-60, May 1962.

[56] M. Honbu, Y. Matsuda, K. Miyazaki and Y. Jifuku, "Parallel Operation Techniques of GTO Inverter Sets for Large AC Motor Drives," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. IA-19, no. 2, pp. 198-205, March 1983.

[57] J. Azurza Anderson, G. Zulauf, P. Papamanolis, S. Hobi, S. Mirić and J. W. Kolar, "Three Levels Are Not Enough: Scaling Laws for Multilevel Converters in AC/DC Applications," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 36, no. 4, pp. 3967-3986, April 2021.

[58] H. Wang, H. Wang, G. Zhu and F. Blaabjerg, "An Overview of Capacitive DC-Links-Topology Derivation and Scalability Analysis," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 35, no. 2, pp. 1805-1829, Feb. 2020.

[59] Z. Quan, Y. Li and Y. Li, "Internal paralleled active neutral point clamped converter with logic-based flying capacitor voltage balancing," *2017 IEEE 18th Workshop on Control and Modeling for Power Electronics (COMPEL)*, Stanford, CA, 2017, pp. 1-6.

[60] Z. Quan and Y. W. Li, "Multilevel Voltage-Source Converter Topologies With Internal Parallel Modularity," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 56, no. 1, pp. 378-389, Jan.-Feb. 2020.

[61] H. E. Martin, Output-transformerless static inverter, US3514688A, 1970. (Filed by United Technologies Corp. in 1968)

[62] T. Corry, Method of and apparatus for generating three-phase sinusoidal voltages, US3725767A, 1973. (Filed by Motors Liquidation Co. in 1971)

[63] D. J. Hucker and N. L. Schmitz, Inverter for providing a sinusodial output having a low harmonic content, US4063144A, 1977. (Filed by Sundstrand Corp. in 1976)

[64] Gui-Jia Su, "Multilevel DC-link inverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 41, no. 3, pp. 848-854, May-June 2005.

[65] P. R. Bana, K. P. Panda, R. T. Naayagi, P. Siano and G. Panda, "Recently Developed Reduced Switch Multilevel Inverter for Renewable Energy Integration and Drives Application: Topologies, Comprehensive Analysis and Comparative Evaluation," in *IEEE Access*, vol. 7, pp. 54888-54909, 2019.

[66] M. Vijeh, M. Rezanejad, E. Samadaei and K. Bertilsson, "A General Review of Multilevel Inverters Based on Main Submodules: Structural Point of View," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 34, no. 10, pp. 9479-9502, Oct. 2019.

[67] H. Fujita, "A three-phase voltage-source solar power conditioner using a single-phase PWM control method," *2009 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition*, San Jose, CA, 2009, pp. 3748-3754.

[68] Q. Lei and F. Z. Peng, "Space Vector Pulsewidth Amplitude Modulation for a Buck–Boost Voltage/Current Source Inverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 29, no. 1, pp. 266-274, Jan. 2014.

[69] J.W. Kolar, M. Guacci, M. Antivachis, D. Bortis, Advanced 3 Φ SiC GaN PWM Inverter Concepts for Future VSD Applications, 2020. [online] Available: https://www.pes-publications.ee.ethz.ch/uploads/tx_ethpublications.

[70] K. Hermanns, Y. Peng and A. Mantooth, "The Increasing Role of Design Automation in Power Electronics: Gathering What Is Needed," in *IEEE Power Electronics Magazine*, vol. 7, no. 1, pp. 46-50, March 2020.

[71] A. J. Marques Cardoso, "Power Electronics Design Methods and Automation in the Digital Era: Evolution of Design Automation Tools," in *IEEE Power Electronics Magazine*, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 36-40, June 2020.

[72] N. Rashidi, Q. Wang, R. Burgos, C. Roy and D. Boroyevich, "Multi-objective Design and Optimization of Power Electronics Converters With Uncertainty Quantification—Part I: Parametric Uncertainty," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 36, no. 2, pp. 1463-1474, Feb. 2021.

[73] J. W. Kolar, F. Krismer, "Power Electronics Design 4.0," *IEEE Design Automation for Power Electronics Workshop (DAPE)*, Portland (OR), USA, September 22, 2018. [online] Available: https://www.pes-publications.ee.ethz.ch/publications/workshopsseminars

[74] Q. M. Li, F. C. Lee and T. G. Wilson, "Design verification and testing of power supply system by using virtual prototype," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 18, no. 3, pp. 733-739, May 2003.

[75]S. Zhao, F. Blaabjerg and H. Wang, "An Overview of Artificial Intelligence Applications for Power Electronics," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 36, no. 4, pp. 4633-4658, April 2021.

[76] P. M. Bhagwat and V. R. Stefanovic, "Generalized Structure of a Multilevel PWM Inverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. IA-19, no. 6, pp. 1057-1069, Nov. 1983.

[77]N. S. Choi, J. G. Cho and G. H. Cho, "A general circuit topology of multilevel inverter," *PESC '91 Record 22nd Annual IEEE Power Electronics Specialists Conference*, Cambridge, MA, USA, 1991, pp. 96-103.

[78] Fang Zheng Peng, "A generalized multilevel inverter topology with self voltage balancing," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 37, no. 2, pp. 611-618, March-April 2001.

[79] E. Najafi and A. H. M. Yatim, "Design and Implementation of a New Multilevel Inverter Topology," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 59, no. 11, pp. 4148-4154, Nov. 2012.

[80] X. Yuan, "Derivation of Voltage Source Multilevel Converter Topologies," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 64, no. 2, pp. 966-976, Feb. 2017.

[81]Z. Bai and Z. Zhang, "Conformation of Multilevel Current Source Converter Topologies Using the Duality Principle," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 23, no. 5, pp. 2260-2267, Sept. 2008.

[82] A. Nami, J. Liang, F. Dijkhuizen and G. D. Demetriades, "Modular Multilevel Converters for HVDC Applications: Review on Converter Cells and Functionalities," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 30, no. 1, pp. 18-36, Jan. 2015.

[83] J. I. Leon, S. Kouro, L. G. Franquelo, J. Rodriguez and B. Wu, "The Essential Role and the Continuous Evolution of Modulation Techniques for Voltage-Source Inverters in the Past, Present, and Future Power Electronics," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 63, no. 5, pp. 2688-2701, May 2016.

[84] J. I. Leon, S. Vazquez and L. G. Franquelo, "Multilevel Converters: Control and Modulation Techniques for Their Operation and Industrial Applications," in *Proceedings of the IEEE*, vol. 105, no. 11, pp. 2066-2081, Nov. 2017.

[85] B. P. McGrath and D. G. Holmes, "Multicarrier PWM strategies for multilevel inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 49, no. 4, pp. 858-867, Aug. 2002.

[86] O. Ojo, "The generalized discontinuous PWM scheme for three-phase voltage source inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 51, no. 6, pp. 1280-1289, Dec. 2004.

[87] S. Busquets-Monge, S. Alepuz, J. Rocabert and J. Bordonau, "Pulsewidth Modulations for the Comprehensive Capacitor Voltage Balance of n-Level Three-Leg Diode-Clamped Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 24, no. 5, pp. 1364-1375, May 2009.

[88] T. Geyer, N. Oikonomou, G. Papafotiou and F. D. Kieferndorf, "Model Predictive Pulse Pattern Control," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 48, no. 2, pp. 663-676, March-April 2012.

[89] A. Edpuganti and A. K. Rathore, "A Survey of Low Switching Frequency Modulation Techniques for Medium-Voltage Multilevel Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 51, no. 5, pp. 4212-4228, Sept.-Oct. 2015.

[90] A. K. Gupta and A. M. Khambadkone, "A Space Vector PWM Scheme for Multilevel Inverters Based on Two-Level Space Vector PWM," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 53, no. 5, pp. 1631-1639, Oct. 2006.

[91]Y. Deng, K. H. Teo, C. Duan, T. G. Habetler and R. G. Harley, "A Fast and Generalized Space Vector Modulation Scheme for Multilevel Inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 29, no. 10, pp. 5204-5217, Oct. 2014.

[92] N. Celanovic and D. Boroyevich, "A comprehensive study of neutral-point voltage balancing problem in three-level neutral-point-clamped voltage source PWM inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 15, no. 2, pp. 242-249, March 2000.

[93] L. Ding, Z. Quan and Y. W. Li, "Common-Mode Voltage Reduction for Parallel CSC-Fed Motor Drives With Multilevel Modulation," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 33, no. 8, pp. 6555-6566, Aug. 2018.

[94] J. Pou *et al.*, "Fast-Processing Modulation Strategy for the Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter With Total Elimination of Low-Frequency Voltage Oscillations in the Neutral Point," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 54, no. 4, pp. 2288-2294, Aug. 2007.

[95] J. Pou, J. Zaragoza, S. Ceballos, M. Saeedifard and D. Boroyevich, "A Carrier-Based PWM Strategy With Zero-Sequence Voltage Injection for a Three-Level Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 27, no. 2, pp. 642-651, Feb. 2012.

[96] S. Busquets-Monge and J. Nicolas-Apruzzese, "A Multilevel Active-Clamped Converter Topology—Operating Principle," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 58, no. 9, pp. 3868-3878, Sept. 2011.

[97] Y. Jiao and F. C. Lee, "New Modulation Scheme for Three-Level Active Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter With Loss and Stress Reduction," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 62, no. 9, pp. 5468-5479, Sept. 2015.

[98] D. Zhang, J. He and S. Madhusoodhanan, "Three-level two-stage decoupled active NPC converter with Si IGBT and SiC MOSFET," *2017 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition (ECCE)*, Cincinnati, OH, 2017, pp. 5671-5678.

[99] Y. Li, Y. Wang and B. Q. Li, "Generalized Theory of Phase-Shifted Carrier PWM for Cascaded H-Bridge Converters and Modular Multilevel Converters," in *IEEE Journal of Emerging and Selected Topics in Power Electronics*, vol. 4, no. 2, pp. 589-605, June 2016.

[100] R. Naderi, A. K. Sadigh and K. M. Smedley, "Dual Flying Capacitor Active-Neutral-Point-Clamped Multilevel Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 31, no. 9, pp. 6476-6484, Sept. 2016.

[101] C. Li, S. Wang, Q. Guan and D. Xu, "Hybrid Modulation Concept for Five-Level Active-Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 32, no. 12, pp. 8958-8962, Dec. 2017.

[102] A. Dekka, R. L. Fuentes, M. Narimani and B. Wu, "Voltage Balancing of a Modular Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter With a Carrier-Based Modulation Scheme," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 33, no. 10, pp. 8208-8212, Oct. 2018.

[103] H. Tian and Y. W. Li, "Carrier-Based Stair Edge PWM (SEPWM) for Capacitor Balancing in Multilevel Converters With Floating Capacitors," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 54, no. 4, pp. 3440-3452, July-Aug. 2018.

[104] K. Wang, Z. Zheng, L. Xu and Y. Li, "An Optimized Carrier-Based PWM Method and Voltage Balancing Control for Five-Level ANPC Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 67, no. 11, pp. 9120-9132, Nov. 2020.

[105] D. Zhou, Z. Quan and Y. Li, "Simplified Predictive Duty Cycle Control of Multilevel Converters With Internal Identical Structure," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 35, no. 11, pp. 12416-12428, Nov. 2020.

[106] W. E. Newell, "Power Electronics---Emerging from Limbo," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. IA-10, no. 1, pp. 7-11, Jan. 1974.

[107] J. D. van Wyk and F. C. Lee, "On a Future for Power Electronics," in *IEEE Journal of Emerging and Selected Topics in Power Electronics*, vol. 1, no. 2, pp. 59-72, June 2013.

[108] E. Castellani and D. Rickles, "Introduction to special issue on dualities," *Studies in History and Philosophy of Science Part B: Studies in History and Philosophy of Modern Physics*, vol. 59, pp. 1-5, Aug 2017.

[109] Charles-Augustin Coulomb, "First memoir on electricity and magnetism," *French Acad. Sci.*, pp. 569–577 1788. Translated by Louis L. Bucciarelli, Emeritus Professor of Engineering and Technology Studies (MIT), MIT, 2000 (revised and notes added by Christine Blondel and Bertrand Wolff, 2012). online [Available]: http://www.ampere.cnrs.fr/i-corpuspic/tab/Sources/coulomb/Coulomb_El_1785.pdf.

[110] William Francis Magie, *A Source Book in Physics*. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1935.

[111] L. Weinberg, "Kirchhoff's 'Third and Fourth Laws'," in *IRE Transactions on Circuit Theory*, vol. 5, no. 1, pp. 8-30, March 1958.

[112] M. Parodi and M. Storace, *Linear and Nonlinear Circuits: Basic & Advanced Concepts*, Springer International Publishing, 2018.

[113] J.P. Dowling, C.P. Williams and J.D. Franson, "Maxwell duality, lorentz invariance, and topological phase," *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, vol. 83, no. 13, pp. 2486-2489, September 27, 1999.

[114] N.K. Dadhich, "Electromagnetic duality in general relativity," *General Relativity and Gravitation*, New York, vol. 32, pp. 1009-1023, 1999.

[115] A. Russell, *A treatise on the theory of alternating currents*, 2nd ed. Cambridge, University Press, 1914.

[116] W. Cauer, "Topological duality theorems and reciprocity theorems of circuit theory," *J. Appl. Math. Mechanics*, vol. 14, pp. 349–350, 1934.

[117] E.C. Cherry, "The duality between interlinked electric and magnetic circuits and the formation of transformer equivalent circuits," *Proc. Phys. Soc. B*, vol. 62, no. 2, pp. 101–111, February 1949.

[118] S. D. Freeland, "Techniques for the practical application of duality to power circuits," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 374-384, April 1992.

[119] J. W. Kolar, H. Ertl and F. C. Zach, "Analysis of the duality of three phase PWM converters with DC voltage link and DC current link," *Conference Record of the IEEE Industry Applications Society Annual Meeting,*, San Diego, CA, USA, 1989, pp. 724-737 vol.1.

[120] P. A. Dahono, T. Kataoka and Y. Sato, "Dual relationships between voltage-source and current-source three-phase inverters and its applications," *Proceedings of Second International Conference on Power Electronics and Drive Systems*, Singapore, 1997, pp. 559-565 vol.2.

[121] A. Bloch, "On methods for the construction of networks dual to non-planar networks," *Proceedings of the Physical Society*, vol. 58, no. 6, pp. 677-694, Nov 1, 1946.

[122] F. Harary, "Some historical and intuitive aspects of graph theory," in *Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics Review*, vol. 2, no. 2, pp. 123-131, April 1, 1960.

[123] L.R. Foulds, *Graph Theory Applications*. New York, NY, Springer New York, 1992.

[124] F. Dörfler, J. W. Simpson-Porco and F. Bullo, "Electrical Networks and Algebraic Graph Theory: Models, Properties, and Applications," in *Proceedings of the IEEE*, vol. 106, no. 5, pp. 977-1005, May 2018.

[125] T. Ishizaki, A. Chakrabortty and J. Imura, "Graph-Theoretic Analysis of Power Systems," in *Proceedings of the IEEE*, vol. 106, no. 5, pp. 931-952, May 2018.

[126] A. K. Srivastava, T. A. Ernster, R. Liu and V. G. Krishnan, "Graph-theoretic algorithms for cyber-physical vulnerability analysis of power grid with incomplete information," in *Journal of Modern Power Systems and Clean Energy*, vol. 6, no. 5, pp. 887-899, September 2018.

[127] R. Razi, M. -C. Pham, A. Hably, S. Bacha, Q. -T. Tran and H. Iman-Eini, "A Novel Graph-Based Routing Algorithm in Residential Multimicrogrid Systems," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Informatics*, vol. 17, no. 3, pp. 1774-1784, March 2021.

[128] M. Liserre, V. Raveendran and M. Andresen, "Graph-Theory-Based Modeling and Control for System-Level Optimization of Smart Transformers," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 67, no. 10, pp. 8910-8920, Oct. 2020.

[129] H. Whitney, "2-isomorphic graphs," *American journal of mathematics*, vol. 55, no. 1/4, pp. 245-254 1933.

[130] G.H. Moore, "The evolution of the concept of homeomorphism," *Historia mathematica*, vol. 34, no. 3, pp. 333-343 2007.

[131] C.T. G. Hahn, *Graph homomorphisms: Structure and symmetry*. Springer, Dordrecht, 1997.

[132] R.C. Read and D.G. Corneil, "The graph isomorphism disease," *Journal of graph theory*, vol. 1, no. 4, pp. 339-363 1977.

[133] B.D. McKay and A. Piperno, "Practical graph isomorphism, II," *Journal of symbolic computation*, vol. 60, pp. 94-112, Jan 2014.

[134] L. Weinberg, "A Simple and Efficient Algorithm for Determining Isomorphism of Planar Triply Connected Graphs," in *IEEE Transactions on Circuit Theory*, vol. 13, no. 2, pp. 142-148, June 1966.

[135] Uwe Schöning, "Graph lsomorphism is in the low hierarchy," *Journal of Computer and System Sciences*, vol. 37, no. 3, pp. 312-323, December 1, 1988.

[136] S. Arora and B. Barak, *Computational complexity: a modern approach*. Cambridge University Press, 2009.

[137] Z. Zhao and L. Zhang, "An Automated Topology Synthesis Framework for Analog Integrated Circuits," in *IEEE Transactions on Computer-Aided Design of Integrated Circuits and Systems*, vol. 39, no. 12, pp. 4325-4337, Dec. 2020.

[138] S.E. Sorkhabi and L. Zhang, "Automated topology synthesis of analog and RF integrated circuits: A survey," *Integration (Amsterdam)*, vol. 56, pp. 128-138, Jan 2017.

[139] G. Chen, L. Mo, Y. Liu, X. Qing and Y. Hu, "Computer-Aided Identification of Equivalent Power Electronics Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 34, no. 10, pp. 9374-9378, Oct. 2019.

[140] S. Mac Lane, Categories for the Working Mathematician, *Springer*, Nw York, 1971.

[141] S. Awodey, *Category Theory*. Oxford University Press, 2006, pp. 1-63.

[142] S. Cuk, "General topological properties of switching structures," *1979 IEEE Power Electronics Specialists Conference*, San Diego, CA, USA, 1979, pp. 109-130.

[143] B. W. Williams, "Generation and Analysis of Canonical Switching Cell DC-to-DC Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 61, no. 1, pp. 329-346, Jan. 2014.

[144] R. Marquez and M. A. Contreras-Ordaz, "The Three-Terminal Converter Cell, Graphs, and Generation of DC-to-DC Converter Families," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 35, no. 8, pp. 7725-7728, Aug. 2020.

[145] M. Salam and Q.M. Rahman, *Fundamentals of Electrical Circuit Analysis*, Springer Singapore, 2018.

[146] G. R. Slemon, "Equivalent circuits for transformers and machines including non-linear effects," in *Proceedings of the IEE - Part IV: Institution Monographs*, vol. 100, no. 5, pp. 129-143, October 1953.

[147] K. Umetani, "Lagrangian method for deriving electrically dual power converters applicable to nonplanar circuit topologies," in *IEEJ transactions on electrical and electronic engineering*, vol. 11, no. 4, pp. 521-530, Jul 2016.

[148] P. J. Wolfs, G. F. Ledwich and K. C. Kwong, "The application of the duality principle to nonplanar circuits," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 104-111, April 1993.

[149] E. Levi, "Advances in Converter Control and Innovative Exploitation of Additional Degrees of Freedom for Multiphase Machines," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 63, no. 1, pp. 433-448, Jan. 2016.

[150] Fang Zheng Peng, "Z-source inverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 39, no. 2, pp. 504-510, March-April 2003.

[151] R. M. Foster, "Geometrical Circuits of Electrical Networks," in *Transactions of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers*, vol. 51, no. 2, pp. 309-317, June 1932.

[152] Hassler Whitney, "A set of topological invariants for graphs," *American journal of mathematics*, vol. 55, no. 1, pp. 231-235, Jan 1, 1933.

[153] M.R. Garey and D.S. Johnson, *Computers and intractability: a guide to the theory of NP-completeness*. San Francisco: W. H. Freeman, 1979.

[154] X. Wang and B. -. Ooi, "Unity PF current-source rectifier based on dynamic trilogic PWM," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 8, no. 3, pp. 288-294, July 1993.

[155] Z. Bai, X. Ruan and Z. Zhang, "A Generic Six-Step Direct PWM (SS-DPWM) Scheme for Current Source Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 25, no. 3, pp. 659-666, March 2010.

[156] Nam-Sup Choi, Kwang-Woon Lee and Byung-Moon Han, "A novel carrier based PWM for current source converter," *Proceedings of The 7th International Power Electronics and Motion Control Conference*, Harbin, 2012, pp. 1945-1950.

[157] N. Vazquez, H. Lopez, C. Hernandez, E. Vazquez, R. Osorio and J. Arau, "A Different Multilevel Current-Source Inverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 57, no. 8, pp. 2623-2632, Aug. 2010.

[158] D. G. Holmes and B. P. McGrath, "Opportunities for harmonic cancellation with carrier-based PWM for a two-level and multilevel cascaded inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 37, no. 2, pp. 574-582, March-April 2001.

[159] W. Song, X. Feng and K. M. Smedley, "A Carrier-Based PWM Strategy With the Offset Voltage Injection for Single-Phase Three-Level Neutral-Point-Clamped Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 28, no. 3, pp. 1083-1095, March 2013.

[160] K. Wang, Z. Zheng and Y. Li, "A Novel Carrier-Overlapped PWM Method for Four-Level Neutral-Point Clamped Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 34, no. 1, pp. 7-12, Jan. 2019.

[161] B. Mirafzal, "Survey of Fault-Tolerance Techniques for Three-Phase Voltage Source Inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 61, no. 10, pp. 5192-5202, Oct. 2014.

[162] T. Kawabata and S. Higashino, "Parallel operation of voltage source inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 24, no. 2, pp. 281-287, March-April 1988.

[163] Z. Zhang and B. T. Ooi, "Multi-modular current-source SPWM converters for superconducting magnetic energy storage system," *PESC '92 Record. 23rd Annual IEEE Power Electronics Specialists Conference*, Toledo, Spain, 1992, pp. 561-568 vol.1.

[164] Han-Woong Park, Sung-Jun Park, Jin-Gil Park and Cheul-U Kim, "A novel high-performance voltage regulator for single-phase AC sources," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 48, no. 3, pp. 554-562, June 2001.

[165] Y. Ounejjar, K. Al-Haddad and L. Gregoire, "Packed U Cells Multilevel Converter Topology: Theoretical Study and Experimental Validation," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 58, no. 4, pp. 1294-1306, April 2011.

[166] M. A. Vitorino, L. V. Hartmann, D. A. Fernandes, E. L. Silva and M. B. R. Corrêa, "Single-phase current source converter with new modulation approach and power decoupling," *2014 IEEE Applied Power Electronics Conference and Exposition - APEC 2014*, Fort Worth, TX, 2014, pp. 2200-2207.

[167] M. Tariq, M. Meraj, A. Azeem, A. I. Maswood, A. Iqbal and B. Chokkalingam, "Evaluation of level-shifted and phase-shifted PWM schemes for seven level single-phase packed U cell inverter," in *CPSS Transactions on Power Electronics and Applications*, vol. 3, no. 3, pp. 232-242, Sept. 2018.

[168] Y. W. Li, "Control and Resonance Damping of Voltage-Source and Current-Source Converters With LC Filters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 56, no. 5, pp. 1511-1521, May 2009.

[169] K. Gnanasambandam, A. K. Rathore, A. Edpuganti, D. Srinivasan and J. Rodriguez, "Current-Fed Multilevel Converters: An Overview of Circuit Topologies, Modulation Techniques, and Applications," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 32, no. 5, pp. 3382-3401, May 2017.

[170] Suroso and T. Noguchi, "Multilevel Current Waveform Generation Using Inductor Cells and H-Bridge Current-Source Inverter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 27, no. 3, pp. 1090-1098, March 2012.

[171] C. A. Silva, L. A. Cordova, P. Lezana and L. Empringham, "Implementation and Control of a Hybrid Multilevel Converter With Floating DC Links for Current Waveform Improvement," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 58, no. 6, pp. 2304-2312, June 2011.

[172] X. Liu, P. C. Loh, F. Blaabjerg and P. Wang, "Load sharing using droop control for parallel operation of matrix converters as distributed generator interfaces in isolated mode," *2012 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition (ECCE)*, Raleigh, NC, 2012, pp. 962-968.

[173] K. K. Gupta, A. Ranjan, P. Bhatnagar, L. K. Sahu and S. Jain, "Multilevel Inverter Topologies With Reduced Device Count: A Review," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 31, no. 1, pp. 135-151, Jan. 2016.

[174] M. S. Makowski, "Realizability conditions and bounds on synthesis of switched-capacitor DC-DC voltage multiplier circuits," in *IEEE Transactions on Circuits and Systems I: Fundamental Theory and Applications*, vol. 44, no. 8, pp. 684-691, Aug. 1997.

[175] I. Cederbaum, "Some applications of graph theory to network analysis and synthesis," in *IEEE Transactions on Circuits and Systems*, vol. 31, no. 1, pp. 64-68, January 1984.

[176] P. Rodriguez, M. D. Bellar, R. S. Muñoz-Aguilar, S. Busquets-Monge and F. Blaabjerg, "Multilevel-Clamped Multilevel Converters (MLC^2)," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 27, no. 3, pp. 1055-1060, March 2012.

[177] H. Wang, Y. Liu and P. C. Sen, "A neutral point clamped multilevel topology flow graph and space NPC multilevel topology," *2015 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition (ECCE)*, Montreal, QC, 2015, pp. 3615-3621.

[178] S. Busquets-Monge and L. Caballero, "Switching-Cell Arrays—An Alternative Design Approach in Power Conversion," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 66, no. 1, pp. 25-36, Jan. 2019.

[179] T. B. Soeiro and J. W. Kolar, "The New High-Efficiency Hybrid Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 60, no. 5, pp. 1919-1935, May 2013.

[180] K. Liu and F. C. Lee, "Topological constraints on basic PWM converters," *PESC '88 Record., 19th Annual IEEE Power Electronics Specialists Conference*, Kyoto, Japan, 1988, pp. 164-172 vol.1.

[181] M. M. Bhesaniya and A. Shukla, "Current Source Modular Multilevel Converter: Detailed Analysis and STATCOM Application," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Delivery*, vol. 31, no. 1, pp. 323-333, Feb. 2016.

[182] S. Kouro, M. Pérez, J. Rodríguez and B. Wu, "Four-level medium voltage multilevel converter for high power applications," *2013 IEEE ECCE Asia Downunder*, Melbourne, VIC, 2013, pp. 1028-1033.

[183] J. H. G. Muniz, E. R. C. da Silva, A. S. Andrade and E. C. dos Santos, "A new five-level half-bridge based on a hybrid active neutral point clamped/flying dc-source inverter," *2015 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition (ECCE)*, Montreal, QC, 2015, pp. 3601-3606.

[184] V. Nair R., A. Rahul S., R. S. Kaarthik, A. Kshirsagar and K. Gopakumar, "Generation of Higher Number of Voltage Levels by Stacking Inverters of Lower Multilevel Structures With Low Voltage Devices for Drives," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 32, no. 1, pp. 52-59, Jan. 2017.

[185] P. Barbosa, P. Steimer, L. Meysenc, M. Winkelnkemper, J. Steinke and N. Celanovic, "Active Neutral-Point-Clamped Multilevel Converters," *2005 IEEE 36th Power Electronics Specialists Conference*, Recife, 2005, pp. 2296-2301.

[186] J. W. Kolar and F. C. Zach, "A novel three-phase utility interface minimizing line current harmonics of high-power telecommunications rectifier modules," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 44, no. 4, pp. 456-467, Aug. 1997.

[187] H. Wang, L. Kou, Y. Liu and P. C. Sen, "A Seven-Switch Five-Level Active-Neutral-Point-Clamped Converter and Its Optimal Modulation Strategy," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 32, no. 7, pp. 5146-5161, July 2017.

[188] T. Friedli, J. W. Kolar, J. Rodriguez and P. W. Wheeler, "Comparative Evaluation of Three-Phase AC–AC Matrix Converter and Voltage DC-Link Back-to-Back Converter Systems," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 59, no. 12, pp. 4487-4510, Dec. 2012.

[189] M. Y. Lee, P. Wheeler and C. Klumpner, "Space-Vector Modulated Multilevel Matrix Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 57, no. 10, pp. 3385-3394, Oct. 2010.

[190] D. G. Holmes, "A unified modulation algorithm for voltage and current source inverters based on AC-AC matrix converter theory," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 28, no. 1, pp. 31-40, Jan.-Feb. 1992.

[191] C. Klumpner, F. Blaabjerg, I. Boldea and P. Nielsen, "New modulation method for matrix converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 42, no. 3, pp. 797-806, May-June 2006.

[192] R. Rong, P. C. Loh, P. Wang and F. Blaabjerg, "A Three-level 4 × 3 Conventional Matrix Converter," *2007 7th International Conference on Power Electronics and Drive Systems*, Bangkok, 2007, pp. 315-319.

[193] W. Li, Y. Gu, H. Luo, W. Cui, X. He and C. Xia, "Topology Review and Derivation Methodology of Single-Phase Transformerless Photovoltaic Inverters for Leakage Current Suppression," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 62, no. 7, pp. 4537-4551, July 2015.

[194] Y. Li, N. Hou, L. Ding and Y. W. Li, "Unfolder Operation and Modulation Strategy of Paralleled Current-Source Converters," *2019 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition (ECCE)*, Baltimore, MD, USA, 2019, pp. 5089-5095.

[195] Y. Li, L. Ding and Y. W. Li, "Isomorphic Relationships Between Voltage-Source and Current-Source Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 34, no. 8, pp. 7131-7135, Aug. 2019.

[196] N. I. L. Santos, L. A. L. de A. C. Costa, M. A. Vitorino and M. B. R. Corrêa, "Three-phase Multilevel Asymmetric Current Source Converter," *2019 IEEE Energy Conversion Congress and Exposition (ECCE)*, Baltimore, MD, USA, 2019, pp. 5096-5103.

[197] M. Narimani, B. Wu, Z. Cheng and N. R. Zargari, "A New Nested Neutral Point-Clamped (NNPC) Converter for Medium-Voltage (MV) Power Conversion," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 29, no. 12, pp. 6375-6382, Dec. 2014.

[198] Jing Huang and K. A. Corzine, "Extended operation of flying capacitor multilevel inverters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 21, no. 1, pp. 140-147, Jan. 2006.

[199] Y. Li, Y. W. Li, H. Tian, N. R. Zargari and Z. Cheng, "A Modular Design Approach to Provide Exhaustive Carrier-Based PWM Patterns for Multilevel ANPC Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 55, no. 5, pp. 5032-5044, Sept.-Oct. 2019.

[200] R. H. Wilkinson, T. A. Meynard and H. du Toit Mouton, "Natural Balance of Multicell Converters: The Two-Cell Case," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 21, no. 6, pp. 1649-1657, Nov. 2006.

[201] A. Blumenfeld, A. Cervera and M. M. Peretz, "Enhanced Differential Power Processor for PV Systems: Resonant Switched-Capacitor Gyrator Converter With Local MPPT," in *IEEE Journal of Emerging and Selected Topics in Power Electronics*, vol. 2, no. 4, pp. 883-892, Dec. 2014.

[202] J. Li, S. Bhattacharya and A. Q. Huang, "A New Nine-Level Active NPC (ANPC) Converter for Grid Connection of Large Wind Turbines for Distributed Generation," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 26, no. 3, pp. 961-972, March 2011.

[203] E. Lemmen, J. van Duivenbode and J. L. Duarte, "Load-Current-Corrected Capacitor Voltage Control in Eight-Level DC–AC Converter Using Extended Commutation Cells," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 31, no. 10, pp. 7286-7296, Oct. 2016.

[204] A. Bahrami and M. Narimani, "A New Five-Level T-Type Nested Neutral Point Clamped (T-NNPC) Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 34, no. 11, pp. 10534-10545, Nov. 2019.

[205]S. Xu, J. Zhang and X. Hu, "Model Predictive Control for a Hybrid Multilevel Converter With Different Voltage Ratios," in *IEEE Journal of Emerging and Selected Topics in Power Electronics*, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 922-935, June 2019.

[206]H. Hu, S. Harb, N. Kutkut, I. Batarseh and Z. J. Shen, "A Review of Power Decoupling Techniques for Microinverters With Three Different Decoupling Capacitor Locations in PV Systems," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 28, no. 6, pp. 2711-2726, June 2013.

[207]J. Pou, R. Pindado and D. Boroyevich, "Voltage-balance limits in four-level diode-clamped converters with passive front ends," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 52, no. 1, pp. 190-196, Feb. 2005.

[208] H. Tian, Y. Li and Y. W. Li, "A Novel Seven-Level Hybrid-Clamped (HC) Topology for Medium-Voltage Motor Drives," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 33, no. 7, pp. 5543-5547, July 2018.

[209]J. A. Anderson, L. Schrittwieser, M. Leibl and J. W. Kolar, "Multi-level topology evaluation for ultra-efficient three-phase inverters," *2017 IEEE International Telecommunications Energy Conference (INTELEC)*, Broadbeach, QLD, 2017, pp. 456-463.

[210] D. Neumayr, D. Bortis and J. W. Kolar, "The essence of the little box challenge-part A: Key design challenges & solutions," in *CPSS Transactions on Power Electronics and Applications*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 158-179, June 2020.

[211] E. Babaei, M. F. Kangarlu and M. Sabahi, "Extended multilevel converters: an attempt to reduce the number of independent DC voltage sources in cascaded multilevel converters," in *IET Power Electronics*, vol. 7, no. 1, pp. 157-166, January 2014.

[212] Y. Deng, J. Li, K. H. Shin, T. Viitanen, M. Saeedifard and R. G. Harley, "Improved Modulation Scheme for Loss Balancing of Three-Level Active NPC Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 32, no. 4, pp. 2521-2532, April 2017.

[213] D. Andler, R. Álvarez, S. Bernet and J. Rodríguez, "Switching Loss Analysis of 4.5-kV–5.5-kA IGCTs Within a 3L-ANPC Phase Leg Prototype," in *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications*, vol. 50, no. 1, pp. 584-592, Jan.-Feb. 2014.

[214] D. Andler, R. Álvarez, S. Bernet and J. Rodríguez, "Experimental Investigation of the Commutations of a 3L-ANPC Phase Leg Using 4.5-kV–5.5-kA IGCTs," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 60, no. 11, pp. 4820-4830, Nov. 2013.

[215] J. Nicolas-Apruzzese, S. Busquets-Monge, J. Bordonau, S. Alepuz and A. Calle-Prado, "Analysis of the Fault-Tolerance Capacity of the Multilevel Active-Clamped Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics*, vol. 60, no. 11, pp. 4773-4783, Nov. 2013.

[216] J. Li, A. Q. Huang, Z. Liang and S. Bhattacharya, "Analysis and Design of Active NPC (ANPC) Inverters for Fault-Tolerant Operation of High-Power Electrical Drives," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 27, no. 2, pp. 519-533, Feb. 2012.

[217] E. Lupon, S. Busquets-Monge and J. Nicolas-Apruzzese, "FPGA Implementation of a PWM for a Three-Phase DC–AC Multilevel Active-Clamped Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Informatics*, vol. 10, no. 2, pp. 1296-1306, May 2014.

[218] D. Floricau, E. Floricau and M. Dumitrescu, "Natural doubling of the apparent switching frequency using three-level ANPC converter," *2008 International School on Nonsinusoidal Currents and Compensation*, Lagow, 2008, pp. 1-6.

[219] G. Zhang, Y. Yang, F. Iannuzzo, K. Li, F. Blaabjerg and H. Xu, "Loss distribution analysis of three-level active neutral-point-clamped (3L-ANPC) converter with different PWM strategies," *2016 IEEE 2nd Annual Southern Power Electronics Conference (SPEC)*, Auckland, 2016, pp. 1-6.

[220] A. M. Y. M. Ghias, J. Pou, G. J. Capella, V. G. Agelidis, R. P. Aguilera and T. Meynard, "Single-Carrier Phase-Disposition PWM Implementation for Multilevel Flying Capacitor Converters," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 30, no. 10, pp. 5376-5380, Oct. 2015.

[221] A. K. Sadigh, V. Dargahi and K. A. Corzine, "Analytical Determination of Conduction and Switching Power Losses in Flying-Capacitor-Based Active Neutral-Point-Clamped Multilevel Converter," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 31, no. 8, pp. 5473-5494, Aug. 2016.

[222] K. Wang, L. Xu, Z. Zheng and Y. Li, "Capacitor Voltage Balancing of a Five-Level ANPC Converter Using Phase-Shifted PWM," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 30, no. 3, pp. 1147-1156, March 2015.

[223] Y. Sun, Y. Liu, M. Su, W. Xiong and J. Yang, "Review of Active Power Decoupling Topologies in Single-Phase Systems," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 31, no. 7, pp. 4778-4794, July 2016,.

[224] Z. Cheng and N. Zargari, " Sparse matrix multilevel actively clamped power converter," US Patent: US20160336872A1, 2017. (filed by Rockwell Automation Technologies Inc. in 2015)

[225] U. Choi, F. Blaabjerg and K. Lee, "Study and Handling Methods of Power IGBT Module Failures in Power Electronic Converter Systems," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 30, no. 5, pp. 2517-2533, May 2015.

Appendix

Appendix A: Matrix models of other MLCs

The general matrix model of 5-level hybrid-clamped converter #2 can be expressed as:

$$V_o = \begin{bmatrix} S_5 & S_5' \end{bmatrix} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} S_1S_2 & S_1S_2' & S_1'S_2 & S_1'S_2' \\ \mathbf{0} & & & \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \begin{matrix} S_3S_4 & S_3S_4' & S_3'S_4 & S_3'S_4' \end{matrix} \end{bmatrix} \right\} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} L_3 \\ L_3 \\ L_2 \\ L_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -V_{f1} \\ +V_{f1} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \begin{bmatrix} L_2 \\ L_2 \\ L_1 \\ L_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -V_{f2} \\ +V_{f2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \quad \text{(a-1)}$$

where S_1~S_5' indicate the states of the switching devices in the converter; the vector [L_3 L_2 L_1] indicates the input levels of the converter; V_{f1} (V_{f2}) indicates the voltage cross the upper (lower) flying capacitor.

The simplified matrix model of 5-level hybrid-clamped converter #2 can be expressed as:

$$V_o = \begin{bmatrix} S_1S_2S_5 & S_1S_2'S_5 & S_1'S_2S_5 & S_3S_4S_5 + S_1'S_2'S_5' & S_3S_4'S_5' & S_3'S_4S_5' & S_3'S_4'S_5' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_3 \\ L_3 - V_{f1} \\ L_2 + V_{f1} \\ L_2 \\ L_2 - V_{f2} \\ L_1 + V_{f2} \\ L_1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{(a-2)}$$

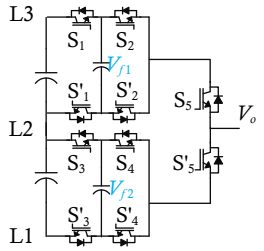


Figure A-1. Topology of the #2 hybrid-clamped 5-level converter.

The general matrix models of 7-level hybrid-clamped converter can be expressed as:

$$V_o' = \begin{bmatrix} S_3S_4 & S_3'S_4 & S_3S_4' & S_3'S_4' \end{bmatrix} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} S_1 & S_1' & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & S_2 & S_2' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_4 \\ L_3 \\ L_2 \\ L_1 \end{bmatrix} \\ \\ \begin{bmatrix} S_1 & S_1' & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & S_2 & S_2' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_4 \\ L_3 \\ L_2 \\ L_1 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ +V_{f1} \\ -V_{f1} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \tag{a-3.1}$$

$$V_o = \begin{bmatrix} S_5S_6 & S_5S_6' & S_5'S_6 & S_5'S_6' \end{bmatrix} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} V_o' \\ V_o' \\ V_o' \\ V_o' \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -V_{f2} \\ +V_{f2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \tag{a-3.2}$$

where S_1~S_6' indicate the states of the switching devices in the converter; the vector [L_4 L_3 L_2 L_1] indicates the input levels of the converter; V_{f1} and V_{f2} indicate the voltage cross the flying capacitors.

The simplified matrix models of 7-level hybrid-clamped converter can be expressed as:

$$V_o' = \begin{bmatrix} S_3S_4S_1 & S_3S_4'S_1 & S_3S_4S_1' & S_3S_4'S_1' & S_3'S_4S_2 & S_3'S_4'S_2 & S_3'S_4S_2' & S_3'S_4'S_2' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_4 \\ L_4 - V_{f1} \\ L_3 \\ L_3 - V_{f1} \\ L_2 + V_{f1} \\ L_2 \\ L_1 + V_{f1} \\ L_1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{2-4.1}$$

$$V_o = \begin{bmatrix} S_5S_6 & S_5S_6' & S_5'S_6 & S_5'S_6' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} V_o' \\ V_o' - V_{f2} \\ V_o' + V_{f2} \\ V_o' \end{bmatrix} \tag{a-4.2}$$

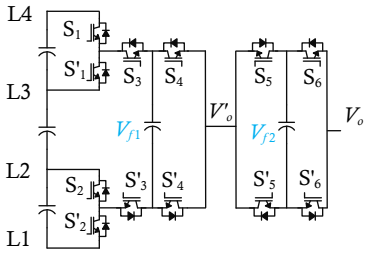


Figure A-2. Topology of the hybrid-clamped 7-level converter.

Appendix B: Complete PWM patterns of 4-level ANPC converter

The operation complete PWM patterns of 4-level ANPC converter are shown in Table A. The total number of these patterns is 110. The highlighted ones are considered as SG-based patterns as discussed in **Section 4.1.3-B**.

TABLE. B

COMPLETE PWM PATTERNS OF 4L ANPC

No	4L PWM Patterns	SC_{11}~ SC_{13}, SC_{21}~ SC_{22}, SG_{31}			No	4L PWM Patterns	SC_{11}~ SC_{13}, SC_{21}~ SC_{22}, SG_{31}			No	4L PWM Patterns	SC_{11}~ SC_{13}, SC_{21}~ SC_{22}, SG_{31}		
1	4L-PWM-1-1-1	001	10	0	36	4L-PWM-2-1-1	100	01	0	71	4L-PWM-3-1-1	100	00	1
2	4L-PWM-1-1-2	000	11	0	37	4L-PWM-2-1-2	000	11	0	72	4L-PWM-3-1-2	010	00	1
3	4L-PWM-1-1-3	000	10	1	38	4L-PWM-2-1-3	000	10	1	73	4L-PWM-3-1-3	001	00	1
4	4L-PWM-1-1-4	001	11	0	39	4L-PWM-2-1-4	001	11	0	74	4L-PWM-3-1-4	110	00	1
5	4L-PWM-1-1-5	000	11	1	40	4L-PWM-2-1-5	000	11	1	75	4L-PWM-3-1-5	011	00	1
6	4L-PWM-1-1-6	001	10	1	41	4L-PWM-2-1-6	001	10	1	76	4L-PWM-3-1-6	101	00	1
7	4L-PWM-1-1-7	001	11	1	42	4L-PWM-2-1-7	001	11	1	77	4L-PWM-3-1-7	111	00	1
8	4L-PWM-1-2-1	111	00	0	43	4L-PWM-2-2-1	111	00	0	78	4L-PWM-3-1-8	000	00	1
9	4L-PWM-1-2-2	110	01	0	44	4L-PWM-2-2-2	110	01	0	79	4L-PWM-3-2-1	100	11	0
10	4L-PWM-1-2-3	110	00	1	45	4L-PWM-2-2-3	110	00	1	80	4L-PWM-3-2-2	010	11	0
11	4L-PWM-1-2-4	111	01	0	46	4L-PWM-2-2-4	111	01	0	81	4L-PWM-3-2-3	001	11	0
12	4L-PWM-1-2-5	110	01	1	47	4L-PWM-2-2-5	110	01	1	82	4L-PWM-3-2-4	110	11	0
13	4L-PWM-1-2-6	111	00	1	48	4L-PWM-2-2-6	111	00	1	83	4L-PWM-3-2-5	011	11	0
14	4L-PWM-1-2-7	111	01	1	49	4L-PWM-2-2-7	111	01	1	84	4L-PWM-3-2-6	101	11	0
15	4L-PWM-1-3-1	101	10	0	50	4L-PWM-2-3-1	101	10	0	85	4L-PWM-3-2-7	111	11	0
16	4L-PWM-1-3-2	100	11	0	51	4L-PWM-2-3-2	100	11	0	86	4L-PWM-3-2-8	000	11	0
17	4L-PWM-1-3-3	100	10	1	52	4L-PWM-2-3-3	100	10	1	87	4L-PWM-3-3-1	100	10	1
18	4L-PWM-1-3-4	101	11	0	53	4L-PWM-2-3-4	101	11	0	88	4L-PWM-3-3-2	010	10	1
19	4L-PWM-1-3-5	100	11	1	54	4L-PWM-2-3-5	100	11	1	89	4L-PWM-3-3-3	001	10	1
20	4L-PWM-1-3-6	101	10	1	55	4L-PWM-2-3-6	101	10	1	90	4L-PWM-3-3-4	110	10	1
21	4L-PWM-1-3-7	101	11	1	56	4L-PWM-2-3-7	101	11	1	91	4L-PWM-3-3-5	011	10	1
22	4L-PWM-1-4-1	011	10	0	57	4L-PWM-2-4-1	011	10	0	92	4L-PWM-3-3-6	101	10	1
23	4L-PWM-1-4-2	010	11	0	58	4L-PWM-2-4-2	010	11	0	93	4L-PWM-3-3-7	111	10	1
24	4L-PWM-1-4-3	010	10	1	59	4L-PWM-2-4-3	010	10	1	94	4L-PWM-3-3-8	000	10	1
25	4L-PWM-1-4-4	011	11	0	50	4L-PWM-2-4-4	011	11	0	95	4L-PWM-3-4-1	100	01	1
26	4L-PWM-1-4-5	010	11	1	61	4L-PWM-2-4-5	010	11	1	96	4L-PWM-3-4-2	010	01	1
27	4L-PWM-1-4-6	011	10	1	62	4L-PWM-2-4-6	011	10	1	97	4L-PWM-3-4-3	001	01	1
28	4L-PWM-1-4-7	011	11	1	63	4L-PWM-2-4-7	011	11	1	98	4L-PWM-3-4-4	110	01	1
29	4L-PWM-1-5-1	111	10	0	64	4L-PWM-2-5-1	111	10	0	99	4L-PWM-3-4-5	011	01	1
30	4L-PWM-1-5-2	110	11	0	65	4L-PWM-2-5-2	110	11	0	100	4L-PWM-3-4-6	101	01	1
31	4L-PWM-1-5-3	110	10	1	66	4L-PWM-2-5-3	110	10	1	101	4L-PWM-3-4-7	111	01	1
32	4L-PWM-1-5-4	111	11	0	67	4L-PWM-2-5-4	111	11	0	102	4L-PWM-3-5-8	000	01	1
33	4L-PWM-1-5-5	110	11	1	68	4L-PWM-2-5-5	110	11	1	103	4L-PWM-3-5-1	100	11	1
34	4L-PWM-1-5-6	111	10	1	69	4L-PWM-2-5-6	111	10	1	104	4L-PWM-3-5-2	010	11	1
35	4L-PWM-1-5-7	111	11	1	70	4L-PWM-2-5-7	111	11	1	105	4L-PWM-3-5-3	001	11	1
										106	4L-PWM-3-5-4	110	11	1
										107	4L-PWM-3-5-5	011	11	1
										108	4L-PWM-3-5-6	101	11	1
										109	4L-PWM-3-5-7	111	11	1
										110	4L-PWM-3-5-8	000	11	1

Note: '1' means HSF, 'o' means LSF

Appendix C: Proof of the completeness of the PWM design method

To prove that the proposed method can provide a complete list of CB-PWM patterns as we claimed, first, recall the definition of effective patterns as stated in Principle 2 of **Section 4.1.3-A**, to make sure that the converter can produce expected PWM waveforms, each operation mode has at least one SC operating at HSF during every output region. Such limitation is naturally indicated when designing a carrier-based PWM. Otherwise, the converter can only output square waveforms during certain output regions, or even no outputs.

Then, what needs to be proved is all effective patterns can be formed through the proposed method. Three general cases are considered.

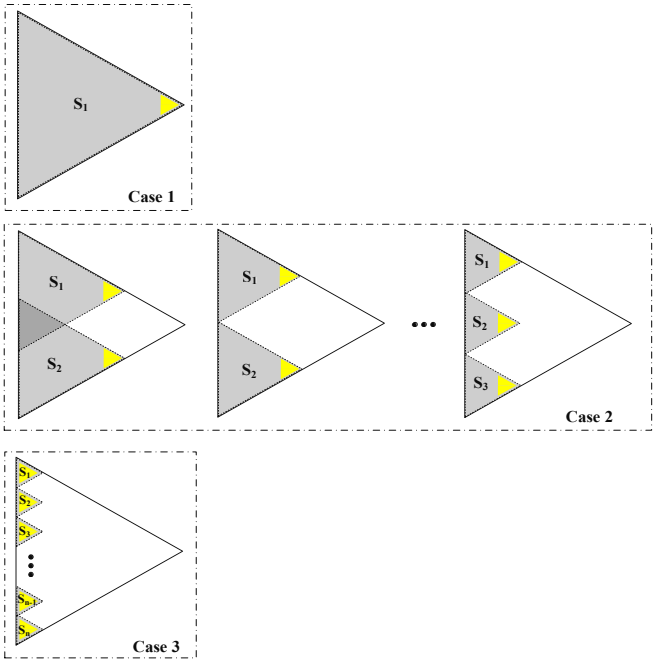


Figure C. Three general cases with a different allocation of HSF SCs.

Case 1: the rightmost HSF SC is in SG_n.

- Such patterns can always be effective no matter where other HSF SCs are.
- May wish to assume that rightmost HSF SC is within the first sub-topology S_1 (N–1 level), therefore, there always can be found two sub-topologies, one is N–1 level S_1 with effective patterns, the other one is a complementary topology with arbitrary patterns.

Case 2: the rightmost HSF SC is in SG_i (i≠1 and i≠n).

Case 2.1: there are only two HSF SCs.

- If these two HSF SCs are in SG_{n-1}, this is a SG-based pattern with HSF SG_{n-1}. There always can be found two sub-topologies with effective patterns, one is N-1 level S1, the other one is complementary topology.

- If these two HSF SCs are not in SG_{n-1}, there always can be found two ANPC (labeled as S_1, S_2) with their own rightmost SC operating at HSF. May wish to assume that S_1 is N-i_1 level, while S_2 is i_2+1 level. It is easy to prove that min(N–i_1, i_2) or min(N–i_2, i_1) can be no bigger than $N/2$. Which means this pattern can be derived from i_1^{th}-D or i_2^{th}-D, and the level of decomposition is no bigger than $N/2$.

  [Proof: if a+b=c, (a, b, c are integer), then, min(a, b)≤c/2.

  Assume min(a, b)>c/2, then, a+b>c/2+ c/2=c.

  Derived contradictions: a+b≠c.

  Thus, it is proved to be true.]

  Utilizing this conclusion, we can see:

  - if S_1 and S_2 are non-overlapping, given N–i_1=a, i_2=b, then, a+b=c=N.
    We have min(a, b)≤c/2, which is min(N–i_1, i_2)≤N/2.
  - if S_1 and S_2 are overlapping, given N–i_2=a', i_1=b', then, a'+b'=c'<N.
    We have min(a', b')≤c/2<$N/2$, which is min(N-i_2, i_1)<N/2.

  Case 2.2: there are only three HSF SCs.

- If these three HSF SCs are in SG_{n-2}, this is an SG-based pattern with HSF SG_{n-2}. There always can be found two sub-topologies with effective patterns, one is N–1 level S_1, the other is complementary topology.
- If these three HSF SCs are not in SG_{n-2}, there always can be found three ANPC (labeled as S_1, S_2, S_3) with their own rightmost SC operating at HSF.
- May wish to assume that S_1 is N–i_1 level, while S_2 is i_2+1 level, S_3 is i_3+1 level. Then, there always can be found two sub-topologies with effective patterns, one is A level, the other is B level, A+B=N–1, and min(A, B)≤$N/2$. If S_1, S_2, and S_3 are non-overlapping, A/B can be N–i_1+i_2 or i_2+i_3+1. If at least two of S_1, S_2 and S_3 are overlapping, A/B can be N-i_1+i_2–d_1 or i_2+i_3+1–d_2 (d_1, d_2 denote the number of associated overlapping SCs). Which means this pattern can be derived from i^{th}-D, i≤$N/2$.

  ……

  Case 2.k: there are only k+1 HSF SCs. (k<N(N-1)/2)

- If these k+1 HSF SCs are in SG_{n-k}, this is an SG-based pattern with HSF SG_{n-k}. There always can be found two sub-topologies with effective patterns, one is N–1 level S_1, the other is complementary topology.
- If these k+1 HSF SCs are not in SG_{n-k}, there always can be found k+1 ANPC (labeled as S_1, …, S_{k+1}) with their own rightmost SC operating at HSF.

- May wish to assume that S_1 is $N-i_1$ level, while S_2 is i_2+1 level, ...S_k is i_k+1 level. Then, there always can be found two sub-topologies with effective patterns, one is A level, the other is B level, A+B=$N-1$, and min(A, B)≤$N/2$. If S_1, ..., S_{k+1} are non-overlapping, A/B can be $N-i_1+i_2+...+i_{k-1}$ or $i_2+...+i_k+1$. If at least two of S_1, ..., S_{k+1} are overlapping, A/B can be $N-i_1+i_2+...+i_{k-1}-d_1-...-d_{k-1}$ or $i_2+i_3+1-d_2-...-d_k$ (d_1, ...d_k denote the number of associated overlapping SCs). Which means this pattern can be derived from i^{th}-D, i≤$N/2$.

  .....

Case 3: the rightmost HSF SC is in SG_1.

- There is only one SG-based pattern with HSF SG_1 that meets this condition.
- May wish to assume that SC_1~SC_{n-1} are within the first sub-topology S_1 ($N-1$ level), therefore, there always can be found two sub-topologies with effective patterns, one is $N-1$ level S_1, the other is complementary topology.

In summary, according to the discussion of the three situations, all effective patterns can be formed through i^{th}-D with i≤$N/2$, which proves that the proposed method can provide a complete list of CB-PWM patterns as we claimed.

Appendix D: Different switch groups for the general 4-level ANPC converter

For the 4L ANPC converter, the operation range is naturally divided into three parts based on the DC links. There can be as many as ***14*** different selections for the general 4-level ANPC converter based on *i*-stage SGs (*i*>1) as shown in **Figure D**.

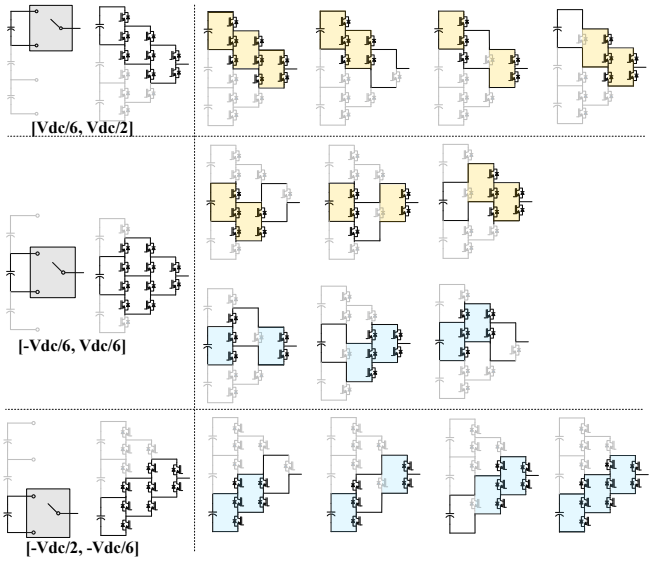


Figure D. Possible operation patterns in terms of different switch group selections for the general 4-level ANPC converter.

Appendix E: Different switch groups for the general 5-level ANPC converter

The operation range 5L ANPC converter is naturally divided into four parts. The selections using *i*-stage SGs (*i*>1) can be as many as ***46***. In **Figure E**, for the sake of simplicity, the topology is indicated by abstract blocks with different colors. Yellow blocks represent the downward SGs, blue ones mean upward SGs, grey ones are not utilized switches during this output region.

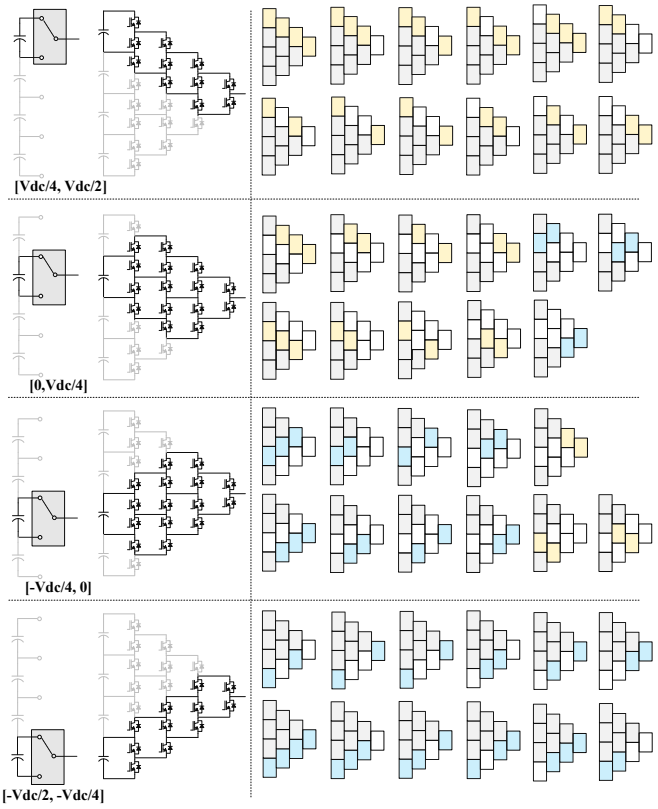


Figure E. Possible operation patterns in terms of different switching group selections for the general 5-level ANPC converter.